

PH 617

.C5C2

1905

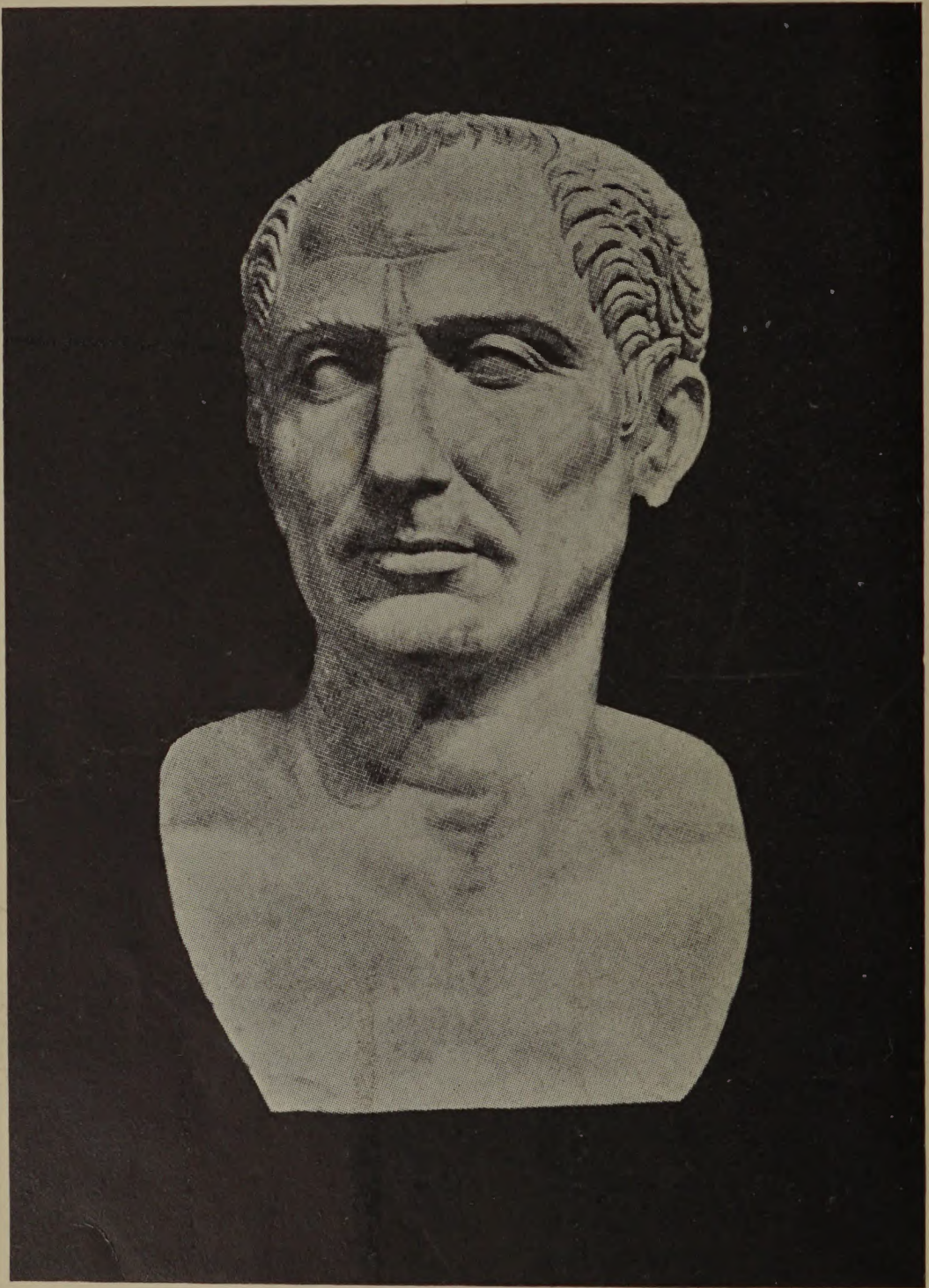
CHASE AND STUART'S NEW LATIN TEXTS

Edited by Thomas Chase, L.L.D., (Harvard); George Stuart, A.M., E. P. Crowell, D.D., (Amherst); and A. P. Montague, A.M., Ph. D. (Columbia University). Revised by F. H. Lee, (University of Pennsylvania), and B. W. Mitchell, Ph. D. (Princeton University).

The important features of the series are, (1) The *purity* of the texts. (2) The *clearness* and *conciseness* of the notes and their adaptation to the wants of students. (3) The *quality* of paper and printing. (4) The *convenience* of the shape and size. (5) The *low price* at which the volumes are sold.

Caesar's Gallic War, Books I-IV, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>new edition</i>),	80
Caesar's Gallic War, Books I-VII, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>new edition</i>),	1 00
Virgil's Aeneid, First Six Books, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>new edition</i>),	95
Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics, with Notes and Vocabulary,	95
Cicero's Thirteen Orations, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>new edition</i>),	1 10
Cicero's Orations Against Catiline, also the Oration for the Poet Archias, for the Manilian Law, and for Marcellus, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>new edition</i>),	80
Cicero de Senectute, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text published with a Vocabulary</i>),	50
Cicero de Amicitia, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text published with a Vocabulary</i>),	50
Cicero de Senectute et de Amicitia, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text published with a Vocabulary</i>),	95
Cicero de Officiis, with Notes,	1 10
Cicero de Oratore, Book I, with Notes,	65
Cicero de Oratore, Book I, II and III, with Notes,	1 10
Cicero's Tusculan Disputations, with Notes,	95
Horace's Odes, Satires and Epistles, with Notes, (<i>new edition</i>),	1 10
Horace (Selections from) with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text published with a Vocabulary</i>),	1 00
Sallust's Catiline et Jugurtha, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text published containing both Catiline and the Jugurthine War</i>),	95
Livy, Books 1-21-22, with Notes and Vocabulary, (<i>the only text-book published with a Vocabulary</i>)	1 10
Cornelius Nepos, with Notes and Vocabulary (<i>new edition</i>),	95
Terence, Andria and Adelphoe with Notes,	95
Tacitus Germania and Agricola and Dialogues de Oratoribus, with Notes,	95
Juvenal's Satires and Fifth Satire of Persius, with Notes,	95
Ovid's Metamorphoses (15 Books), with Notes and Vocabulary,	1 10
Pliny's Select Letters, with Notes,	1 00

HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE, Publishers,
31-33-35 West 15th Street New York City



THE BUST OF CAESAR

CHASE & STUART'S NEW CLASSICAL SERIES

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-VII

With Explanatory Notes and a Vocabulary

BY

GEORGE STUART, A.M. W

LATE PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE IN THE
CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL, PHILADELPHIA

REVISED BY

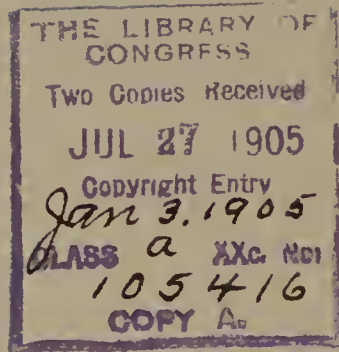
FRANCIS H. LEE

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE CENTRAL HIGH SCHOOL,
PHILADELPHIA

HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE

31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY
CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.



COPYRIGHT, 1891,
By ELDREDGE & BROTHER.

COPYRIGHT, 1905,
By HINDS, NOBLE & ELDREDGE.

130362

P R E F A C E.

THE text of the Commentaries here presented is chiefly that of Kraner, in the Tauchnitz edition. In a few instances, however, the reading of Oehler or Nipperdey seemed preferable, and was accordingly adopted. This portion of the work received, as it merited, not the least amount of care and attention, and it is hoped that whatever improvements have been introduced into the text by the learning and research of the ablest scholars of Germany, will be found in the present edition.

The Notes have been prepared with a very simple view: to give the willing and industrious student that kind of assistance which is really necessary to render his study profitable, and that amount which the nature of the study fully entitles him to expect; to remove difficulties greater than his strength; and to give him directly, or refer him to, the sources of such information as is requisite to a thorough understanding of the author. In particular the subjunctive mood, and the infinitive with a subject accusative—constructions which practical teachers find most fertile in difficulties to the young student—have received a due share of attention. With the explanations of those subjects and the grammatical references given in the Notes, it is believed that as much has been done in the way of elucidation as can be ventured with safety to the student's habits of self-reliance or substantial progress in study. The references are to the grammars of Chase, Harkness, Allen and Greenough, and Gildersleeve; with occasional references to Madvig and Zumpt.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	iii
LIFE OF CÆSAR	ix
CÆSAR'S ARMY	xv
BOOK I	I
BOOK II	42
BOOK III	64
BOOK IV	83
BOOK V	107
BOOK VI	145
BOOK VII	173
NOTES	233
MILITARY PHRASES AND IDIOMS	349
VOCABULARY	351
GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX	449
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES	459

LIFE OF CÆSAR.

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR was born on the 12th of July, B.C. 100. Though descended from one of the most ancient patrician families of Rome, he became closely connected with the popular party by the marriage of his aunt Julia with the great Marius and by his own marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of L. Cinna, one of the chief opponents of Sulla. On the latter's return from Asia he ordered Cæsar to put away his wife; on his refusal he was proscribed, deprived of his wife's dowry and his own fortune. For some time his life was in danger, and it was only through the intercession of influential friends that he obtained a pardon from the dictator, who remarked that "That boy would some day be the ruin of the aristocracy, for there were many Mariuses in him." Cæsar at once withdrew from Rome (B.C. 81), and served his first campaign at the siege and capture of Mytilene, where he was awarded a civic crown (of oak leaves) for saving the life of a fellow soldier.

On the death of Sulla (B.C. 78) Cæsar returned to Rome, and acting upon a common practice of the times on the part of young men who sought to bring themselves to public notice, he accused Cn. Dolabella and C. Antonius of extortion in their provinces. Though both escaped conviction, Cæsar greatly increased his reputation by these prosecutions, and showed that he possessed great power as a speaker. To improve himself in oratory he went to Rhodes (B.C. 76) to study under Apollonius Molo; but in his voyage thither he was captured by pirates near Miletus, and was detained by them in the island Pharmacusa until he could obtain fifty talents from the neighboring cities. As soon as he was released he manned some Milesian vessels, overpowered the pirates, and crucified them, a punishment with

which he had frequently threatened them while he was their prisoner. He returned to Rome in B.C. 74.

During the fourteen years from B.C. 74 to B.C. 60 Cæsar rose in succession to the various grades of public office which were always sought by the ambitious Roman. He was elected pontiff in B.C. 74; about the same time he was elected military tribune; in B.C. 68 he was quæstor in Spain under Antistius Vetus; in B.C. 67 he was one of the superintendents of the Appian Way; in B.C. 65 he was elected curule ædile; in B.C. 63, pontifex maximus or chief priest of the state religion; in B.C. 62 he was prætor, and in the following year he was sent as governor to Spain. During these years he used every means to increase his popularity. His affable manners and unstinted liberality won the hearts of the people. He soon spent his private fortune, and then borrowed large sums from the usurers, who looked for reimbursement from the spoils of his future career. It was customary for the ædiles to seek the favor of the people by spending large sums of money upon the public games and buildings; but the ædileship of Cæsar surpassed in magnificence everything that had preceded it. He also caused the statues of Marius and the representations of his victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars, which Sulla had destroyed, to be privately restored and placed at night in the Capitol. At the sight of these mementos of their great leader the people were wild with excitement and greeted Cæsar with shouts of applause. When he was proprætor or governor of Spain he was for the first time at the head of a regular army, and at once gave proof of his rare ability as a commander by subduing the mountainous tribes of Lusitania, for which the senate decreed him a public thanksgiving. He returned to Rome in B.C. 60.

While Cæsar was thus striding onward to place and power, Pompey was at the summit of his renown. His rare success against the pirates of the Mediterranean and in the war against Mithridates had made him the most distinguished man in Rome. But his great power had made him enemies among the aristocracy, his own party, and they strongly opposed some of his measures. Cæsar saw his opportunity. He knew the strength and the weakness of Pompey. He therefore gave ready sup-

port to all Pompey's measures, and suggested that they should support one another; and M. Crassus, who by reason of his immense wealth and connections had great influence at Rome, was easily persuaded to join them. This union has been called the first triumvirate; it was, however, only a private agreement among the three most powerful men at Rome to divide all power among them. About the same time Pompey married Cæsar's daughter Julia.

Cæsar easily became consul in B.C. 59. His first act was to cause the proceedings of the senate to be published daily. His next was the passage of an agrarian law, by which 20,000 citizens received allotments of land in Campania; among them were many of the veterans of Pompey, who was now enabled to fulfil his promise made to them in Asia.

After his year of office a Roman consul was usually assigned to the government (as proconsul) of one of the provinces. In accordance with this custom, Cæsar easily obtained the government of Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum for five years, with a military force of four legions. The time of his government was afterwards extended to ten years. In Gaul Cæsar doubtless saw an opportunity for a brilliant career and the display of those military talents which he felt that he possessed; and the complete subjugation of that nation, which had once taken and sacked Rome, was an object as worthy of his ambition as it would be pleasing to his countrymen.

Cæsar was occupied nine years in the subjugation of Gaul. In that time he so completely subdued the various nations of Transalpine Gaul that they were never again able to offer any effectual resistance to the Romans. He twice crossed the Rhine and twice landed in Britain. The rapidity of his movements, the consummate skill of his arrangements, the inspiring influence of his words and presence, and his invariable success against even overwhelming numbers, secured him an undisputed rank among the world's greatest commanders.

Having thus completed the conquest of Gaul, Cæsar returned to Cisalpine Gaul in B.C. 51. Pompey and the senate now feared that he would be elected consul while still at the head of his army, which consisted of ten legions, and they determined

body. It was furnished by the allies and subject states of Rome, but was commanded by Roman officers (*præfecti equitum, decuriōnēs*). Cæsar's cavalry in Gaul numbered about 4000, and was mainly auxiliary to the movements of the infantry. The cavalry was divided into regiments or *alae*; the *alae*, into squadrons or *turmae*; and the *turmae*, into *decuriæ*. An *ala* contained 300 or 400 men.

THE AUXILIARY INFANTRY.

The auxiliary infantry was either furnished by the allied and subject states, or consisted of foreign mercenaries possessing skill in the use of some national weapon, such as the Balearic slingers and the Cretan archers. The auxiliaries were for the most part light-armed troops; they were used as skirmishers and wherever rapid movements were necessary. They were generally posted on the wings of the army, and were hence often called *ālariī*.

THE ARTILLERY.

Military engines corresponding to modern artillery were used in siege operations. These were the battering-ram (*āriēs*)

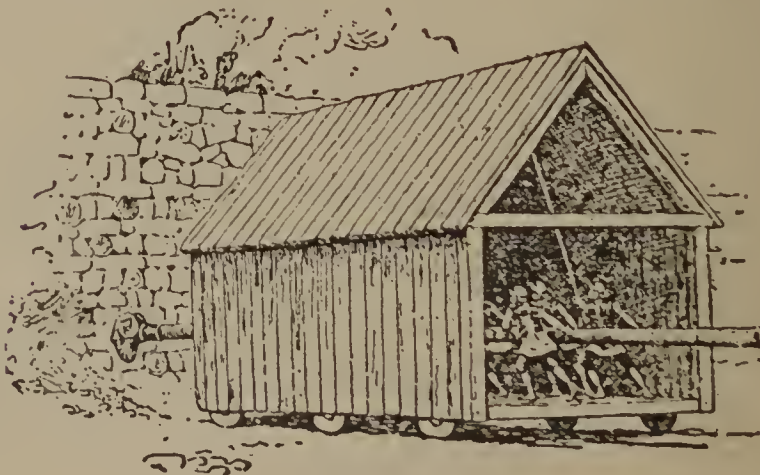


FIGURE 2.

(Fig. 2), the *scorpio*, the *cătăpulta*, and the *ballista*. Cæsar seems to include the latter three in the general term *tormentum*,

or hurling-engine. The scorpio and catapult were used to throw large arrows, and the ballista to hurl stones. The range of the most powerful of these engines was nearly a quarter of a mile. But "neither from the descriptions of authors nor from the figures on the column of Trajan are we able to form any exact idea of the construction of these engines." (*What Antiqq.*)

THE STANDARDS.

The standard of the legion was an eagle of bronze or silver on a wooden staff. (Fig. 3.) The centurion of the first century of the first manipulus of the first cohort of the legion (*primipilus*) was the guardian of the eagle. He who carried it was called *âquilifer*. The standard of the cohort was called *signum*, and the bearer of it *signifer*. The *signum* was generally the figure of an animal (e.g. a sheep) on a staff. The *vexillum* was the standard of the cavalry and light-armed troops. *Vexillum* was also the name of the flag or banner of the commanding general, and when displayed on or near his tent it was the signal for march or battle.



FIGURE 3.

THE LEGIONARY.

The military age was from 17 to 46. All the legionaries were armed and equipped in the same manner. Next to the body was worn a thick woollen shirt (*tunica*) with short sleeves. The defensive armor consisted of helmet (*cassis, galea*) (Fig. 4), cuirass or coat of mail (*lôrica*), shield (*scûtum*), and greaves (*ocrese*). The helmet was either of metal (*cassis*) or leather bound with metal (*galea*). The coat of mail was of leather strength-

ened by flexible bands of metal. The shield (Fig. 5) was



FIGURE 4.



FIGURE 5.

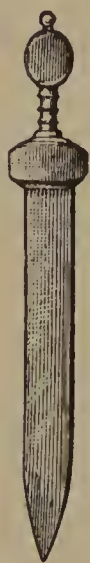


FIGURE 7.

rectangular in shape, but slightly curved, and about four feet long and two feet wide. The wooden frame was covered with leather or with iron plates. In the centre was a metallic boss (*umbo*).

Greaves of bronze protected the leg below the knee, though usually but one was worn, and that on the right leg, as the shield afforded protection to the left.

The offensive weapons were the javelin and sword. The javelin (*pīlum*) (Fig. 6) was about six and a half feet long. It consisted of a wooden shaft about four feet long, into which was inserted the shank of a

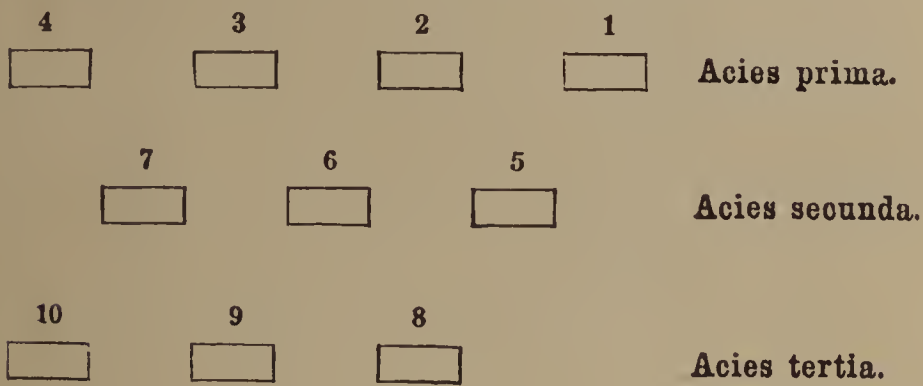
pointed javelin-head from two to three feet long. The shank was comparatively thin and soft, and apt to bend on meeting any considerable resistance. The sword (*glādius*, *glādius Hispānicus*) (Fig. 7) was two-edged and pointed, and had a rather wide blade about two feet long. In a charge the legionary first hurled his *pīlum* at the enemy, and, if the effect of the javelins was not sufficiently decisive, he followed it up with the sword.

FIGURE 6.

In addition to his armor and weapons, the legionary, when in marching order, usually carried provisions for one, two, or even three weeks, and three or four stakes used in forming the palisade of the camp, besides various tools.

LINE OF BATTLE.

When in order of battle the legion was usually arranged in three lines (*āciēs triplex*). Each line may have been several ranks deep. Of the ten cohorts, four were placed in the front line, three in the second and opposite the vacant spaces in the first, and three in the third, opposite the vacant spaces in the second and at a somewhat greater distance than that which separated the first and second lines, as in the following diagram.



In case the first line was hard pressed, it could either fall back and align with the second, or the second could be advanced to the vacant spaces in the first, or both movements could be executed simultaneously. The third line was kept as a reserve and to check any sudden or concealed movement of the enemy, as an attack upon the flank or rear. As previously remarked, the light-armed troops (*auxilia*) were stationed on the wings. At the proper moment the cavalry charged, and endeavored to complete the defeat of the enemy.

Sometimes, and for special reasons, the line was twofold (*acies duplex*). Five cohorts were then placed in each line.

CASTRÀ ROMANA.

A Roman army never halted, even for a single night, without forming a regular intrenchment or *castra*, capable of receiving within it the whole body of fighting men with their beasts of burden and baggage. The camp was laid out, arranged, and fortified according to a fixed plan, so that each

battalion, each company, and each individual had a place assigned, to which each could at once repair without question or delay. There were two kinds of camp : the summer camp (*castra aestiva*), made at the end of each day's march, and

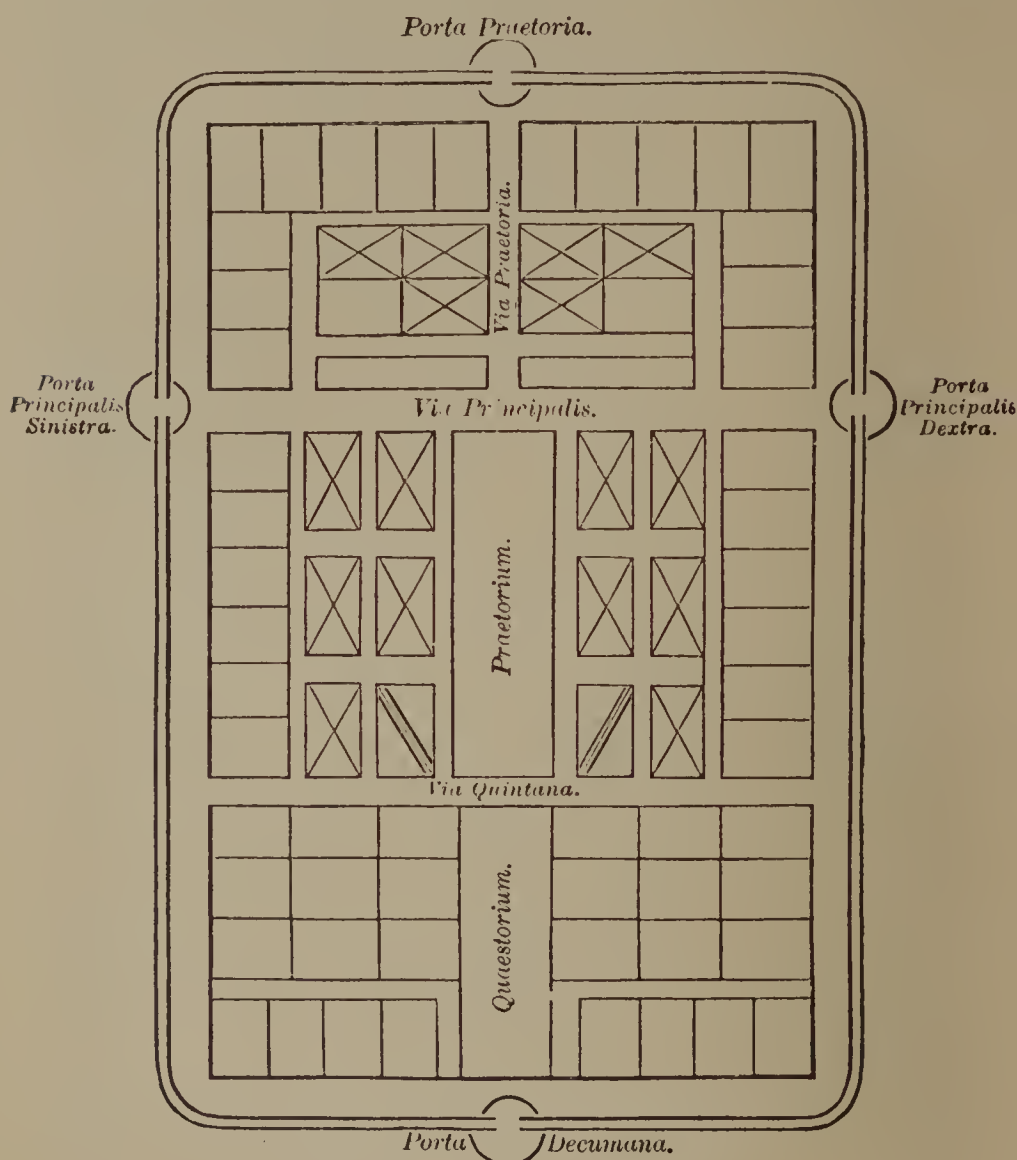


FIGURE 8. — CASTRA ROMANA.

the winter camp (*castra hiberna*, or simply *hiberna*), or winter quarters. A site was selected convenient for wood, water, and forage. The form was either that of a square or rectangle with the corners rounded. Its size varied with that of the army. Around the quadrangle of the camp a ditch (*fossa*)

was dug, the earth from which was thrown inward and was formed, by means of stones, fascines, and turf, into a mound (*agger*), on the summit of which a strong palisade of wooden stakes (*vallī, sūdēs*) was fixed, forming the rampart. The form and arrangement of the summer camp is shown in the diagram. (Fig. 8.)

The usual width of the ditch was about nine feet, and the depth seven feet. The top of the *agger* or rampart behind the palisade was wide enough to allow the free movement of a soldier in hurling the javelin, and the palisade or breastwork (*lōrica*), four or five feet in height, easily enabled him to see over it.

The front of the camp was the side toward the enemy or the next day's march. Two wide streets, the *via principālis* and the *via quintāna*, divided the camp into three nearly equal spaces.

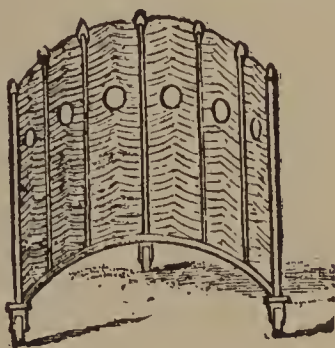


FIGURE 9.

The former was one hundred feet wide, the latter fifty. There were two principal gates: one in the middle of the front wall, the *porta praetōria*, the other in the middle of the rear wall, the *porta dēcūmāna*. From the *porta praetoria* to the *via principālis* ran a wide street, called *via praetōria*. The *praetōrium*, a large space in the middle of the camp, was the headquarters of the army. In the *quaestōrium* the quaestor and his staff had their quarters, and here he kept the supplies. Between the rampart and the tents, and extending entirely around the camp, was a clear space (*intervallum*) about two hundred feet wide, which facilitated ingress and egress.

The labor of fortifying the camp was really enormous. Yet the orderly and systematic plan of the Romans, the precision of their discipline, and their skilful division of labor in the work made the task a comparatively easy one. It has been computed that the entire work could be completed in less than five hours after the site was selected.

4 Lon. West 2

0 Longitude East from Greenwich.

10

8

6

Map of

GAUL

in the time of Julius Caesar.

Scale of Miles.

10 20 40 60 80 100

Ancalites

B R I T A N N I A

Bibroci

Unelli

Lexovii

Bellocasses

Bellocaci

Bratispantini

Veromandui

Atrebatii

Ambrani

Ubi

54

52

50

54

52

50

Mona

Cenimagni

Trinobantes

Centum

Fl. Tanaia

Fl. Aduaticus

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Rhodanus

Fl. Pons Caesaris

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle

Fl. Moselle



tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus ori-
 untur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī,
 spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquī-
 tania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montīs et
 5 eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet;
 spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The Conspiracy of Orgetorix.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dī-
 tissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne
 cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem
 10 nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis
 cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent: perfacile esse, cum vir-
 tūte omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī.

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī
 nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine
 15 Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētīum
 ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altis-
 simō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū
 Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram
 ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

20 Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus
 facile finitimīs bellum īferre possent; quā ex parte
 hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur.
 Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī
 atque fortitudinis, angustōs sē finīs habēre arbitrā-
 25 bantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in
 lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Preparations of the Helvetii.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis
 permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum per-

tinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam
māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentis quam māxi-
mās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret,
cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfīr-
māre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis
esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge
cōfīrmant.

Orgetorix's Movements and Arguments.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is
sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatīs suscepit. In eō itinere
persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō,
cūius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat
et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut
rēgnū in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante
habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Divi-
ciāci, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat
āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur
persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere,
proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obten-
tūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae
plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque ex-
ercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōfīrmat. Hāc ōrā-
tiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et
rēgnō occupātō per trīs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs
populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

His Trial, Escape, and Death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta.
Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē ex vinculis causam dīcere
coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut
īgnī cremārētur.

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdi-
cium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem,
undique coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs,
quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit ;
5 per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum
exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs
magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est ; neque
abest suspīciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi
10 mortem cōscīverit.

The Helvetii continue their Preparations.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod
cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suīs exeant.
Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,
oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad
15 quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt ;
frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant,
combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis spē sublātā — pa-
rātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent ; trium
mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre
20 iubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs finī-
timīs utī eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque ex-
ūstīs, ūnā cūm eis proficīcantur ; Bōiōsque, quī trāns
Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant
25 Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi
adscīscunt.

Two Routes out of the Helvetian Territory.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō
exīre possent : ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et diffi-

cile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Helvētiōrum et 5 Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva.

They decide to go through the Roman Province.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobro- 10 gibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finis eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs 15 erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

Cæsar hastens to Geneva, and destroys the Bridge.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximis potest itineribus in Galliam 20 ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, 25 lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvītatis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verudoctius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent ‘sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod

aliud iter habērent nūllum ; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

He parleys with them to gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub
5 iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat ; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset
dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs re-
10 spondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum ; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

He constructs Fortifications to bar their Passage.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īfluit, ad montem Iūram,
15 quī fīnīs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō prae-sidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.
20 Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare ; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque com-
25 plūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii, through the Influence of Dumnorix, obtain Permission to pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne 5 apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat; et cupiditātē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitatīs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et 10 ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finīs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

Cæsar opposes this Movement also,

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per 15 agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finīs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitas est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus 20 māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

and secures More Troops.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs edūcit, 25 et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutrones et Grāiocelī et Caturīges locīs superi-
 ōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
 Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est
 citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finīs Vocontiōrum
 5 ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit ; inde in
 Allobrogum finīs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exer-
 citum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rho-
 danum prīmī.

**The Helvetii commit Depredations on their March. The Haedui
 and Other Tribes ask for Cæsar's Help against them.**

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finīs Sēquanōrum
 10 suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finīs pervē-
 nerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum
 sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad
 Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium : ‘ Ita sē omni
 tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in
 15 cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vastārī, liberī [eōrum]
 in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.’
 Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsan-
 guineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē
 dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium
 20 prohibēre. Item Allobroges, quī trāns Rhodanum
 vicōs possessionēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem
 recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil
 esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn ex-
 spectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis soci-
 25 ōrum cōsūptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Cæsar falls upon the Rear of the Helvetii.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finīs Haeduōrum et
 Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte
 ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit.

Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiarum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad 5 eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantis adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quat- 10 tuor pāgōs divīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō 15 Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. 20

Cæsar crosses the Saône and confers with a Helvetian Embassy.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit.

Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen 25 trānsīrent, illum unō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs 30

atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset
 atque esse voluisset ; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret,
 reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et
 prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum
 5 pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent
 suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut
 suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret ;
 sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis
 virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur.
 10 Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex
 calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs
 nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

Cæsar's Reply. His Terms are disdained.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit : ' Eō sibi minus dubi-
 tātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi com-
 15 memorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre,
 quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent ; quī sī
 alicūius iniūriæ sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse diffi-
 cile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commis-
 sum ā sē intellexeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā
 20 timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae ob-
 livīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod
 eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent,
 quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vex-
 āssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā vic-
 25 tōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū
 sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem perti-
 nēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortalīs, quō gravius
 hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō
 scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum
 30 rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse facturum.' Divico respondit: 'Ita Helvetiōs a 5 maiōribus suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nō dare, cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Cæsar follows the Helvetii.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quat- 10 tuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eorum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quas in partis hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvetiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci de no- 15 stris cadunt.

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvetiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nō numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs a 20 proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapinis [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibere. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs milibus passuum inter- 25 esset.

Cæsar censures the Hædui for failing to furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter

frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine
 5 Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiū āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō
 10 diē frūmentum mīlitibus metīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet
 15 potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepērit, multō etiam gravius quod
 20 sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus explains the Delay: a Party opposed to the Romans prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: ‘Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, qui prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs
 25 sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā

cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī ; hōs ā sē coërcēri nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob 5 eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.’

Liscus privately discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat ; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in 10 conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit ; reperit esse vērā : ‘ Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris annōs portōria reliquaque omnia 15 Haeduōrum vectīgālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātis ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse ; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē ha- 20 bēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātis largiter posse ; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās 25 cīvitātis conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiāe

atque honoris sit restitutus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre ; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.’ Reperiēbat
 5 etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium [eius] fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat ; eōrum fugā reliquum esse
 10 equitātum perterritum.

Cæsar decides to punish Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per finīs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō
 15 et cīvitatīs sed etiam īnscentibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eū aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret.

He does not wish to hurt the Feelings of Diviciacus.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciāci
 20 frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat : nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī
 25 iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur ; simul commonefacit quae

ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorīge sint dicta ; et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit ; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

5

At the Request of Diviciacus Cæsar spares Dumnorix.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret : ‘ Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille 10 minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset ; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuentam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur ; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius acci- 15 disset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum ; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.’

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, 20 Caesar ēius dextram prendit ; cōsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat ; tantī ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet ; quae in eō reprehendat os- 25 tendit ; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitas queratur, prōpōnit ; monet ut in reliquū tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vitet ; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

30

Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cōgnōscerent mīsīt. Renūntiātum
5 est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad
10 eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Considius, by a False Report, spoils the Plan.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-
15 rētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsiūs adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus
20 tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armis atque īsignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsiūs cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō
25 tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupatō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō denique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi re-

nūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervāllō, hostīs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Cæsar turns towards Bibracte to get Supplies. The Helvetii follow.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum metīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; *itaque* iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gal-
lōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis, proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque
itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi āc lacescere coepērunt.

Both Sides prepare for Battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsīt. Ipse interim
in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et
eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, im-

pedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt ; ipsi cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitatū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Battle.

25. Caesar primum suō deinde omnium ex cōn-
 5 spectū remōtis equis, ut aequatō omnium periculō
 spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium com-
 misit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile
 hostium phalangem perfregērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis
 dēstrictis in eōs impetum fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad
 10 pūgnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis
 ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē
 inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis
 commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactatō
 brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō
 15 corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et
 pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille
 passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et
 succēdentibus nostris, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum
 milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novis-
 20 simis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs *ab* latere apertō
 adgressī circumvenire ; et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī
 in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium
 redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bi-
 partitō intulērunt : prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis āc
 25 submōtis resisteret ; tertia, ut venientis sustinēret.

Crushing Defeat of the Helvetii after Desperate Fighting.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum
 est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn
 possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt,

alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēceraut et ē 5 locō superiōre in nostrōs venientis tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rēdāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex 10 eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: [nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō] in finis Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī [trīduum morātī] eōs 15 sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit. 20

They offer to surrender. Six Thousand Escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīserunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre 25 iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, [nocte intermissā] circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgī quī Verbi-genus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs 30

trāditis suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī,
 quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam
 aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent,
 primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum
 5 finisque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Cæsar's Terms.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finis
 ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūr-
 gātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium
 numerō habuit; reliquōs omnīs, obsidibus, armīs, per-
 10 fugīs trāditis, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finis suōs, unde
 erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus
 āmissis domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allo-
 brogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent;
 15 ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere
 iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum
 locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter
 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum in-
 colunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finis trānsīrent,
 20 et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.
 Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant
 cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit;
 quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem
 iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant
 25 recēpērunt.

Census of the Tribes before and after their March.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt
 litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae,
 quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī
 numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent,

et item sēparātīm *quot* puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia xcii. Summa 5 omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

Galic Chiefs congratulate Cæsar and ask for a General Council.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum 10 convēnērunt: ‘Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās 15 Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum āc fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitatīs stīpendiāriās habērent.’ 20

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus 25 commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

They describe the Encroachments of the Germans, and through Diviciacus ask Cæsar's Aid against Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō idem principēs cīvitatū quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiērunt-

que utī sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: ‘Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.’

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: ‘Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum
 10 tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantōpere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et
 15 cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrīs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientis semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem,
 20 omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvītatis, et iūre iūrاندō cīvītatem
 25 obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvītate Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs
 30 obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvītate prōfūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed p̄ius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcedere 5 iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim 10 cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, 15 superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diū- 20 tius sustinērī.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdīs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque 25 accadat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere posse nē māior mul- 30 titūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.'

Diviciacus shows the Desperate Condition of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs qui
aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē-
runt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs
nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed
5 trīstīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius rei quae
causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī
respondēre, sed in eādē trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.
Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō
vōcem exprimere posset, idē Dīviciācus Haeduus
10 respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem for-
tūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in
occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audē-
rent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī
cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs
15 tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā
finīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida
omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent
perferendī.'

Cæsar decides that Ariovistus is Dangerous and must be checked.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs
20 verbīs cōfīrmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem
cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō
suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs
factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsīt. Et
secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi
25 eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: im-
primīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque sae-
pēnumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in
diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs
esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod

in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac 5 barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam 10 mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

Ariovistus with Much Spirit declines to meet Cæsar.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum 15 medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: ‘Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Prae- 20 tereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partīs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset aut Caesarī aut omnīnō 25 populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.’

Cæsar sends again and states his Demands.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: ‘Quo-

niam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur
 5 neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permetteret ut quōs
 10 illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuā grātiā atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, — quoniam M. Mes-
 15 sālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsumisset utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

Ariovistus defies Cæsar.

20 **36.** Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent eīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn
 25 praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunā temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniuriā facere quī suō
 30 adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē

Campaign against Ariovistus.

27

obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum
sociīs iniuriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod
convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannis penderent; sī
id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī
Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē 5
Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum
sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congre-
derētur; intellētūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitā-
tissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn
subissent, virtūte possent.’ 10

Fresh Complaints of German Outrages. Cæsar hastens against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referē-
bantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant :
Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam
trānsportātī essent, finīs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē
obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere 15
potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad
rīpam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnā-
rentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs.
Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūran-
dum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēvōrum 20
cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus
facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celer-
rimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum
contendit.

Cæsar reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī 25
Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum
Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēqua-
nōrum, contendere, [trīduīque viam ā suīs finibus

prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut māg-
 5 nam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen inter-
 mittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs
 10 montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Panic in the Roman Army.

15 **39.** Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentariae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incredibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant,
 20 — saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentīs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, prae-
 25 fectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī,
 30 ut timōris suspīciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre



THE APPIAN WAY

poterant ; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam eī quī māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlītēs centu- 5 riōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustīās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē 10 supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs mīlītēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Cæsar rebukes his Officers, dispels their Fears, and declares his Intention to advance at once.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnciliō 15 omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōncilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit : prīmum quōd aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. ‘Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam ad- 20 petisse ; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impul- 25 sus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur?† aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn

minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīl tumultu, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī
5 posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn solum in suis
10 sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārīnt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsīs
15 castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantis iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vīcissee. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs
20 exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum
25 Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut
30 male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam

perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvētiōrum bellō esse per-
spectam.

Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset
repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā
castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset 5
utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs
valeret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequatur, tamen sē
cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret,
sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.' Huic
legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter vir- 10
tūtem cōfidēbat māximē.

Cæsar's Speech arouses Enthusiasm. He advances.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum con-
versae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et
cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est ; prīncepsque decima
legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē 15
optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum ge-
rendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae
legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ordinum
centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent : 'Sē
neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē 20
summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse ex-
istimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere
exquisītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex aliīs eī māximam
fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā cir-
cuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, 25
ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn
intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ario-
vistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī
abesse.

Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arces-
situm ā Gallīs ; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque prae-
miīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse ; sēdīs habēre
in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte
5 datōs ; stīpendium capere iūre belli quod victōrēs
victīs impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed
Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnīs Galliae cīvitatīs
ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habu-
isse ; eās omnīs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc
10 superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum
parātum esse dēcertāre ; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum
esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id
tempus pependerit.

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et prae-
15 sidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, idque sē hāc spē
petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium re-
mittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter
sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam
adpetierit.

20 Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trā-
dūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae
causā facere : ēius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi ro-
gātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed
dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam popu-
25 lum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum
populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum.
Quid sibi vellet ? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret ?
Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nos-
tram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs
30 fīnīs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs quod
in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret,

nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum
ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs
Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs conten-
tīōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habu-
issent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. 5

Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā
quem exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī
causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum
dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō,
sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, 10
multis sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī
grātum esse factūrum ; id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūn-
tīōs compertum habēre quōrum omnium grātiā atque
amīcitiā ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dis-
cessisset et liberā possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādi- 15
disset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et
quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et
periculō cōfectūrum.’

Cæsar refuses to yield, and gives his Reasons.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt
quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset : ‘ Neque suam 20
neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē
meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam
potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō su-
perātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Māximō,
quibus populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvin- 25
ciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod
sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret,
populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium ; sī
iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberā dēbēre esse
Galliam, quam bellō victā suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.’ 30

The Germans make a Treacherous Attack which breaks up the Conference.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūnti-
 ātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere,
 et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs
 conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs
 5 recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in
 hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis
 dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen
 committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī
 posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs.
 10 Posteaquam in volgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adro-
 gantiā in coloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānis
 interdīxisset, impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcis-
 sent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dīrēmisset, multō māior
 alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī in-
 15 iectum est.

Cæsar declines a Second Interview, but sends Envoys, who are treacherously seized by Ariovistus.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs
 mittit: ‘Velle sē dē hīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī
 coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī
 aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, sī id
 20 minus vellet, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.’
 Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis
 quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinērī nōn poterant
 quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum [ē suis]
 sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et homi-
 25 nibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum
 vīsum est C. Valerium Proçillum, C. Valerī Caburī
 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, —

cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitātē dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et M. Mētium, quī hospitio 5 Ariovisti ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōspēxisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: ‘Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?’ Cōnantis dīcere prohibuit 10 et in catēnās coniēcit.

Manœuvering and Skirmishing. A Specimen of German Tactics.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō 15 cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn 20 deēsset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestri proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germānī exercue- rant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō pedītēs vėlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā 25 singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipien- 30

dum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar fortifies Another Camp beyond Ariovistus.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, ne diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō
5 in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dic-
10 tum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiæ nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcūs Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere
15 iussit. Mūnītis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but no General Engagement, owing to the Superstitions of the Germans.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs
20 prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcīt. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppūgnāret mīsīt. Ācriter utrimque
25 ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et inlātīs et acceptīs volneribus in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem

Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut mātres familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātionibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne ; eās ita dīcere : ‘ Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī 5 ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.’

Preparations for the Battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālārīos omnīs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne mīlitum legiōnārīōrum prō 10 hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālārīis ūteretur ; ipse triplici īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, 15 Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdis et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīsentīs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent. 20

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, ut eōs testīs suae quisque virtutis habēret ; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostīs sīgnō datō im- 25 petum fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis cōminus gladiīs pūgnātum est.

At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga īnsilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum
 5 hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātū praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam eī quī inter aciem versābantur,
 10 tur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt.

Rout of the Germans and Recovery of the Two Envoys.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfisi
 15 trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sēcum
 20 dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae filiae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem
 25 hostīs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius ca-
 30 lamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōné quicquam

fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sorti-
bus cōsultum dicēbat utrum īgnī statim necārētur an
in aliud tempus reservārētur ; sortium beneficiō sē
esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum
reductus est.

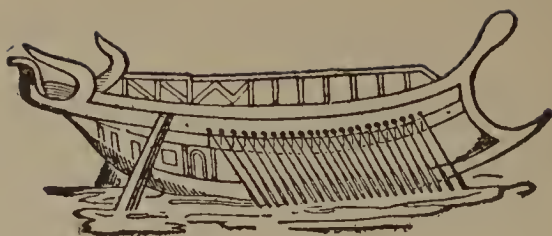
5

Cæsar settles the Army in Winter Quarters and retires to Cis-
alpine Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī
ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt ;
quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs
īnsecūtī māgnū ex eīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar
ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius
paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in
Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit ; hībernīs Labiēnum prae-
posuit ; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agen-
dōs profectus est.



Signa.



Nāvis Longa.

BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. B.C. 57.

League of the Belgian Tribes against the Romans. Reasons
for this.

CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita utī suprā
dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferē-
bantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnīs
Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus,
5 contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter
sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod
verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus no-
ster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis
sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in
10 Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum
hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferē-
bant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs im-
periis studēbant, — ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā
ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs
15 facultātis habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī
minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

Cæsar takes the Field against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās
legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit, et initā
aestāte in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pe-
20 dium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia

esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. 5 Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quin ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finis Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opī-
niōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs
sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, prī-
mōs civitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent : ‘Sē suaque
omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī
permittere ; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsisse 15
neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parā-
tōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et op-
pidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre ;
reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī
cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tan- 20
tumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs
quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre
et īdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque
magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēterrere potuerint
quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.’ 25

Organization and Strength of the Belgæ as told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae civitātēs quantaque
in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat :
plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque
antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsē-
disse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sō- 30

lōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni
 Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finīs
 ingredi prohibuerint ; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rerum
 memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritatem māgnōsque spī-
 5 ritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum
 omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā
 quod propinquitatibus adfinitatibusque coniūctī, quan-
 tam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum con-
 ciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum
 10 inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et homi-
 num numerō valēre ; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia
 centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō elēcta mīlia sexāgintā,
 tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs
 suōs esse finitimōs ; finīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque
 15 agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam
 memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī
 cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britan-
 niae imperium obtinuerit ; nunc esse rēgem Galbam ;
 ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam
 20 tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri ; oppida habēre
 numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā ; toti-
 dem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur
 longissimēque absint ; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Am-
 biānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii
 25 mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs to-
 tidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia ; Condrūsōs,
 Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Ger-
 mānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Cæsar takes up a Fortified Position beyond the Aisne.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne
 30 prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīnci-

pumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dī-
viciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō
opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs
hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tem- 5
pore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās
Haeduī in fīnīs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum
agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs *datīs* mandātīs eum ā
sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum
locum coāctās ad sē venīre [vīdit] neque iam longē 10
abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs
cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rē-
mōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque
ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum
rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab 15
hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque
cīvitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent effi-
ciēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium
pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum
lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit ; castra in altitū- 20
dinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum
mūnīrī iubet.

Attack on Bibrax by the Belgæ.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō
impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē 25
sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum
oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne
hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs
iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est,
testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. 30

Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, 5 quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit : nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Cæsar relieves Bibrax, whereupon the Belgæ advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus 10 quī nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et funditorēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit ; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud 15 oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt ; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius 20 milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Cæsar strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit ; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur. 25 Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum

ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitium redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam 5 obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās 10 proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgæ try to cross the Aisne to attack Cæsar's Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hos- 15 tium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, 20 secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī 25 possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

The Belgæ are defeated and decide to disband.

10. *Caesar* certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostis impeditōs
 5 nostrī in flūmine adgressī māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantis multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō
 10 et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum
 15 in fīnīs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit,
 20 quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

Cæsar pursues them with Great Slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine
 25 neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō viderētur. Hāc rē statim *Caesar* per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat,

exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit ; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi 5 iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt ; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō 10 vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clamōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium ; sub occāsum sōlis 15 sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Surrender of Noviodunum.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in finīs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere 20 ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnitīs vineās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum 25 ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitutīs, māgnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeri- 30 tāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

dēditionē mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

Submission of the Bellovaci.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitatīs atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex
 5 oppidō tradītīs in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō
 10 ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus
 15 suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus intercedes for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitatīs Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab
 20 suis prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātis contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitatī intu-
 25 lissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnīs Belgās amplifi-

cātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.’

Surrender of the Ambiani. Their Description of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit, et quod erat cīvitas māgnā inter Belgās auctōri- 5 tate atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā 10 mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque 15 virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Preparations of the Nervii to receive the Romans.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnīs trīduum iter fēcisset, 20 inveniebat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimis suis (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem 25 bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in

eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

Their Plan of Attack.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum
 5 ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs
 Caesarem secūtī unā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut
 postea ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōn-
 suētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad
 Nervios pervēnerunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter
 10 singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum
 intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma
 legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū
 spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā
 impedimentisque direptīs futurum ut reliquae contrā
 15 cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum
 cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus,
 cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc
 tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedes-
 tribus valent cōpiūs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitā-
 20 tum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent,
 tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in
 lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs, et rubīs sentibusque inter-
 iectīs, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta
 praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī
 25 quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī
 impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii
 existimāvērunt.

Site of the Roman Camp.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs
 dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad

flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs 5 in occultō sēsē continēbant ; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii make a Fierce Attack and throw the Legions into Confusion.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis ; sed ratio ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat 10 ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat ; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat ; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrip̄tae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiō- 15 que impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditoribus sagittariisq̄ue flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam 20 quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis īnsequi audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis qui in silvis abditī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus 25 inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfīrmāverant, subito omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile

pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paenē ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō colle ad
 5 nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The Romans are in a Tight Place, but Discipline restores Order.

20. Caesarī omniā ūnō tempore erant agenda ; vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab
 10 opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērū māgnam partem temporis brevītās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs
 15 erant subsidiō, — scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant ; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis
 20 castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Cæsar hurries about and encourages his Men.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit,
 25 et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius

hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima sīgna cōspēxit ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

10

Fighting under Difficulties.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīltāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōstrāvimus) interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

20

The Romans rout the Atrebates, but the Nervii gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitierant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū āc lassitūdine exanimātōs volneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantīs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistantīs hostīs red-

integratō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur.
 5 At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nū-
 dātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn
 māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs
 Nervii cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī
 summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt ;
 10 quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars
 summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Desperate Situation of the Romans. The Treveri, Panic-
 stricken, withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armā-
 tūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō
 hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra re-
 15 ciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam
 in partem fugam petēbant ; et cālōnēs, quī ab decu-
 mānā portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs
 flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī,
 cum respēxissent et hostis in nostrīs castrīs versārī
 20 vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul
 eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fre-
 mitusque oriēbātur, aliūque aliam in partem perterritī
 ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs
 Treverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singu-
 25 lāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem
 vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī,
 legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs,
 equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque
 in omnīs partis fugere vīdissent, dēspērātis nostrīs



THE RUINS OF THE TEMPLE OF CASTOR AND POLLUX

rēbus domum contendērunt ; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostīs potītōs, civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar turns the Tide by appearing in Person to animate his Men.

25. Caesar ab decimæ legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in 5
ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimæ legiōnis cōnfertōs
mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit,
— quartæ cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs,
sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut volnerātīs aut 10
occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō
virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam
sē sustinēre nōn posset ; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et
nōn nullōs ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere āc
tēla vitāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō 15
subeuntīs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et
rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium
quod submittī posset, — scūtō ab novissimis [ūnī]
militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in
prīmam aciem prōcessit ; centuriōnibusque nōminā- 20
tim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre
et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī
possent. Cūius adventū spē īnlātā mīlitibus āc red-
integrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū
imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam 25
nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Labienus sends Reinforcements.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quæ iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs

militum monuit ut paulatim sese legionēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostis inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius
 5 pugnāre coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae res in
 10 nostris castris gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legionem subsidiō nostris misit. Qui, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō res esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legionēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Romans at last gain the Day. Cæsar's Tribute to Foe-
men worthy of his Steel.

15 **27.** Hōrum adventū tanta rerum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostis cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae vir-
 20 tute dēlērent, omnibus in locis pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his
 25 dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tela in nostrōs conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtutis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum

locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

Practical Annihilation of the Nervii.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc 5 palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrarentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitatīs calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trīs 10 senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit 15 ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci in a Stronghold await Cæsar's Approach.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē 20 nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupīs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquiēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī 25 ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā

facerent, eīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs āc praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs
 5 ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īferrent aliās
 inlātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce
 factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They jeer at the Romans from the Walls.

30. Āc prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex
 oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum
 10 nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii, in cir-
 cuitū xv mīlium, crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī
 oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere
 exstrūctō turrim procul cōstituī vīdērunt, prīmum
 īnrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta
 15 māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: ‘Quibusnam
 manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantu-
 lae statūrae’ — nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae
 māgnitudine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra con-
 temptuī est — ‘tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē con-
 20 locāre cōnfīderent?’

But becoming alarmed they offer to surrender conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus
 vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs
 ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum
 locūtī: ‘Nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā
 25 bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs
 tantā celeritatē prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia
 eōrum potestātī permittēre’ dīxērunt. ‘Ūnum petere
 āc dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā āc mānsuētū-

dine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnis ferre finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consueissent.'

They accept Cæsar's Terms, but secretly retain many of
their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conserva-¹⁰ tūrum, si, prius quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditiōnis nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis. Se id quod in Nervii fecisset faci-
tūrum, finitimisque imperatorum ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent.' Re nuntiata ad¹⁵ suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magnā multitudinem de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque²⁰ in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

Cæsar repulses their Sortie and sells more than Fifty Thousand
into Slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit, ne quam noctu oppidani a militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito (ut intellectum est) consilio, quod deditiōne facta nostrōs²⁵ praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant

et cēlāverant armīs, partim scutīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbā-
 5 tur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs
 10 quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nos-
 15 trīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī universam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant caputū numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

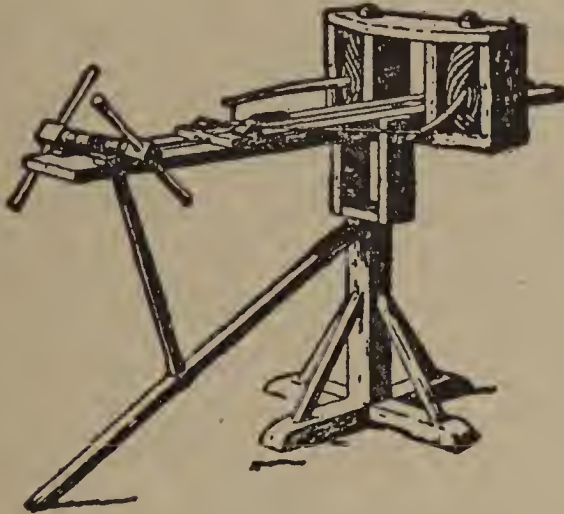
Crassus reduces several Maritime States.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae
 20 cīvitatēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnis eās cīvitatīs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The Army goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is officially celebrated at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta
 25 hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta

factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgatiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricūque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, 5 in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

*Tormentum.*



Tubicinēs.

BOOK III.

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN. B.C. 56.

Galba is stationed at Octodurus to guard the Passes of the Alps.

CUM in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātis, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs
5 pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpīs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant, patēfierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis
10 aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortis duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus,
15 hiemāre ; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partis flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vicī Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum
20 locum vallō fossāque mūnīvit.

The Mountain Tribes seize the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallis concesserat omnīs noctū discessisse, montisque quī impendērent ā māximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et 5 Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā 10 missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accedēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs 15 obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

A Council of War votes to defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptis Galba, cum neque opus 20 hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnciliō celeriter convocatō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in 25 cōnciliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opīnionem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs

itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn
 nūllae ēius modī sententiae dicēbantur ut, impedi-
 mentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus
 eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī
 5 tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōn-
 siliō interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

The Romans fight against Heavy Odds.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōn-
 stituissent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus
 darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcur-
 10 rere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri
 primō integris viribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ūllum
 frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque
 pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur,
 eō occurrere et auxilium ferre ; sed hōc superārī quod
 15 diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant,
 aliī integris viribus succēdēbant: quarum rerum ā
 nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, āc nōn
 modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō qui-
 dem ēius loci ubi cōstitērat relinquendī āc suī reci-
 20 piendī facultās dabātur.

After Six Hours of Desperate Fighting the Romans resolve on a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pūgnā-
 rētur āc nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēfice-
 rent, atque hostēs ācrius īstārent languidiōribusque
 nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent,
 25 rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sex-
 tius Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō
 complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item
 C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et

virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milītēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex 5 labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Defeat of the Gauls. Galba withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita 10 commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt 15 ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis 20 occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātis, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit 25 ibique hiemāvit.

Crassus sends Messengers to collect Supplies among the Maritime Tribes.

7. Hīs rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātā Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgīs, ex-

pulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs], atque ita
 initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās
 quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat,
 subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ēius bellī haec
 5 fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne vii
 proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is,
 quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs
 tribūnōsque mīlitum complūris in finitimās cīvitātis
 frūmentī causā dīmīsīt; quō in numerō erat T. Terra-
 10 sidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Corio-
 solitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

**The Veneti seize the Roman Envoys and instigate other Tribes
 to oppose the Romans.**

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās
 omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvīs
 habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre
 15 cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum
 cēterōs antecēdunt, et in māgnō impetū maris *vāstī*
 atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent
 ipsī, omnīs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōsuērunt habent
 vectigālīs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sili atque Ve-
 20 lānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedis-
 sent recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte
 finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā
 cōnsilia), eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque
 retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs
 25 inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs
 eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reli-
 quāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā
 māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum
 servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā cele-

riter ad suam sententiam perductā communem lēgationem ad P. Crassum mittunt : ‘ Si velit suos recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.’

Both Sides prepare for War.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvis interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, remigēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō 10 Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus admisissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnīs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitudine periculi bellum parāre et māximē ea 15 quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter 20 frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant ; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās 25 nōvisse ; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. Hīs initīs cōsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum 30

cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt ; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arces-
5 sunt.

Cæsar's Reasons for carrying on the War.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprà ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant : iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus
10 tot civitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmīs nē hāc parte neg-
lēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnīs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī,
omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et con-
15 diciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Cæsar sends Officers to Various Strategic Points. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit.
20 Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat ; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs xii et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitā-
25 niam proficīscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam

manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquīsque pācātis regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

5

Natural Advantages of Position of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmuntūriīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis] accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs 10 adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī quandō — māgnitudine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibūs adaequātīs — dēspērāre fortūnīs suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius 15 reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque 20 erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

Description of their Ships and Naval Tactics.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārū nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum 25 aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērectae atque item pūppēs ad māgnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore

ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam ; transtra
 ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōfixa clāvis fer-
 reīs digitī pollicis crassitudine ; ancorae prō fūnibus
 ferreīs catēnīs revinctae ; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque
 5 tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam līnī atque
 eius ūsūs īnscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērīsi-
 mile) quod tantās tempestātis Ōceanī tantōsque im-
 petūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī
 vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum
 10 hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī eius modī cōgressus erat ut
 unā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret ; reliqua
 prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiōra
 et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō
 nocēre poterant — tanta in eīs erat firmitūdō — neque
 15 propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādē
 dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur.
 Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō
 dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs
 cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et
 20 cōtīs timērent ; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus
 cāsus erat extimēscendus.

**The Battle. The Romans find a Method to overcome their
 Disadvantages.**

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi
 intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium
 fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse,
 25 statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac
 primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum
 parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae
 profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt ;
 neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mili-

tum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat ut neque 5 ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfixaeque longuriis nōn absimili formā, mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs 10 dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore 15 ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat pro- 20 pinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

Defeat of the Veneti and Capture of their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis 25 complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negō- 30

tium cōficiendum m̄ximē fuit opportūna ; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē III ūsque ad sōlis occāsum
5 pūgnārētur.

The Veneti surrender. Cæsar makes an Example of them.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō cōnvēnerant, tum nāvium quod
10 ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant ; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reli-
15 quum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub coronā vēndidit.

Lieutenant Sabinus is stationed among the Venelli, who try to provoke him to Battle.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in
20 finis Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx āc summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitatū quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum m̄gnāsque cōpiās coēgerat ; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulercī, Eburovīcēs, Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli
25 esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniunxērunt ; m̄gnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab

agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem 5 Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris prae-buit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī sum- 10 mam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn exīstimābat.

By a Pretense of Fear he induces Viridovix to attack him.

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs prae- 15 miīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostīs trāns-eat et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex 20 castrīs exercitum edūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum 25 Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibārī-ōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmīttunt 30

quam ab eīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendunt. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlētīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus gains a Decisive Victory.

5 **19.** Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclīvis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minīmum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnerunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat.
 10 Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subītō duābus portīs ēruptionem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscentiā āc dēfatīgatiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum
 15 ferrent āc statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlites nostrī cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est
 20 certior factus; cīvitatēque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōptus est animus, sic mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātis perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Crassus goes into Aquitania and is attacked by the Sotiates.

✓ **20.** Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquī-
 25 tāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne hominū] est tertia pars Galliae [est aestimanda], — cum intellegeret

in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissīs prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frumentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae [ex] hīs regiōnibus) nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnis exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs 10 magnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrīs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Their Defeat and Surrender.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscen- 20 tulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfectī volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrisque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temp- 25 tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius rei sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, proptereā quod multis locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentīā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellexērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēdi- 30

tiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his Brothers in Arms attempt a Sally.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam
5 imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō utī omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsci-
10 scant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cūius sē amicitiae dēvōviset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehemen-
15 terque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādē dēditiōnis condiciōne ūteretur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus takes the Field against other Aquitanian Tribes who are Conspiring.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finīs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum verō
20 barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitātis lēgātī
25 quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs verō ei dēligun-

tur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnīs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, — suās cōpiās 5 propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, — nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn 10 pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōncilium dēlātā, ubi omnīs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

Crassus attacks the Enemy's Camp.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īstitutā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid 15 hostēs cōsiliī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmīcātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter in- 20 opiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īfirmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque 25 opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

At First they hold their Own.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs
 5 et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praeberent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn
 10 eādē esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

But finally lose their Camp and flee.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs
 15 eīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōspici possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs
 20 prius in hostium castrīs cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī, aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, acrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique
 25 circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōsectātus, ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrīsque

convēnisse cōstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes tender their Submission.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā māxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt ; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnes, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Taru- 5 sātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātes, Cocosātes ; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cæsar invades the Territories of the Morini and Menapii, who take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī 10 Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit ; quī longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs quae 15 proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs 20 subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt. 25

Storms prevent a Continuance of the Campaign.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militi-

bus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam mātē-
riam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat
et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili
celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum
5 iam pecus atque extrēma impēdimenta ā nostris tenē-
rentur, ipsi dēnsiorēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt
tempestātēs cōsecūtae uti opus necēssariō intermit-
terētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus
milites continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omni-
10 bus eōrum agris, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar
exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis
item civitatibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hī-
bernīs conlocāvit.

*Galli.*



Rōstra.

BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.—FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, pressed by the Suevi, cross the Rhine into Gaul.
Character and Customs of the Suevi.

EĀ quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvīs complūris annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum ¹⁰ bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. . Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil ¹⁵ est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā

exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō
 officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā
 voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs alit et immānī corporum
 māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuē-
 5 tūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs
 praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter
 exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavā-
 rentur in flūminibus.

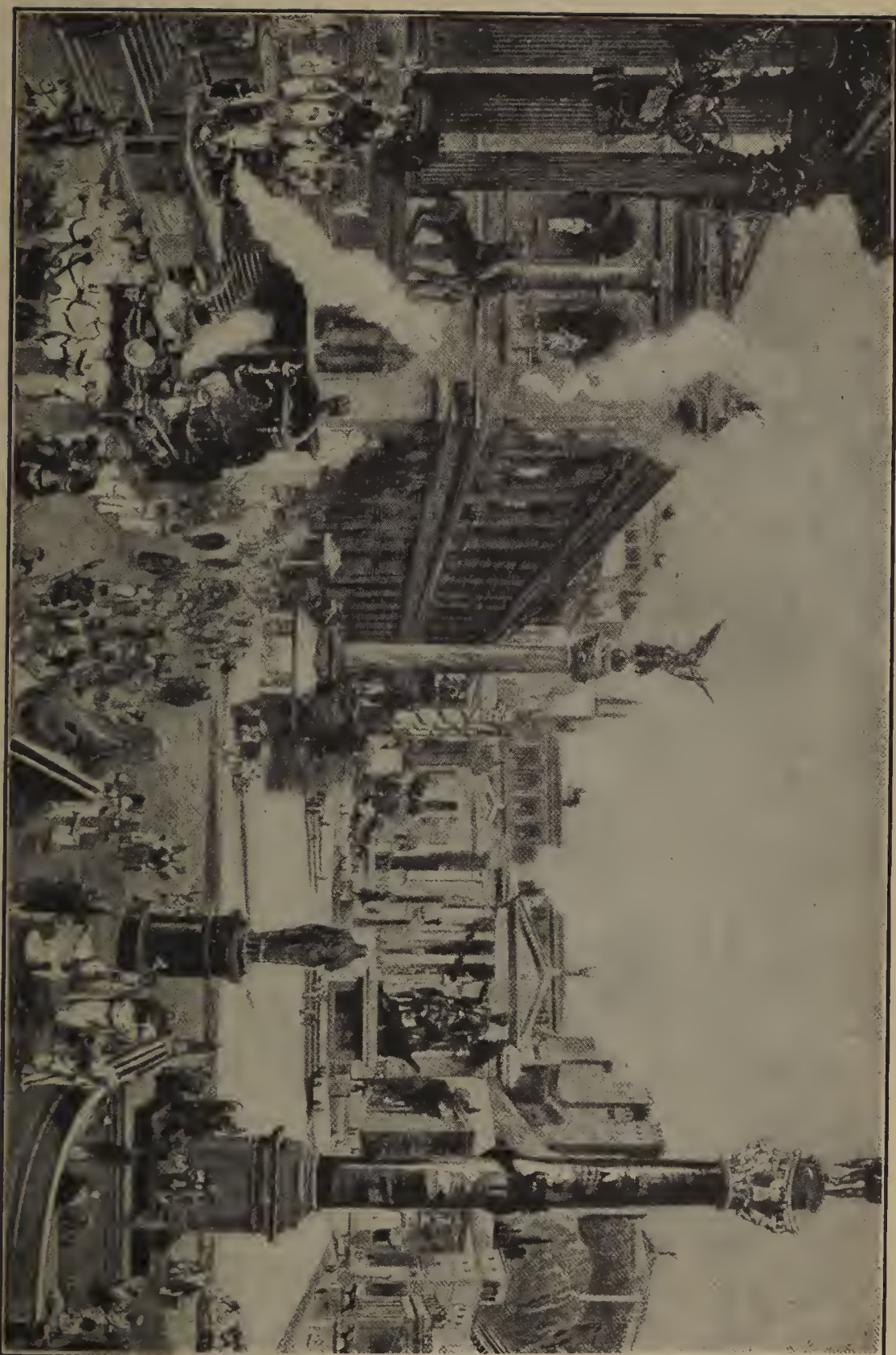
Little Intercourse with other Tribes. Cavalry Tactics.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō
 10 cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem
 ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs,
 quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō
 parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātis nōn ūtuntur ; sed
 quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec
 15 cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedi-
 bus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgīō
 adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est,
 recipiunt ; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam
 20 aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad
 quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs
 paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī
 nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remol-
 lēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

Description of the Ubii.

25 3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam
 lātissimē ā suis fīnibus vacāre agrōs : hāc rē sīgnificārī
 māgnū numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn
 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēvīs circiter mīlia



THE ROMAN FORUM

(As it appeared in Caesar's time)

passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitas ampla atque florēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem [quod] Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēvī multīs saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitatīs fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, expelled from Germany, seize the Territories of the Menapii.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprà dīximus, quī complūris annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis aditū perterriti ex eis aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuērunt dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdis regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopinantisque Menapiōs oppressērunt; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiorēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs in-

terfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea
pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior
fieret, flūmen trāsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedi-
ficiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cō-
5 piis aluērunt.

The Gallic Character was the Same then as it is To-day.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmi-
tatem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capi-
endīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil
his committendum existimāvit. Est enī hōc Gallicae
10 cōsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere
cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit
aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis
volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant
quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His
15 rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti dē summīs saepe
rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre
necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque
ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Cæsar prepares to make War on the German Invaders.

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri
20 bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exer-
citum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore
suspīcātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab
nōn nūllis civitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs
uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae [que] postu-
25 lāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germānī
lātius iam vagābantur et in finīs Eburōnum et Condrū-
sōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant.
Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cōgnō-

verat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

Their Defiant and Boastful Message.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Ger- 5
mānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: ‘Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacesantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō 10
[haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vērunt invitōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilis esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possē- 15
derint: sēsē ūnīs Suēvīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēmīnem quem nōn superāre possint.’

He orders them to leave Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: ‘Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam 20
esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse quī suōs finīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōsidere, quōrum sint 25
lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.’

They parley to gain Time.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs ~~relātūrōs~~ dīxērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs ; intereā nē propius sē castra ~~mōveret~~ petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnō-
5 verat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam ; hōs expectārī equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in
10 finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finis Nantuātium, Helvē-
15 tiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur ; et ubi Ōceanō adpropin- quāvit, in plūris dēfluit partīs, multīs ingentibusque īnsulis effectis, quārum pars māgna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus at-
20 que ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Cæsar advances, More Negotiations.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur ; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē
25 longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi-

que ut potestatem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī ; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrاندō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant ; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō perti- 5 nēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur ; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum III aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit ; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cōgnō- 10 sceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostis proeliō lacesserent ; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Treacherous Attack on the Roman Cavalry by the Germans.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōn- 15 spexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab 20 hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt ; rūsus hīs resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equis complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent 25 quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur III et LXX ; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc 30

Cæsar determines to bridge the Rhine preparatory to carrying the War into Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trāseundum : quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus
 5 eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. (Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse, neque proeliō inter-
 10 fuisse, post fugam suōrū sē trāns Rhēnum in finīs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīssisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt : ‘Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum
 15 finīre ; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?’ ‘Ubiū autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere
 20 ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvīs premerentur ; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret ; id sibi *ad* auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum.’ Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem
 25 ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōnē et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem, altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum 10 duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eis item contrāria duō ad eundem modum 15 iūcta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, bīnis utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinctēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operīs firmitūdo atque ea rerum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā mātēriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque 25 cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sēcūs sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rerum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent. 30

Cæsar crosses into Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat compor-
tārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar
ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in
finīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus
5 cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque
amīcitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque
ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō
pōns instituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus
eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habē-
10 bant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportā-
verant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdididerant.

But after a Short Time returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morā-
tus, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentisque
succīsīs, sē in finīs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs au-
15 xilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēvīs premerentur, haec
ab eīs cōgnōvit: ‘Suēvōs posteāquam per explorā-
tōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō
habitō nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmisisse, utī dē oppidīs
dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs
20 dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum
in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium
fēre regiōnum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hīc Rō-
mānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre
cōstituisse.’

25 Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōn-
fectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-
stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs
ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus om-
nīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem

et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Cæsar resolves to invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī con- 5 tendit: quod omnibus fērē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīisset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, 10 aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercā- 15 tōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat. 20

First sending Officers to reconnoitre.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat 25 brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō
 ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatibus ad eum
 lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsides dare atque im-
 periō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis
 5 liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā per-
 manērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis ūnā Com-
 mium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi
 cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat
 et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctō-
 10 ritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic
 imperat quās possit adeat cīvitatīs, hortēturque ut po-
 pulī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ven-
 tūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus
 quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi āc sē
 15 barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Cae-
 sarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

Apology of the Morini. A Fleet is prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium (parandārum)
 causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum
 lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō
 20 excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētū-
 dinis imperīi bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque
 ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi
 Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque
 post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī
 25 gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque
 hās (tantulārum) rērum occupatiōnēs Britanniae antepō-
 nendās iūdicābat, māgnū eis numerum obsidum im-
 perat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus
 circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis [contrāctisque], quot
 30 satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat,

quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum 5 exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpiciū Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum (tenēre) iussit. 10

The Fleet crosses the Channel. Difficulties of Landing.

23. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōscendere et sē sequī iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum 15 primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus (expositās) hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam 20 idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs (eō) convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs 25 postulārent (ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem mōtum habērent), ad (nūtum) et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs

ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvīs cōstituit.

The Britons oppose a Landing.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, prae-
missō equitatū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in
5 proeliīs ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs
nāvibus egredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa
difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in
altō cōstituī nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtīs
locīs, impeditīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum
10 oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flucti-
bus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum;
cum illi aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī
omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter
tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus
15 rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omninō generis
pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studio quō in
pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōsuērant nītēbantur.

Which Cæsar, in Spite of Difficulties, effects. A Brave Deed.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās,
quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitatior et mōtus ad
20 ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus
et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī,
atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs prōpellī ac
submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.
Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō
25 genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mili-
tibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris,
quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs

legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commīlitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere ; ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium prae-stiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcīt atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5 nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitte-rētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex pro-ximīs [prīmīs] nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

When the Romans gain the Beach the Britons flee inland.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācritur. Nostrī tamen, 10 quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur ; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōn- 15 spēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniver-sōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantīs 20 cōspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt ; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad 25 pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Submission of the Britons.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-

runt ; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Unā cum his lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum
 5 ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēceraut: tum proeliō factō remisērunt ; et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus
 10 quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit ; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt.
 15 Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē civitātisque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports encounter a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus
 20 suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset ; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae
 25 referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur ; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Which does Considerable Damage.

✓ 29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvis, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in aridum 5 subdūxerat, aestus complēverat ; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis 10 āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent ; et omnia deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvis erant ūsuī ; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in 15 Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons seeing Cæsar's Plight plan to renew Hostilities.

✓ 30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānis 20 deēsse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs pro- 25 hibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere ; quod hīs superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea belli īferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex

castris discēdere et suos clam ex agris dēdūcere coepērunt.

Cæsar suspects their Design and repairs his Ships.

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnō-
 verat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō
 5 quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit
 suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia com-
 parābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotīdiē in castra
 cōferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs,
 eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās
 10 ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continēti
 comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā
 militibus administrārētur, xii nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs
 ut nāvigārī *satis* commodē posset effēcit.

Attack on a Roman Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
 15 frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur vii, neque ūllā
 ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, — cum pars
 hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra
 ventitāret, — eī quī prō portis castrōrum in statiōne
 erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam
 20 cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem
 legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus,
 aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsili, cohortis quae in
 statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex
 reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī
 25 et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius
 ā castris prōcessisset, suos ab hostibus premī atque
 aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus
 tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs

partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque 5 essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons' Use of War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turbās insinuā- 10 vērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum hābeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis 15 praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint. 20

Cæsar relieves the Foragers. The Britons assemble in Force.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse 25 tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in

agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūris diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partis dīmīsērunt paucitā-
 5 temque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra
 10 vērērunt.

Defeat of the Britons.

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante
 15 dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eīs
 20 occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cæsar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in conti-
 25 nentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigationē subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolūmēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eīs onerā-

riae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā delātae sunt.

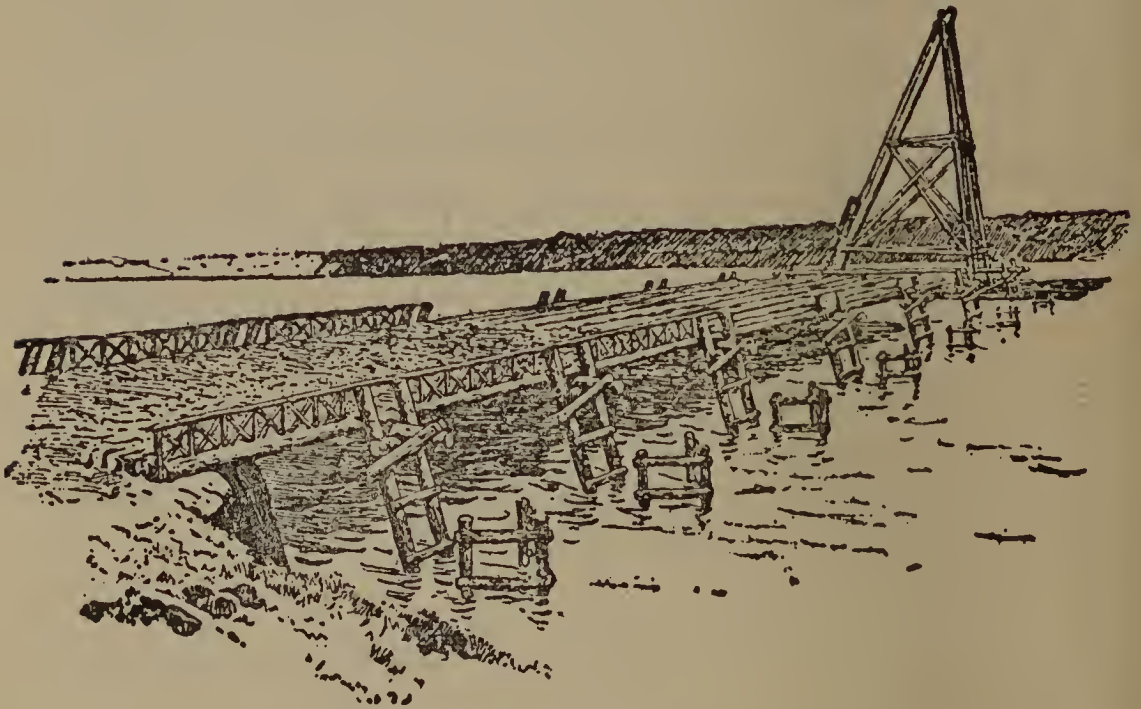
"The Morini attack a Roman Detachment."

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi mīlitēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, 5 spē praedae adducti primō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter 10 mīlia vi convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt. Interim nostri mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris iii fortissimē pūgnāverunt, et paucis volneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs 15 abiectis armis terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

But are subdued by Labienus. Thanksgiving at Rome.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsīt. Quī cum propter 20 siccitātis palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni pervēnerunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnis legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātis, frūmentis succīsīs, 25 aedificiis incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēperunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū
5 dēcrēta est.



Pōns ā Caesare in Rhēnō factus.



Arcus.

BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—FRESH RISINGS OF THE
GAULS. B.C. 54.

*Cæsar orders a Suitable Fleet built for a Second Invasion of
Britain. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.*

L DOMITIŌ Ap. ClaudiŌ cōsulibus, discēdēns
ab hibernis Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis
facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat quōs legiōnibus prae-
fēcerat utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvis aedifi-
candās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum 5
formamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī
subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus
in nostrō mari ūtī cōsuēvimus; atque id eō magis,
quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus
māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera āc 10
multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandā, paulō
lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquis ūtimur maribus. Hās
omnis āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum
humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās
nāvis ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus 15
Galliae citeriōris perāctis in Īllyricum proficīscitur,
quod ā Pīrūstis finitimā partem prōvinciae incur-
siōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitāti-
bus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre
iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mit- 20

tunt quī doceant nihil eārum rērum publicō factum
 cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōstrant omnibus
 ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne
 eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem
 5 addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem
 persecūtūrum dēmōstrat. Eis ad diem adductis ut
 imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātis dat quī litem
 aestiment poenamque cōstituant.

**He orders the New Fleet to assemble at the Port Itius. Trouble
 among the Treveri.**

2. Hīs cōfectis rēbus conventibusque perāctis, in
 10 citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum
 proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus
 hibernis, singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium
 rērum inopiā circiter DC eius generis, cūius suprā
 dēmōstrāvimus, nāvīs et longās xxviii invēnit in-
 15 strūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucis
 diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātis militibus atque
 eis quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit
 atque omnis ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex
 portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse
 20 cōgnōverat circiter milium passuum xxx [trānmis-
 sum] ā continentī. Huic rei quod satis esse vīsum
 est militum reliquit; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis
 iii et equitibus dccc in finis Trēverōrum proficisci-
 tur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque im-
 25 periō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre
 dicēbantur.

Rival Chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae
 equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhē-

numque, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnis in officiō futūrōs 5 neque ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit; quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eisque qui per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per 10 mediōs finīs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteaquam nōn nullī prīncipēs ex eā civitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis 15 prīvātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitāti cōnsulere nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsere-rētur Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: ‘Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis 20 nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberē-tur; itaque civitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suas civitātisque fortunās eius fidei permissūrum.’

He decides in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīceren- 25 tur quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. His adductis, in eis filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, 30

quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō
 5 ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrabātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiā inter suōs minui]; et quī iam ante
 10 inimicō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

The Muster of the Troops at the Port Itius.

5. Hīs rēbus cōstitutīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvis, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cur-
 15 sum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit, numerō milia III, principēsque ex omnibus cīvitatibus; ex quibus per-
 20 paucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hæduan, again makes Trouble.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre
 25 in primīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Cae-

sare rēgnū cīvitatīs dēferri ; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā 5 relinquerētur ; partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam in obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēptā, principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārīque coepit utī in continentī 10 remanērent ; metū territāre nōn sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur ; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret ; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, 15 quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitatī Haeduae dīgnitatīs tribuēbat, coercendum atque dē- 20 terrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat ; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac rei pūblīcae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, 25 quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret ; nihilō tamen sēcūs omnia ēius cōsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem milītēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvis iubet. At om- 30

nium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā rē nūtiatā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, māgnam partem equitātus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat ; si vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet ; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū defendere suorumque fidem implōrāre
 10 coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt ; at equitēs Haedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Cæsar sets Sail for Britain and finds the Coast deserted.

8. Hīs rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continente cum
 15 legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relictō, ut portus tuērētur et rei frūmentariae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, ad
 20 sōlis occāsum nāvis solvit ; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit ; et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspēxit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam par-
 25 tem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiore aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārent. Accessum est ad Britan-
 30 niam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore ; neque



A VIEW OF THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT APPEARS TO-DAY

in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac 5 sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army lands, marches inland, and gains a Slight Victory.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā 10 vigiliā ad hostis contendit, — eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefecit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illi equitātū atque es- 15 sedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī (ut videbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crē- 20 brīs arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At milites legiōnis vii, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucis vulneribus 25 acceptis. Sed eōs fugientis longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōsūptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

A Storm wrecks the Fleet.

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad
 5 Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvīs adflīctās atque in litus ēiectās esse ; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māg-
 10 num esse incommodum acceptum.

But the Ships are repaired.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur ; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs [līterīs] cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissīs circiter XL
 15 nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet ; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvīs instituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc
 20 labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductīs nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis eāsdem
 25 cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit ; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellique administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō ; cūius finēs

ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant ; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant. 5

Britain and its Inhabitants.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt ; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae āc bellī īferendī causā ex Belgīō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō per- 10 vērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut nummō aereō] aut tāleis ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātis 15 prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia ; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn 20 putant ; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quā in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Geography of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est 25 ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum

vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem ; quā ex parte est Hibernia, insula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est
 5 insula quae appellātur Mona ; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae insulae exīstimantur ; dē quibus insulis nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuos xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris bre-
 10 viōrēs esse quam in continentī noctis vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, dcc milium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nulla est obiecta terra ; sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc milium passuum
 15 dccc in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

Customs of the Inhabitants.

14. Ex hīs omnibus lōngē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Intē-
 20 riōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū ; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā
 25 praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs ; sed quī sunt ex hīs nātī eōrum habentur liberī quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Defeat of the Britons.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collisque compulerint ; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īsecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. 5 At illī intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statione prō castris conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt ; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his primīs 10 legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illi plūribus sub- 15 missis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Mode of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium āc prō castris dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īsequi cēdentis possent neque ab signis discēdere 20 audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem ; equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvisent, ex essedis dēsilīrent et pedibus dispari proeliō 25 contenderent. [Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēdentibus et īsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur stationēsque dispo-

sitās habērent, atque aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

Another Defeat.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam pri-
 5 diē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic uti ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.
 10 Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedis dēsili-
 15 endī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summis nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

Cæsar crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tame-
 20 sim in finis Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omninō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixisque
 25 mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitis ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritatē atque eō impetū milites iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstā-

rent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Guerilla Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, 5 mīlibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impedītis āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus 10 noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerať, omnibus viīs sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat; et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine 15 legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandis incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum *in* labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Submission of the Trinobantes.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum 20 regiōnum cīvītās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Gal-liam] vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā cīvītāte rēgnū obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt 25 pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvītātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL

frumentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fecērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frumentumque mīsērunt.

Other Tribes follow their Example. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum
 5 iniuriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs,
 Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dedunt.
 Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cas-
 sivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō
 satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēne-
 10 rit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impe-
 dītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis
 hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō
 proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē
 nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex
 15 partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper mo-
 rātī militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque
 aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus
 pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī
 atque interfectī.

Cassivellaunus finally yields.

20 **22.** Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus
 ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,
 quibus regiōnibus III rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Car-
 vilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs
 imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē
 25 imprōvisō adorianentur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad
 castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptione factā multīs eōrum
 interfectīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorīge, suōs

incolumis redūxerunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitatū, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter 5
repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Brittanīa penderet cōstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu 10
Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectās. Hīs dēductis, quod et captīvōrum māgnū numerū habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum 15
reportāre instituit. Āc sic accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae milites portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs exposi- 20
tis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūraverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā expectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, 25
necessariō angustius milites conlocāvit, āc summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnīsq̄e incolumis nāvis perdūxit.

On Account of the Scarcity of Supplies, the Army is quartered
in Detachments for the Winter.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātis angustius prōvēnerat, coactus est aliter ac superiōribus annis exercitum in hibernis con-
5 locāre legiōnēsque in plūris civitātis distribuere; ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in confiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trīs in Bello-
10 vacis conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefecit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortis v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorigis et
15 Catuvolcī erant, misit. Hīs militibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter
20 eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

Tasgetius, a Friendly Chief, is killed by the Carnutes.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat

ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī palam multis ex cīvitatē auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūris pertinēbat, nē cīvitas eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex 5 Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre; quōrumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātis quaestōribusque] quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum 10 locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack Sabinus's Camp.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad finis rēgnī suī Sabinō Cottaēque praestō fuissent frūmen- 15 tumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitoque oppressis lignātōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque unā ex parte His- 20 pānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdiret: habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus con- 25 trōversiās minui posse spērārent.

Treacherous Advice of Ambiorix.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex

Hispaniā quīdam, qui iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: ‘Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī cōfītērī dēbēre, quod
5 ēius, operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere cōsuēsset, quodque ei et filius et frātris filius ab Caesare remissi essent quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne
10 castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaque esse ēiusmodi imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinem.

‘Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod re-
15 pentinae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit; id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppūgnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset; nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūni libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur.

‘Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre
25 nunc sē ratiōnem officī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salūti cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne prius quam finitimī sentiant,
30 ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē

pollicērī et iūre iūrاندō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter per
suōs finis datūrum ; quod cum faciat, et cīvitatī sēsē
cōnsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius
meritis grātiā referre.’ Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit
Ambiorīx.

5

**The Question of leaving the Camp is discussed. Some Officers
object.**

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs
dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea
dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant ;
māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitatē
ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte 10
populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēden-
dum. Itaque ad cōncilium rem dēferunt māgnaque
inter eōs existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius com-
plūrēsque tribūnī militum et primōrum ōrdinum cen-
turiōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hibernīs 15
iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant ; quan-
tāsvis [māgnās] cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī
posse mūnitīs hibernīs docēbant ; rem esse testimō-
niō, quod primum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vol-
neribus inlātis fortissimē sustinuerint ; rē frūmentāriā 20
nōn premī ; intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā
Caesare conventūra subsidia ; postrēmō, quid esse
levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summis rēbus
capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus, however, is Anxious to withdraw.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius ‘Sērō factūrōs’ clāmitābat, 25
‘cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctīs Germānīs con-
vērissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs

hībernīs essent acceptum; brevem cōsulendī esse
occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in
Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendī Tasgetī
cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille
5 adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs
esse. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre;
subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ario-
vistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdere
Galliā tot contumēliis acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī
10 imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei militāris ex-
stīnctā. Postrēmō, quis hōc sibi persuādēret sine
certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscen-
disse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse
tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad
15 proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum
Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positā
salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent
cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn prae-
sēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs
20 esset timenda.'

Cotta gives in to Sabinus.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā,
cum ā Cottā primisque ordinibus ācritur resisterētur,
“Vincite,” inquit, “sī ita voltis,” Sabinus, et id
clārīōre vōce, ut māgna pars militum exaudīret;
25 “neque is sum,” inquit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbīs
mortis periculō terrear: hī sapient; sī gravius quid
acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent; quī, si per tē
liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūcti
commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn

rēiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant.”

The Army marches out of Camp.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnciliō ; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant ‘Nē suā dissēsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant ; facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent ; contrā in dissēsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.’ Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs ; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur quā rē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur.] Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine māximisque impedimentis.

20

They are ambushed by the Gauls in a Narrow Defile.

32. At hostēs, postea quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātis insidiīs bipartītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant ; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre adscēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus loses his Head completely. Cotta keeps Cool, but makes a Fatal Mistake.

33. Tum dēnum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortisque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōsuēvit
 5 quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīli-
 10 tis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēiusmodī cāsū
 15 reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostris mīlitibus spem minuit et hostis ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut volgō mīlītēs ab
 20 signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedīmentis petere atque abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Cunning of Ambiorix.

34. At barbaris cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō
 25 discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita exīstimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numero pūgnandō parēs.] Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā

fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant, et quam 5 in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant [levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse], rūsus sē ad sīgna recipientis īnsequantur.

The Fight goes against the Romans.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impe- 10 tum fēcerat, hostēs vėlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn 15 autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquebātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflictātī, multīs volneribus acceptīs resistēbant; et māgnā parte diēi cōnsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram 20 octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō filiō sub- 25 venit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnīs cohortīs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

Sabinus tries to get Terms from Ambiorix.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpre-

tem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet : ‘Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre ; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat ;
 5 ipsī vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.’ Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur : spērāre sē ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem
 10 itūrum negat atque in eō perseverat.

**He is treacherously slain. Utter Rout of the Roman Army.
 Few escape.**

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet ; et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere, imperātum facit suisque ut
 15 idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs
 20 perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī ; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns
 25 occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent ; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsi incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix incites the Aduatuci and Nervii to revolt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitatū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō finitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios per- 5 venit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis quās accēperint iniuriis occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum 10 Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuādet.

Attack on the Camp of Q. Cicero.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt ma- 15 nūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nulli milites, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū inter- 20 ciperentur. Hīs circumventis, māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī ce- riter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in cele- 25 ritate pōnēbant atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Cicero prepares for a Vigorous Defense.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs
 5 admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur: hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.
 10 Nulla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs
 15 contabulantur; pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquebat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervii try to induce Cicero to retire. He refuses.

20 41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviorū, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: ‘Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Ger-
 25 mānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppūgnārī.’ Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suis rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cice-

rōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē incolumibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partis velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 5
‘Nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.’ 10

The Nervii besiege the Camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae 15 essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīsque diēbus 20 turrīs ad altitudinem vāllī, falcīs testūdinesque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

A Furious Assault is gallantly repulsed.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coörtō ventō ferventis fūsiles ex argillā glandīs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strā- 25 mentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitudine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māxi-

mō clāmōre, sic utī partā iam atque explōratā victōriā, turrīs testūdīnēsque agere et scālis vāllum adscendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea prae-sentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur
 5 māximāque tēlōrum multītūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnīs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quis-quam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnā-
 10 rent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus nu-merus hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā
 15 et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnīs remōvērunt; nūtū vōci-busque hostēs sī introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni
 20 parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

The Gallant Deeds of Two Centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās
 25 habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae pro-bandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs con-
 30 trōversiis iūdicābit.” Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quāque pars hostium cōnfertissima

est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostis immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit ; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs 5 prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnanti dextram morātur manum, impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. 10 Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōranti subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit ; [illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur]. Gladiō cominus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit ; dum cupidius īstat, in 15 locum dēiectus īferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus 20 auxiliō salutīque esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

News of the Danger at last reaches Cæsar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum 25 pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Cæsarem mittēbantur ; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfū- 30

gerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātis māgnisque persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus
 5 ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Cæsar summons what Forces he can.

46. Caesar acceptis litteris hōrā circiter xī diēi statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv ; iubet
 10 mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finis legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum
 15 legiōne ad finis Nerviōrum veniat ; reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat expectandam ; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximis hibernis conligit.

And starts out to relieve Cicero.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī
 20 adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impēdimenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitatū, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat re-
 25 linquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernis fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium

impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferri scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset ; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit ; docet omnīs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III milia 5 passuum longē ab suis castris cōsēdisse.

A Letter is Conveyed to Cicero, tied to a Dart.

48. Caesar cōsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum deiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum cōmūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finīs. Ibi ex captivīs 10 cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōscriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōsilia cōgnō- 15 scantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistolā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore ; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, 20 trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrīm adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur ; dēmta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat māximāque omnīs laetitiā adfcit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul 25 vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls advance to meet Cæsar, who avoids a Conflict.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt ; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt ;

haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat ; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat ;
 5 perscribit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum III
 10 prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat māgnī periculī rēs tantulis cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmicare ; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōsīdit et quam aequissimō
 15 potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllis cum impedimētis, tamen angustīs viārum quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim
 20 speculātōribus in omnīs partīs. dīmissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Cæsar, feigning Fear, manoeuvres for Position.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utriūque sēsē suō locō continent : Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant expectā-
 25 bant ; Caesar, si forte timōris simulatiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet ; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rivum-
 que trānsiret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra
 30 accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit.

Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

5

Rout of the Gauls.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt prae-cōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis 10 Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Āc sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitem, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum 15 manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitatūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnūque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs armīs exuit.

20

Cæsar enters the Camp of Cicero and congratulates him and his Men on their Gallant Defense.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēs-que intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat], omnibus suis incolūmibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrīs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; 25 prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine volnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs

sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque conlaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini
 5 et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Posterodie contione habitam rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpam et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium
 10 et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

Disturbances among Various Tribes. Caesar decides to spend the Winter with his Army, owing to the Threatening Condition of Affairs.

53. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter
 15 sexaginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hanc famam ad Treveros perlata Indutiomarus, qui posterodie castra
 20 Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnis in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum III legionibus circum Samarobriam trinīs hibernis hiemare constituit; et, quod tantum motus Galliae exstiterant, totam
 25 hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes ferre Galliae civitates de bello consultabant: nuntios legationesque in omnis partis dimittebant; et quid reliqui consili



THE FAMOUS COLOSSEUM AT ROME

caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaue in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit quīn aliquem dē cōsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, 5 quem legiōnī xiii praefēcerat, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius milibus passuum viii ab hibernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris, discessisse adeō 10 ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

Several Tribes prepare to revolt.

54. At Caesar, prīcipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs, aliās territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est cīvitās in 15 prīmīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat (cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris, cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant), interficere pūblicō cōsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac pro- 20 fūgisset, ūsque ad finīs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt; et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīcipēs bellī 25 īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtatiōnem attulit ut — praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs — nūlla ferē 30

civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime quod qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praefererentur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse
 5 ut populi Romani imperia perferrent, gravissime dolerent.

Movements of Indutiomarus.

55. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt quin trans Rhenum legati-
 tos mitterent, civitatis sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur,
 10 magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu; non esse amplius fortunam
 15 temptaturus. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilominus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum
 20 legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

With the Aid of many Tribes he decides to attack Labienus.

56. Ubi intellexit ultrò ad se venire, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientiam facinoris instigare, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare,
 25 neque sibi voluntariorum copias de fore si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli, quo lege communis omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; qui ex eis novissimus venit in conspectum multitudinis

omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. In eō concilio Cingetorīgem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprà dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in concilio 5 prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per finīs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum; āc prius quam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum: quae fieri velit praecipit. 10

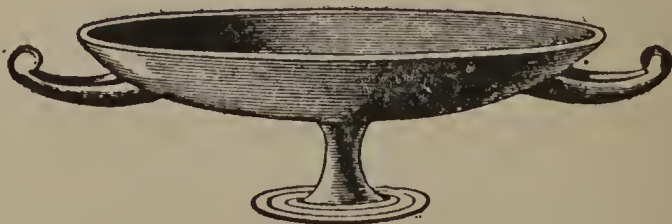
Labienuis is Cautious.

57. Labiēnus, cum et loci nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsionem rei bene gerendae dīmitteret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā quam in con- 15 cilio habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās cīvitātis equitēsque undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dicit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī 20 causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Defeat and Death of Indutiomarus.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtio- 25 mārus ad castra accēderet, nocte unā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium finitimārum cīvitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentīā omnīs suōs custōdiīs intrā

castra continuit ut nullā rationē ea res enūtiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōsuētūdine cotidiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōsūmit; equitēs tēla conici-
5 unt et māgnā cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostris datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, prōter-
10 ritīs hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum; neu quis quem prius volneret quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eis
15 quī occiderint praemia; submittit cohortis equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōsiliū fortuna; et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntis equitēs quōs possunt cōn-
20 sectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

*Poculum.*



Galeae.

BOOK VI.

SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. B.C. 53.

Cæsar secures Extra Forces in Order to cope with the Rebellious Gauls.

MULTIS dē causis Caesar maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēginum, T. Sextium lēgātōs dēlēctum habēre instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō rei pūblīcae 5 causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōsul sacramētō rogāvisset ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Italiæ facultātis ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī 10 acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiis posset. Quod cum Pompēius et rei pūblīcae et amīcitiæ tribuisset, celeriter cōfectō per suōs dēlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōstitutis et adductis legiōnibus, duplicā- 15 tōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūrīō amiserat, et celeritāte et cōpiis docuit quid populi Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

Various Tribes in the Northeast revolt.

2. Interfecto Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī finitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent,
 5 ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs nōn nūllis cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs,
 10 Menapiōs, adiūctīs Cīsrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus finitimisque cīvitātibus cōnsilia cōmunicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbris lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

After laying waste the Nervian Territory Cæsar proceeds
 against the Senones.

15 3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōfectā, proximīs IIII coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finīs Nerviōrum contendit, et prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā militibus concessā vāstātisque
 20 agrīs, in dēditionem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōfectō negōtiō rūsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut instituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium
 25 bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trāsfert. Cōfinēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant; sed ab hōc cōnciliō

āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnisque itineribus eō pervenit.

They submit, together with the Carnutes.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsili fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem conveyere ; cōnantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt ; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat 10 veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrābatur ; obsidibus imperātis c, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientelā ; 15 eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitātibus.

Next he goes against the Menapii.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit. Cavarinum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī 20 iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius irācundiā, aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō, civitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōstitutīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinquī 25 Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvisque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambi-

orīgī sciēbat ; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in
 amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda
 auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē
 dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum
 5 Trānsrhēnānis congregī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōsiliō
 tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs
 mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet ; ipse
 cum legiōnibus expeditīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficī-
 scitur. Illī nullā coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frētī, in
 10 silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaque eōdem cōferunt.

And warns them against harboring Ambiorix.

6. Caesar, partītis copiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M.
 Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus, adit
 tripartītō, aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris
 atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī
 15 Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt.
 Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō
 cōfirmat, sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus
 suis recēpissent. Hīs cōfirmātis rēbus Commium
 Atrebātem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiīs
 20 relinquit ; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

Labienus's Activity among the Treveri.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs
 coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum
 unā legiōne quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat adorīrī
 parābant ; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant,
 25 cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt.
 Posītis castrīs ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germā-
 nōrum expectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium
 cōgnitō cōsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore

aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidiō v cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque 5 praeruptis. Hōc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostis trānsitūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur in conciliō palam : ‘ Quoniam Germānī adpropinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et 10 posterō diē primā lūce castra mōtūrum.’ Celeriter haec ad hostis dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nullōs Gallicis rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnis militum primisque ordinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōsili 15 prōpōnit, et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuetūdō castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propin- 20 quitate castrōrum ad hostis dēferuntur.

Defeat of the Treveri.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōceserat, cum Gallī—cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dēmitterent ; longum esse perterritis Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre ; 25 neque suam patī dīgnitātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguam manum praesertim fugientem atque impedītam adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsire et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnis citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādē 30

ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum
 praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultō
 quōdam conlocātis, “Habētis,” inquit, “militēs, quam
 petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō
 5 locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nobis ducibus virtutem
 quam saepenumērō imperātōrī praestitistis; atque
 illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte.”
 Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dērigi iubet;
 et paucis turmis praesidiō ad impedimenta dīmissis
 10 reliquos equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī
 clāmōre sublātō pila in hostis immittunt. Illi, ubi
 praeter spem quos fugere crēdebant infestis signis ad
 se ire viderunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn potuerunt,
 ac primō concursū in fugam coniecti proximās
 15 silvās petiērunt. Quos Labiēnus equitātū cōsectātus,
 māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captis, paucis
 post diēbus civitatem recēpit. Nam Germānī qui
 auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē
 domum contulērunt. Cum his propinqui Indūtiomārī,
 20 qui dēfectionis auctōrēs fuerant, comitatī eōs ex civi-
 tate excessērunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio per-
 mānsisse in officiō dēmōstrāvimus, principātus atque
 imperium est trāditum.

Cæsar crosses the Rhine a Second Time.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēveros vēnit,
 25 duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit: quarum
 ūna erat quod *Germānī* auxilia contrā se Trēveris
 miserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habē-
 ret. His cōstitutis rēbus paulō suprā eum locum
 quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit.
 30 Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne, māgnō militum studiō,

paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī 5 doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam : petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant ; sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit 10 ab Suēvīs auxilia missa esse ; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit ; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquīrit.

And is informed that the Suevi have retreated to a Forest.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnīs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut 15 auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum 20 adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī ; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt : ‘ Suēvōs omnīs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exer- 25 citū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finis sē recēpisse ; silvam esse ibi īfīnītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācenis ; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab 30

Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre ; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.'

Customs of the Gauls. Factions among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn
5 aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt ; eārumque factiōnum prīn-
10 cipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciūque summa omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā antīquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret ; suōs
15 enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae ; namque omnēs cīvitatēs divīsae sunt in duās partīs.

The Romans lend their Influence in Favor of the Hædui.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis
20 prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque per-
25 dūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīnci-

pum filiōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaequē tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitatē adductus Dīviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum 5 profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē 10 ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitatēque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Haeduīs 15 coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent. 20

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. Power of the Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duō. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibētur cōnciliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum 25 premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; *quibus* in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia

pūblica āc prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātisque
 5 cōstituunt ; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt ; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt ; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima.
 10 Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus
 15 druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātē. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitātē, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus
 20 Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō ; hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur ; et nunc
 25 quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their Privileges, Doctrines, and Beliefs.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt ; [militiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātē]. Tantīs excitātī
 30 praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt

et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātisque ratiōnibus, 5 Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur ; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, — quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac 10 memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs ; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum māgnitudine, 15 dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī 20 iniuriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur ; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientisque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

25

Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus ; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfecti graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē

immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis
 5 habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint compre-
 10 hēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The Gallic Deities are identified with the Roman.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem
 15 artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs
 20 dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicare cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in
 25 ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērū exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret; gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cru-
 30 ciātū cōstitutum est.

They claim Descent from Pluto.

18. Gallī sē omnīs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt ; diēs nātālīs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In 5 reliquīs vītāe institūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur ; filiumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt. 10

Marriage Customs and Funeral Rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur ; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus 15 superiorum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīcut in liberōs vītāe necisque habent potestātem ; et cum paterfamiliae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum 20 māgnifica et sūmptuōsa ; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem inferunt, etiam animalia ; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā servī et clientēs, quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebris cōfectīs unā cremābantur.

Rumors have to be officially reported.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō
5 aliō communicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pū-
10 blicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Manners and Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvinīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvan-
15 tur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvīs labōrī āc dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs permānserunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī
20 statūrā, alī vīrīs nervōsque cōfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vicēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius rei nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentis ūtuntur, māgnā
25 corporis parte nūdā.

No Tillage or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quis-

quam agrī mōdum certum aut finīs habet propriōs ; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque unā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt 5 causās : nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendī agrī culturā commūtent ; nē lātōs finīs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant ; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent ; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, 10 quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur ; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Isolation of Tribes. How Chiefs are appointed. Brigandage.
Laws of Hospitality.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc pro- 15 prium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere : simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī ei bellō praesint, 20 et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Lātrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finīs cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque 25 ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiæ minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit ‘ sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,’ — cōnsurgunt ei quī et causam et hominem

probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum āc prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

Former Migration of Gauls into Germany.

24. Āc fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum
 10 multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs
 15 occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēdērunt. Quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc quidem in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur;
 20 Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trāsmari-nārū rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largitur. Paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliis, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte comparant.

Description of the Hercynian Forest.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō viii diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōverunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctaque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad

finis Dācōrum et Anartium ; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus
dīversis ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium
finis propter māgnitūdinem attingit. Neque quisquam
est hūius Germāniae quī sē [aut audisse] aut adisse ad
initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōces- 5
serit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit. Multaque in
eā genera ferārum nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locīs
vīsa nōn sint ; ex quibus quae māximē differant ab
cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

The "Reindeer."

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter 10
aurīs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum
hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab ēius summō
sicut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est
fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque
cornuumque.

15

The Elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est
cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium ; sed māg-
nitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus
et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent ; neque quiētis
causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae cāsū conci- 20
dērunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt
arborēs prō cubilibus ; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita
paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum
ex vestīgiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō
sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus 25
subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa spe-
ciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōn-
suētūdine reclīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere
adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs ; speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vėlōcitās ; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspēxērunt par-
 5 runt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveis captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscētēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent ; et quī plūrimōs ex his interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs
 10 et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidē exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

Cæsar returns to Gaul to conquer Ambiorix.

15 29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus (quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student), cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius ; sed, nē omninō metum reditūs suī
 20 barbaris tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrīm tabulātōrum III cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī
 25 causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Ei locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscētem praeficit ; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Arduennam silvam — quae est tōtius Galliae māxima atque ab

ripis Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet, milibusque amplius in longitudinem patet — L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritātē itineris atque opportunitātē temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignīs in castrīs fieri prohibeat, 5 nē qua eius adventūs procul significātiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequi dicit.

Ambiorix is in Luck. He escapes.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopinantis dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum 10 Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē militārī potest fortūna. Nam *ut* māgnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus vidērētur quam 15 fāma ac nūntius adferrētur, sic māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī militārī instrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat creptō, rēdis equisque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī 20 aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātis, comitēs familiārēsque eius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuerunt. His pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae texērunt. Sic et ad subeundum 25 periculum et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

**Disbandment of his Forces among the Forests and Marshes.
Suicide of Catuvolcus.**

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicione nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore

exclūsus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est. Sed certē dīmissis per agrōs nūntiis sibi quemque cōsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars
 5 in continentis palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt hī insulīs sēsē occultāvērunt quas aestūs efficere cōsuērunt; multī ex suis finibus ēgressi sē suaque omnia aliēnissimis crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge
 10 cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, quī ēiuscōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō (cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est) sē exanimāvit.

Q. Cicero put in Command at Aduatuca.

15 **32.** Sēgnī Condrūsique, ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum ‘nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē
 20 bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse.’ Caesar explorātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, finīs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiis in trīs partis distribūtis
 25 impedimenta omnium legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnitiōnēs integrae
 30 manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō

impedimentis legionem XIII reliquit, unam ex his tribus quas proximē cōscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefecit ducentōsque equitēs attribuit.

Cæsar divides his Forces and proceeds to hunt for Ambiorix.

33. Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus 5 tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partīs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficisci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucis adiacet dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs III ad flūmen Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque 10 Arduennae partīs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens post diem VII sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat; quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquiēbātur frūmentum dēberi sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, si rei 15 pūblīcae commodō facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rūsus communicātō cōsiliō explorātisque hostium ratiōnibus, aliud initium bellī capere possint.

The Difficulties of the Situation. Cæsar seeks Alliance with Gallic Tribes against the Eburones.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, manus certa nulla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs 20 dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa multitudō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem praesidi aut salūtis aliquam offerebat, cōsēderat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nōta, māgnamque rēs dīligentiam requirēbat, nōn in summā 25 exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ā perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis

militibus cōservandīs ; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultisque itineribus cōfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī
 5 negōtium cōficī stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs didūcendīque erant milites ; sī continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut institūta ratiō et cōsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex
 10 occultō insidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in ēius modī difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidērī poterat prōvidēbātur ; ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulciscendum ārdēbant, quam cum ali-
 15 quō militum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitimās cīvitātis nūntiōs Caesar ; omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur ; simul ut māgnā multitudīne circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps āc
 20 nōmen cīvitātis tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Invaders from Germany cross the Rhine, plunder the Eburones, and advance towards Cæsar's Camp.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque adpetēbat vii, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hīc quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs
 25 cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis āc perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōstrāvīmus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma diripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnīs ad

praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugam-
brī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā
Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trāseunt
Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx mīlibus passuum infrā
eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ab 5
Caesare relictum. Prīmōs Eburōnum finīs adeunt ;
multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris nu-
merō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invī-
tātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō
latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in 10
locīs sit Caesar ex captīvīs quaerunt ; profectum lon-
gius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnō-
scunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs : “ Quid vōs,” inquit,
“ hanc miseram āc tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus
licet iam esse fortūnatissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduatu- 15
cam venīre potestis ; hūc omnīs suās fortūnās exercitus
Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est ut nē mūrus
quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredi extrā mū-
nitiōnēs audeat.” Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī
erant praedam in occultō relinquunt ; ipsī Aduatucam 20
contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec indicio cōgnō-
verant.

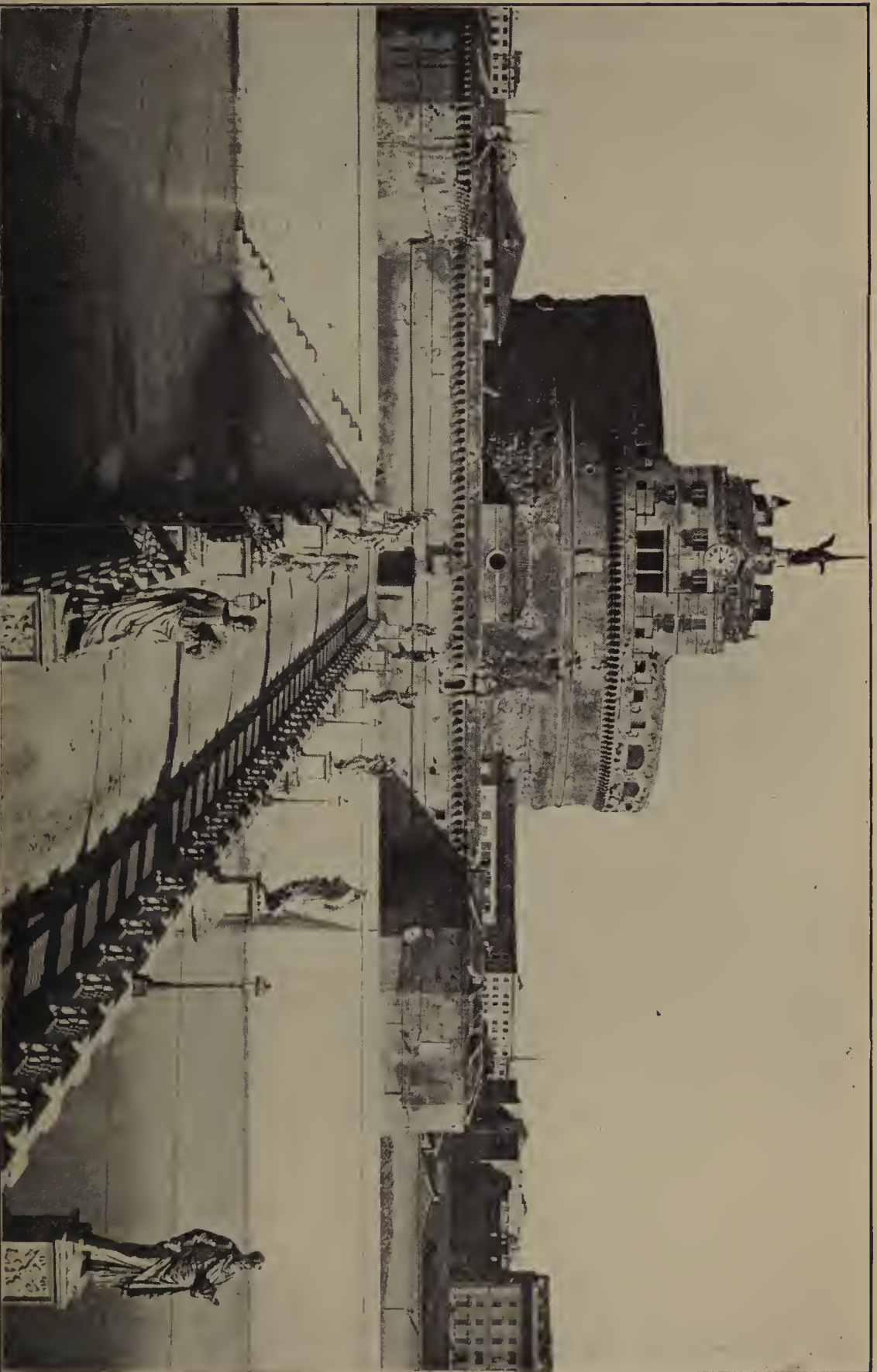
Cicero unwisely sends out too many Foragers.

36. Cicerō (quī omnīs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs
Caesaris summā diligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset,
āc nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem 25
ēgredi passus esset) vii diē, diffidēns dē numerō diē-
rum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prō-
gressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma
adferēbātur ; simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illius
patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem 30

ex castris ēgredi nōn liceret ; nūllum ēius modī cāsum
 exspectāns quō, viii oppositis legiōnibus māximōque
 equitātū, dispersis āc paene dēlētis hostibus, in mīlibus
 passuum tribus offendī posset, — v cohortis frūmentā-
 5 tum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra
 ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in cas-
 tris ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī ; ex quibus quī hōc spa-
 tiō diērum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā
 mittuntur ; māgna praetereā multitudō cālōnum, māgna
 10 vīs iūmentōrum, quae in castris subsēderat, factā po-
 testāte sequitur.

The Germans assault the Camp and cause a Panic.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs
 interveniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant
 cursū ab decumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur ;
 15 nec prius sunt vīsī, obiectis ab eā parte silvīs, quam
 castris adpropinquārent, ūsque eō ut quī sub vāllō ten-
 derent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habē-
 rent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, āc vix
 primum impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circum-
 20 funduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum
 reperire possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs
 aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis
 trepidātur castris atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs
 quaerit ; neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in par-
 25 tem quisque conveniāt prōvident. Alius castra iam
 capta prōnūntiat ; alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperā-
 tōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit ; plērīque
 novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaeque et Ti-
 tūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante
 30 oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōn-



THE TOMB OF HADRIAN
(The Tiber is in the Foreground)

firmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dimittant.

Gallant Conduct of P. Sextius Baculus.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī primum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit ; videt imminēre hostīs atque in summō rem esse discrīmine ; 10 capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōsistit : cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statīōne erat ; paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus ; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō 15 reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tantum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

Return of the Foraging Party to Camp.

39. Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne milītēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt ; praecurrunt equitēs ; quantō rēs sit in perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnitiō est 20 quae perterritōs recipiat ; modo cōscriptī atque ūsūs militāris imperītī ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt ; quid ab hīs praecipiātur expectant : nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt : 25 redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discessisse ex captivīs cōgnōverant ; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

Their Way back is Fraught with Difficulties.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hīnc celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque coni-
ciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent milītēs. Aliī cuneō
factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent, quoniam tam
5 propinqua sint castra; etsī pars aliqua circumventa
ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse [confīdunt]; aliī ut
in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum.
Hōc veterēs nōn probant milītēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā
profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce
10 C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eis erat praepositus,
per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum
omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs
equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtūte servantur.
At eī quī in iugō cōstitērant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī
15 militāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōn-
siliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque
eam quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant,
imitārī potuerunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī
inīquum in locum dēmisērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum
20 nōn nūllī ex īferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legiō-
num virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ōrdinēs hūius
legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī militāris laudem
āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs conciderunt. Mili-
tum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, praeter
25 spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā barbarīs
circumventa periit.

The Germans withdraw and Cæsar arrives.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum,
quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant,
cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhē-

num sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post dis-
cessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus
missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn
faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc
omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat ut paene aliē- 5
nātā mente, dēlētis omnibus cōpiīs, equitātum sē ex
fugā recēpisse dīcerent, neque incolumī exercitū Ger-
mānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem
timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Effect of the German Invasion.

42. Reversus ille, — ēventūs bellī nōn īgnōrāns, 10
ūnum quod cohortēs ex statīōne et praesīdiō essent
ēmissae questus, nē minimum quidem cāsū locum
relinquī dēbuisse, — multum fortunam in repentinō
hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit ; multō etiam am-
plius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum 15
barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērū māximē
admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōn-
siliō Rhēnum trānsierant ut Ambiorīgis finis dēpopu-
lārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum
Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant. 20

Cæsar further punishes the Resisting Tribes.

43. Caesar, rūrsus ad vexandōs hostīs profectus,
māgnō equitum coāctō numerō ex finitimīs cīvītātibus,
in omnīs partīs dīmīttit. Omnēs vicī atque omnia
aedificia quae quisque cōspexerat incendēbantur ;
praeda ex omnibus locīs agēbātur ; frūmenta nōn 25
solum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum
cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbri-
bus prōcubuerant ; ut, sī quī etiam in praesentia sē

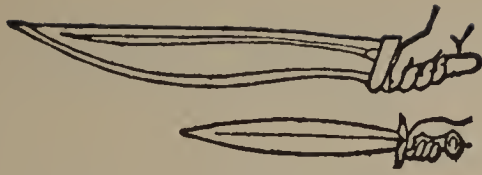
occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum om-
 nium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum
 locum ventum est, tantō in omnīs partīs dīmissō equi-
 tātū, ut [nōn] modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgem in fugā
 5 circumspicerent captīvī, nec plānē etiam abīsse ex
 cōspectū contenderent; ut, spē cōsequendī inlātā
 atque īfīnītō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Cae-
 sare grātiā initūrōs putārent, paene nātūrā studiō
 vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlicitātem
 10 dēfuisse vidērētur; atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē
 ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partisque
 peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam III, qui-
 bus sōlīs vītā suā committere audēbat.

Execution of Acco. Cæsar returns to Italy.

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar
 15 duārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum
 dēdūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē
 coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem ha-
 bēre instituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōsili
 fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā, mōre māiōrum
 20 supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nullī iūdicium veritī pro-
 fūgērunt; quibus cum aquā atque īgnī interdixisset,
 duās legiōnēs ad finīs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus,
 sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agēdincī in hībernīs
 conlocāvit; frūmentōque exercitū prōvisō, ut īnsti-
 25 tuerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



Hasta.



Gladii.

BOOK VII.

THE GREAT UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX.

B.C. 52.

The Gauls unite to secure Independence.

QUIĒTĀ Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit de P. Clōdī caede; *dē* senātusque cōsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrārent, dēlectum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in 5 Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī 10 imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberior atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae 15 fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primīs ratiōnem

esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātore ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine
 5 praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the War.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīnci-
 10 pēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanc-
 ciātur petunt, conlātis mīlitāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō
 15 initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrاندō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.

The News travels fast.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum
 20 signō datō concurrunt, cīvīisque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnīs Galliae cīvitatīs fāma
 25 perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliū deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta

essent ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, assumes Command and induces Many Tribes to join him. His Stern Discipline.

4. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, — cuius pater 5 principatum totius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod regnum adpetebat a civitate erat interfectus, — convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur a Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui 10 hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant; expellitur ex oppido Gergoviam; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac coacta manu quoscumque adit ex civitate ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur ut communis libertatis 15 causam arma capiant; magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit quoque versus legationes; obtestatur ut in fide maneat. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, 20 Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovicenses, Andos, reliquosque omnis qui Oceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum deferitur imperium. Qua oblata potestate omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat; certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet; armorum 25 quantum quaeque civitas domi, quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; in primis equitatu studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperi severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantis cogit: nam maiore

commissō dēlictō īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs necat ; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He compels the Bituriges to join him.

5 **5.** Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit ; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium
10 rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs
15 diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātisque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsiliī fuisse cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē
20 causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nobīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar's Difficulty to reach his Army.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam
25 ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellexeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire pos-

set. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

5

He counteracts the Designs of Lucterius at Narbo.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitio-
brigēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et
māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus
inruptionem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Cae-
sar omnibus cōsiliis anteverendum exīstimāvit, ut
Narbōnem proficīsceretur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentis
cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs
Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae
loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpiā-
rum ex prōvinciā, supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā
addūxerat in Helviōs, qui finīs Arvernōrum contingunt,
convenīre iubet.

**Cæsar crosses the Cevennes through the Snow. Vercingetorix
returns to defend the Arverni.**

8. Hīs rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et
remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum
putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna,
quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore
annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā
nive in altitudinem pedum vi atque ita viīs patefactis,
summō mīlitum labōre ad finīs Arvernōrum pervēnit.
Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut
mūrō mūnitōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem

umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem īferant.

Celeriter haec fāma āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem
 5 perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circum-
 sistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōsulat, neu
 sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim cum videat
 omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille precibus
 permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs
 10 versus.

**Leaving Brutus in Command Cæsar seeks Reinforcements.
 Vercingetorix proceeds against the Boii.**

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod
 haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecē-
 perat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab
 exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs
 15 praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partīs equitēs quam
 lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius
 trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, suīs in-
 opīnantibus, quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam
 pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem
 20 multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō
 neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finīs Haeduō-
 rum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemā-
 bant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs
 inīrētur cōsili, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum per-
 25 vēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs
 in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs
 nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix rūsus
 in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus
 Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helveticō

proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppūgnāre instituit.

Cæsar determines to relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat : sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriīs Haeduō- 5 rum expūgnātis cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret ; sī mātūrius ex hibernīs edūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus laborāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnis difficultātis perpeti quam, tantā contumēliā 10 acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātis aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus 15 atque impedimentīs tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

He occupies Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, *et* quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūteretur, 20 oppūgnāre instituit, eōque bīduō circumvallāvit ; tertio diē missis ex oppidō lēgātis dē dēditiōne, arma cōferri, iūmenta prōdūci, sexcentōs obsidēs dari iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit ; ipse ut quam primum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Car- 25 nutum proficiscitur ; quī tum primum adlātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum irī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat ; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris con-
 5 tingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat, portīs
 10 incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis quī cūctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat ; exercitum Ligerim trādūcit
 15 atque in Biturīgum finīs pervenit.

Noviodunum surrenders, but on the Approach of Vercingetorix
 prepares for Defense.

12. Vercingetorix ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum
 20 lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vītae cōsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōsecūtus, arma cōnferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centu-
 25 riōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissis quī arma iūmenta-
 que cōquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspēxērunt atque in spem auxili vērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās clau-

dere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab hīs inīrī cōnsili intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs recēpērunt.

5

Cæsar captures Noviodunum and moves upon Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeli-
umque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs
Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab
iniitiō sēcum habēre instituerat. Eōrum impetum
Galli sustinēre nōn potuērunt, atque in fugam coniecti 10
multis āmissis sē ad agmen recēpērunt; quibus prōfli-
gātis rūsus oppidānī perterriti comprehēnsōs eōs
quōrum operā plēbem concitātā existimābant ad
Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus
rēbus cōfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod 15
erat māximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturīgum
atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō
oppidō receptō cīvitatē Biturīgum sē in potestātem
redāctūrum cōfidēbat.

**Vercingetorix's Advice to the Gauls to keep the Romans from
Supplies.**

14. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vel- 20
launodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptis suōs ad con-
cilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum
gerendum atque antea gestum sit; omnibus modis
huic rei studendum ut pābulātiōne et comineātū
Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū 25
ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore subleventur;
pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostis

ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnis cotīdiē ab equitibus
 dēlērī posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā reī familiāris
 commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendi
 oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque versus, quō pābu-
 5 landī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum
 cōpiam suppētere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum
 gerātur eōrum opibus sublevantur: Rōmānōs aut in-
 opiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā
 castrīs prōcessūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne inter-
 10 ficiant *an* impedimentis exuant, quibus āmissis bellum
 gerī nōn possit. Praetereā, oppida incendi oportēre
 quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō
 tūta; nē suīs sint ad dētrectandam mīlitiam recep-
 tācula, neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs
 15 praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba
 videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, liberōs,
 coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae
 sit necesse accidere victīs.'

The Gauls burn Many Cities, but spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōnsensū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō
 20 diē amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc
 idem fit in reliquīs cīvitatibus. In omnibus partibus
 incendia cōspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolore
 omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant,
 quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa re-
 25 cuperātūrōs cōfidēbant. Dēliberātur dē Avaricō in
 commūnī conciliō, incendi placeat an dēfendī. Prō-
 cumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīges, nē pulcher-
 rimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō
 et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitatī, suīs manibus succendere
 30 cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt,

quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur. 5

Vercingetorix keeps an Eye on Cæsar.

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarum itineribus subsequitur, et locum castris dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnitum, ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum xvi. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat, et quid fieri 10 vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō adficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab nostris occurrēbātur, ut incertis temporibus 15 diversisque itineribus irētur.

Fortitude of the Roman Soldiers amid Privations.

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vineās agere, turrīs duās cōstituere coepit; nam cir- 20 cumvallāre loci nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nullō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnis facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōnsūm- 25 psērunt. Summā difficultāte rei frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, — ūsque eō ut complūris diēs

frūmentō milītēs caruerint, et pecore ē longinquiōribus
 vicīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, — nūlla
 tamen vōx est ab eis audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte
 et superiōribus victōriis indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar
 5 cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et sī acerbius
 inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem dīceret,
 ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: ‘Sīc sē com-
 plūris annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignō-
 miniam acciperent, numquam infectā rē discēderent;
 10 hōc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnā-
 tiōnem reliquissent: praestāre omnis perferre acer-
 bitātis quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā
 Gallōrum interīssent parentārent.’ Haec eadem cen-
 turionibus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs
 15 ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Cæsar comes up with Vercingetorix.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex
 captivīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūptō
 pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum
 cum equitātū expeditisque quī inter equitēs proeliārī
 20 cōnsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs
 posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus
 rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hos-
 tium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explorā-
 tōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedimenta
 25 sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnis in locō
 editō atque apertō instrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā
 Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma expediti iussit.

He finds him strongly intrenched.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex
 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita

cingēbat, nōn lātiōr pedibus l. Hōc sē colle interruptis pontibus Galli fiduciā loci continēbant, generātimque distribūtī [in civitātis] omnia vada [ac saltūs] eius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantis 5 premerent ex locō superiōre ; ut, quī propinquitatem loci vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret ; qui inīquitatem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantis milites Caesar, quod cōspectum suum hostēs 10 ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeli exposcentis, edocet quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam ; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsant, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī 15 dēbēre, nisi eōrum vītā laude suā habeat cārīōrem. Sic milites cōsōlātus eōdem diē reducit in castra ; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

The Gauls begin to suspect Vercingetorix. His Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suos redisset, prōditiōnis 20 insimulātus, — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportunitate et celeritate vēnissent ; nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōsiliō accidere 25 potuisse ; rēgnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō, — tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit : ‘ Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī, etiam ipsīs hortantibus ; quod

propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī oppor-
tunitate, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet;
equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsīde-
rārī dēbuisse, et illic fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī.
5 Summam imperī sē cōsultō nullī discēdentem trādi-
disse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dīmīcandum im-
pellerētur; cui reī propter animī mollitiem studēre
omnīs vidēret, quod diūtius laborem ferre nōn possent.
Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae; sī alicūius
10 indiciō vocātī, huic habendam grātiā, quod et pauci-
tatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem
dēspicere pōtuerint, quī dīmīcāre nōn ausī turpiter sē
in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per
prōditiōnem nullum dēsīderāre, quod habēre victōriā
15 posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis ex-
plōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis
honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-
antur.’ “Haec ut intellegātis,” inquit, “ā mē sincērē
prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs milītēs.” Prōdūcit servōs,
20 quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat, et
famē vinculisque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī
quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, milītēs sē esse legiōnā-
riōs dīcunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs
exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre
25 possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec
iam vīrīs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem
posse: itaque statuīsse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūg-
nātiōne oppidī prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdū-
cere. “Haec,” inquit, “ā mē,” [Vercingetorīx]
30 “beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis;
cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum
victōrem famē cōsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē

ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum est.”

His Complete Acquittal.

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō cōsuērunt cūius orātiōnem adprobant: ‘Summum esse Vercingetorī- 5 gem ducem, nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse.’ Statuunt ut x mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent; quod paene in eō, sī id 10 oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

Skilful Defense of the Gauls against the Roman Works.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda 15 quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcīs āvertēbant; quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum 20 est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī ignem īferēbant aut mīlītēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; et nostrārum turrium altitudinem, quantum 25 hās cotīdiānus agger expresserat, commissīs suārum turrium mālīs adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et

māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

A Gallic Wall and its Construction.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dirēctae, perpetuae in longitudinem paribus
5 intervāllīs, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur. Hīs conlocātīs et coagmentātīs alias īnsuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud
10 intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae singulis saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contextitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme
15 nōn est, alternīs trabibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs lineīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsionem urbium summam habet opportunitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque
20 intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

A Sortie by the Gauls.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx,
25 altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam

vigiliam est anim adversum fūmare aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat. Aliī facīs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; 5 picem reliquāsque rēs quibus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut, quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque partītis temporibus erant in 10 opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent aliī turrīs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Their Desperate Valor.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōsūptā iam reliquā 15 parte noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur,—eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant,—semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent, omnemque Galliae salū- 20 tem in illō vestigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit īnspectantibus nōbis quod dīgnum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turrīs prōiciēbat; 25 scorpione ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādē ratiōne ictū scorpionis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus 30 vacuus relictus locus quam, restīnctō aggere atque

omnī parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pūgnandī factus.

The Women dissuade the Gauls from abandoning Avaricum.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere
5 hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat.
10 Iamque hōc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātres familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsq̄ue, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnis liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium
15 īnfirmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānis coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur,
20 cōsiliō dēstitērunt.

The Romans carry the Walls by Storm.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prēmōtā turri directisque operibus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōsiliū tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō
25 dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vineās] in occultō expeditīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus fructum victōriae

perciperent, eīs quī prīmī mūrū adscendissent prae-
mia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnū dedit. Illī subitō
ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrūque celeriter
complēvērunt.

Capture of the Town, and Butchery of the Inhabitants.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque 5
dēiectī, in forō ac locīs patentioribus cuneātīm cōnsti-
tērunt, hōc animō ut, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā]
venīrētur, aciē instrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem
in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique
mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs 10
fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partīs
continentī impetū petīvērunt ; parsque ibi, cum angustō
exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam
ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta ; nec fuit
quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsī 15
caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōfectīs,
nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique
ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC,
quī prīmō clāmōre auditō sē ex oppidō ēiēcērant, in-
columēs ad Vercingetorīgē pervēnērunt. Quōs ille 20
multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, *et* veritus nē
qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā volgī
sēditiō orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositīs famili-
aribus suis principibusque cīvitatū, disparandōs dē-
dūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitatī pars 25
castrōrum ab initiō obvenerat.

Vercingetorix does not lose Heart.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōsōlātus co-
hortātusque est : ‘ Nē sē admodum animō dēmit-

terent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō ; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsī imperītī ; errāre, sī quī in bellō omnīs secundōs rērum
 5 prōventūs exspectent ; sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius rei tēstīs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprudentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum acciperētur ; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis sānātūrum. Nam, quae
 10 ab reliquīs Gallīs civitatēs dissentirent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsensuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere ; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eīs commūnis
 15 salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.’

He inspires the Gauls to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcērat tantō acceptō incom-
 20 modō, neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitudinis fūgerat ; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritatem
 25 minuunt, sīc hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant eius adfīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendis civitatibus ; prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre institu-
 ērunt, et sīc erant animō cōfirmātī, hominēs īnsuētī
 30 labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda exīstimārent.

He secures More Troops.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātis adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillimē capere 5 posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat. Simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redīntegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittāriōsque omnīs, quōrum erat permāgnus 10 in Galliā nūmerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitio-brigum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et 15 quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervēnit.

A Dispute among the Hædui. They appeal to Cæsar to settle it.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūris diēs commorātus sum-mamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōfectā, — cum ipsō annī tempore ad 20 gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōstituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, — lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut māximē neces-sāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat: ‘Summō esse in 25 periculō rem; quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōsu-

cōnstāre vidērētur. His quam longissimē possent
 prōgredi iūssīs, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniectūram
 caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum
 pars inferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit.
 5 Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō
 castrīs idōneō dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Ver-
 cingetorix rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimi-
 cāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

Caesar secures a Good Position at Gergovia.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam
 10 pervēnit, equestriq̄ue eō diē proeliō levī factō, per-
 spectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnīs
 aditūs difficilis habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit;
 dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam
 rem frūmentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix cas-
 15 trīs prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus cir-
 cum sē intervāllīs sēparātīm singulārum cīvitatū
 cōpiās conlocāverat; atq̄ue omnibus ēius iugī collibus
 occupātīs quā dēspici poterat, horribilem speciem
 praebebāt; prīcipēsque eārum cīvitatū, quōs sibi
 20 ad cōsiliū capiendum dēlēgerat, primā lūce cotīdiē
 ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum
 seu quid administrandum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē
 diem intermittēbat quīn equestri proeliō, interiectīs
 sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suō-
 25 rum perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub
 ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atq̄ue ex omnī
 parte circumcīsus, quem sī tenērent nostrī et aquae
 māgnā parte et pābulātiōne liberā prohibitūrī hostīs
 vidēbantur; sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn infirmō
 30 tenēbātur; tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs



MINERVA

(The goddess of war, wisdom, and the liberal arts)

ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māioribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent. 5

The Hædui plan a Revolt.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat princeps Litavīcus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā 10 familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium communicat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint : ‘ Ūnam esse Haeduōrum cīvitatē quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat ; ēius auctoritātē reliquās continērī ; quā trāductā locum consistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nullō sē Caesaris beneficiō adfectum, sīc tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit ; sed plūs commūnī libertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam 20 Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant ? ’ Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel principēs ēius cōsiliī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitatē temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfidēbant. 25 Placuit ut Litavīcus decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur, atque ea dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōstituunt.

Litavicus incites his Troops to desert the Roman Cause.

38. Litavicus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subito mīlitibus lacrimāns, “Quō proficīscimur,” inquit, “mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; 5 prīncipēs cīvitatīs, Eporedorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōditionis, ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meis propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt 10 prōnūntiāre.” Prōdūcuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litavicus prōnūntiāverat multitudinī expōnunt: ‘Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem mīlitum 15 occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgissee.’ Conclāmant Haeduī et Litavicum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. “Quasi vērō,” inquit ille, “cōnsilī sit rēs, ac nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere! An dubitāmus quīn nefariō 20 facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indīgnissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus!” Ostendit cīvīs Rōmānōs quī ēius praesidī fidūciā ūnā erant; con- 25 tinuō māgnū numerum frūmentī comineātūsque dīripit; ipsōs crūdēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitate Haeduōrum dīmittit; eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās perse- 30 quantur.

Eporëdorix informs Cæsar of this.

39. Eporëdorix Haeduus, summō locō nātus adu-
lēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus,
parī aetāte et grātiā sed genere disparī, quem Caesar
ab Diviciācō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam
dīgnitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēne- 5
rant nōminātīm ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē
prīncipātū contentiō ; et in illā magistrātuum contrō-
versiā alter prō Convictolitave alter prō Cotō, summīs
opibus pūgnāverant. Ex eīs Eporëdorix cōgnitō Lita-
vīcī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert ; 10
ōrat nē patiātur cīvitatē prāvīs adulēscēntium cōn-
siliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere ; quod futū-
rum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus
coniūnixerint, quōrum salūtem neque propinquī negle-
gere neque cīvitas levī mōmentō aestimāre possit. 15

Cæsar promptly puts down the Revolt.

40. Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar,
quod semper Haeduōrum cīvitatī praecipuē indulserat,
nullā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expeditās quat-
tuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit ; nec fuit
spatium tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs 20
posita in celeritāte vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum
cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit.
Frātrēs Litavīcī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō
ante reperit ad hostīs profūgisse. Adhortātus milītēs
nē necessariō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, 25
cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum xxv,
agmen Haeduōrum cōspicātur, immissō equitātū iter
eōrum morātur atque impedit ; interdīcitque omnibus
nē quemquam interficiant. Eporëdorigem et Viri-

domārum, quōs illī interfec̄tōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet. Hīs cōgnitīs et Litavīcī fraude perspectā, Haeduī manūs tendere, et dēditionem sīgnificāre, et prōiectīs armīs mortem
 5 dēprecārī incipiunt. Litavīcus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profugit.

And returns to Gergovia to relieve Fabius.

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitatē Haeduōrum missīs quī suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre belli
 10 interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercitū ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt; summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent
 15 nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vāllō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs volnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta; Fabium dis-
 20 cessū eōrum, duābus relictīs portīs, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum adparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

The Gauls continue their Plots.

25 42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī primīs nūntiīs ab Litavīcō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem

habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedīs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclinātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter 5 ad legiōnēs facientem, fidē datā ex oppidō Cabillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant. Hōs continuō *in* itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repūgnantis diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectis mā- 10 iōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

The Haedui seek to be reconciled to Cæsar, but are Insincere.

43. Interim nūntiō adlātō omnis eōrum militēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō factum cōsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litavīcī frātrumque 15 bona pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī sui grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōsilia clam dē bellō inīre 20 incipiunt cīvitatīsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: ‘Nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque volgī gravius dē cīvitatē iūdicāre, neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentīā dē- 25 minuere.’ Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum expectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitatibus circumsisterētur, cōsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet āc rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur. 30

Cæsar applies himself to the Capture of Gergovia.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiō-
 5 ribus diēbus vix prae multitudīne cernī poterat. Admirātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōstābat inter omnis, quod iam ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cō-
 gnōverat, dorsum esse ēius iugī prope aequum, sed
 10 silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omni exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad
 15 hunc mūniendum omnis ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.

Clever Disposition of the Roman Troops.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrīs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum numerum impedimentōrum ex castrīs mūlō-
 20 rumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnesque cassidibus, equitum speciē āc simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnis iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec
 25 procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certi quid esset, explorārī poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōstituit locō silvisque

occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspīciō atque omnēs illō ad munītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus, tectīs īnsignibus suōrum occultātisque sīgnīs militāribus, rārōs militēs (nē ex oppidō animadverterentur) ex māiōribus castrīs in mi- 5 nōra trādūcit, lēgātisque quōs singulīs legiōnibus prae- fēcerat quid fierī velīt ostendit: in prīmīs monet ut contineant militēs nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc unā celeritāte posse vitārī; 10 occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī. Hīs rēbus expositis sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

Capture of the Enemy's Camp.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitīe atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfractus intercēderet MCC, pas- 15 sūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs vi pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, 20 īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Militēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur. Āc tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teuto- 25 matus, rēx Nitiobrigum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, volnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet.

Eagerness of the Roman Soldiers.

47. Cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, cōtīnātus, sīgna cōstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlītēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs
 5 intercēdēbat tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs, nihil adeō arduum sibi exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent ; neque
 10 finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque adpropinquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs
 15 famīliae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant ; et pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent ; neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent. Nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae
 20 sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis viii, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrū ascenderet, trīs suōs nactus manipulārīs atque ab eīs sublevātus mūrū ascendit.
 25 Hōs ipse rūsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrū extulit.

Reinforcements come up to the Aid of the Gauls.

48. Interim eī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbris nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ab Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equiti-

bus māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque
prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque
pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna
multitūdō convēnisset, matrēs familiae, quae paulō ante
Rōmānis dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et
mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in
cōspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānis nec
locō nec numerō aequa contentiō ; simul et cursū et
spatiō pūgnae dēfatigātī nōn facile recentis atque inte-
grōs sustinēbant.

10

A Close Fight.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque
cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium
lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat,
mīsīt ut cohortīs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub
īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret ; ut,
sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hos-
tēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō
cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōstiterat, ēventum
pūgnae exspectābat.

Gallantry of a Centurion.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs
locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfiderent, subitō sunt
Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab
dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mī-
serat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs
perterrērunt ; āc, tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs ani-
madvertēbantur, quod īnsigne pāctum esse cōnsuērat,
tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus
factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius cen-
turiō quīque ūnā mūrū ascenderant circumventī atque

25

interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius,
 ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnā-
 tus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus āc sibi dēspērāns,
 multīs iam volneribus acceptīs, manipulārībus suīs quī
 5 illum secūtī erant, “Quoniam,” inquit, “mē ūnā vōbīs-
 cum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae
 prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perī-
 culum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.”
 Simul in mediōs hostīs inrūpit duōbusque interfectīs
 10 reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxi-
 liārī suīs, “Frūstrā,” inquit, “meae vītae subvenīre
 cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt.
 Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem
 recipite.” Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit āc suīs
 15 salūtī fuit.

Repulse of the Romans.

51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuri-
 ōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō; sed intolerantius
 Gallōs īnsequentīs legiō x tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō
 paulō aequiōre locō cōstitērat. Hanc rūsus XIII
 20 legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōri-
 bus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum
 superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitīem attigē-
 runt, īnfēstīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōstitērunt. Ver-
 cingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnitiōnēs
 25 redūxit. Eō diē milītēs sunt paulō minus dcc dēside-
 rātī.

Cæsar by Turns chides and praises his Men.

52. Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritā-
 tem cupiditātemque milītum reprehendit, quod sibi
 ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum

vidērētur, neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātā victōriā dīmīssisset, 5 nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidi tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam adroganti- 10 amque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

Cæsar moves towards the Hædui.

53. Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem 15 cōfirmātis mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs edūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx 20 nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum exīstimāns, in Haeduōs 25 mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtis hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver *vēnit*; pontis refēcit atque exercitum trādūxit.

His Suspicions that the Hædui mean to revolt are confirmed.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Haeduīs appellātus, discit cum omnī equitātū Litavīcum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandam cīvitatē. Etsī multīs
 5 iam rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitatīs exīstimābat; tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus eīs breviter sua in Hæduōs merita exposuit; quōs et quam humilīs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiīs impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn solum in
 15 prīstinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitatē et grātiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsīt.

The Gauls kill the Roman Garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar's Stores, and set Fire to the Town.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar
 20 omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum māgnam partem contulerat; hūc māgnū numerū equōrum, hūius bellī causā in Italiā atque Hispāniā cōēptum, mīserat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnis-
 25 sent et dē statū cīvitatīs cōgnōvissent, Litavīcum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōritātis, Convictolitavim magistrātum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convē-

nisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem dē pāce et amicitīa conciliandā pūblicē missōs ; nōn praetmittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt ; 5 obsidēs cīvitatū Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt ; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt ; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī 10 ex finitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt ; sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā in prōvinciam expellere] possent. 15 Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

Cæsar crosses the Loire.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, 20 ut prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiæ dīmīcāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut *nōn* nēmō tum quidem necessariō faciundum exīstimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās reī et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās 25 impediēbat ; tum māximē quod abiūctō Labiēnō atque eīs legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōfectīs, contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit ; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī 30 necessitāte opportunō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī

ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō adspectū perturbātis, incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris
 5 cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere instituit.

Labienus marches towards Lutetia (Paris).

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agēdincī, ut esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum quatuor
 10 legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum positum in insulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimis civitatibus cōpiae convēnerunt. Summa imperi trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetate
 15 tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impediret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trāsitū prohibēre instituit.

He falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. The Gauls follow him.

20 58. Labiēnus prīmō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilīus fieri animadvertit, silentiō ē castris tertiā vigiliā egressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in
 25 insulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūctis atque eō militibus impositis et rei novitate

perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes re cognita ab eis qui a 5 Metiosedo profugerant, Lutetiam incendi, pontisque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude in ripa Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt.

News comes to Labienus of Caesar's Repulse at Gergovia and of the Spread of the Gallic Insurrection.

59. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiēbatur; 10 iam de Haeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores adferēbantur; Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem, inopia frumenti coactum, in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem defectione Haeduorum cognita, qui iam 15 ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque apertē bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labienus tantā rerum commutatione longē aliud sibi capiendum consilium atque antea sēserat intellegēbat; neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostis lacesseret, sed ut inco- 20 lumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret cogitabat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant; alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenēbat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis 25 interclusas maximum flumen distinēbat. Tantīs subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi virtute auxilium petendum vidēbat.

Labienus's Skilful Stratagem.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnciliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāset diligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvīs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit; et primā cōfectā
 5 vigiliā III mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortīs quās minimē firmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; v ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentīs adversō
 10 flumine māgnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquirit etiam lintrīs; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvīs adpellī iusserat.

He brings about a Division of the Gallic Forces.

15 61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopinantēs, quod māgna subito erat coōrta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque, equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs ei negotiō praefēcerat, celeriter
 20 trāsmittitur. Unō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et māgnum ire agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādē parte exaudīrī, et paulō infrā milītēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus
 25 audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsire legiōnēs, [atque omnīs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trīs partīs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgre-

derētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Rout of the Gauls. Labienus rejoins Cæsar.

62. Prīmā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus, milītēs cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum 5 proeliōrum retinērent memoriam, atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius ductū saepe numerō hostīs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proelī. Prīmō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciun- 10 tur; ab sinistrō, quem locum xii legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfixī pīlis concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō etiam 15 nunc exitū victōriae, cum vii legiōnis tribūnis esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt sīgnaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem 20 fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At eī quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suis iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus per- 25 mixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relictā erant. Inde cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervenit.

The Uprising spreads. Vercingetorix officially appointed Commander-in-chief. The Haedui object.

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur ; quantum grātiā, auctōritātē, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātis nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud
 5 eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantīs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerundī communicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur ; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium
 10 Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiis rēs permittitur ; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc concilio Rēmī, Lingones, Trēverī āfuērunt : illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur ; Trēverī, quod
 15 aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū ; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requirunt ; neque tamen
 20 susceptō bellō suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Energetic Measures of Vercingetorix.

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs ; dēnique eī rei cōstituit diem. Hūc omnīs equitēs, xv
 25 mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet ; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmīcātūrum ; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frū-

mentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre ;
aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant,
aedificiaque incendant ; quā rei familiāris iactūrā per-
petuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequī videant.
Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt 5
finitimī [eī] prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat ;
hūc addit equitēs dccc. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporē-
dorīgis bellumque īferri Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā
ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in
Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finīs Volcārum 10
Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus
clandestīnis nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollici-
tat, quōrum mentīs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resē-
disse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitatī
autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur. 15

Cæsar summons Cavalry from Germany.

65. Ad hōs omnīs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia
cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta
prōvincia ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnīs partīs oppō-
nēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō
congressī pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Caburī 20
filiō, prīncipe cīvitatīs, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs,
intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crē-
brīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum
cūrā et diligentiā suōs finīs tuentur. Caesar, quod
hostīs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et inter- 25
clūsīs omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex prōvincia atque
Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam
mittit ad eās cīvitatīs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat ;
equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs,
quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, 30

quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque [sed et] equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātis equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix induces the Gallic Cavalry to attack the Romans.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex
 5 Arvernīs, equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī
 conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Cae-
 sar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finīs iter
 faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset,
 circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs
 10 Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit; convocātisque ad cōncilium
 praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōn-
 strat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque
 excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam liber-
 tātē satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque
 15 ōtium parum prōficī; māioribus enim coāctis cōpiis
 reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde *in*
 agmine impeditōs adorianur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium
 ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī,
 id quod magis futūrum cōfidat, relictis impedimentis
 20 suae salūtī cōsulant, et ūsū rērum necessariārum et dīg-
 nitātē spoliātum irī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn
 nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audeat, nē
 ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant
 animō, cōpiās sē omnīs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōri
 25 hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sāctis-
 simō iūre iūrandō cōfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō reci-
 piātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentis, nē ad uxōrem
 aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium pere-
 quitārit.'

The Attack fails.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trīs partīs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartitō dīvisum 5 contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, cō signa īferri Caesar aciemque cōverti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostis ad 10 īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostis locō dēpellunt: fugientis ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrisque interficiunt. Quā 15 rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitavī proximīs comitiīs habuerat; et Cava- 20 rillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litavīcī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat; et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix falls back upon Alesia, which Cæsar determines to invest.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Ale- 25 siam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequi iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum

collem ductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus hostis quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu (quā maximē parte exercitus confidebant) erant pulsī, adhortatus ad laborem milites Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

Alesia and its Defences.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari nōn posse vidēretur. Cuius collis radicēs duo duabus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum planities circiter milia passuum III in longitudinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocri interiecto spatio, pari altitudinis fastigio oppidum cingebant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectabat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum praeduxerant. Eius munitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbatur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnis locis erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subito ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. Slaughter of the Gauls.

70. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in eā planitiē quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patere suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā VI ab utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsq̄e prō castris cōn-

stituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit 5 māgna caedēs; nōn nullī relictīs equīs fossam transīre et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōfestim exīstimantēs ad arma 10 conclāmant; nōn nullī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix dismisses his Cavalry and Calls upon all Gaul for Help.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rō- 15 mānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitatē adeat omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae 20 salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō 25 etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam eis quī nōn pārū-

erint cōstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs
 5 ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Cæsar's Siege Works.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnītis ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis īnstituit: fossam pedum vīginti dīrēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum
 10 tantundem patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū
 15 ad mūnitiōnēs multītūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs cōnicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus āc dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā
 20 complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum xii pedum extrūxit: huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx inter sē
 25 distārent.

Obstructions and Defenses.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; āc nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiō-
 30 nem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnā-

bantur. Quā rē ad haec rŭrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mŭnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs 5 pedēs altae dŭcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab infimō revinctī, nē revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī ; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimis vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs 10 oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm angustīōre ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine ab summō praeacūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs III ex terrā ēminērent ; 15 simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur ; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris 20 lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Defenses against Enemies from Outside.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnes secūtus quam 25 potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIV mīlia passuūm complexus parīs ēiusdem generis mŭnitiōnes, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat ēius discessū], mŭnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent ; nē autem cum 30

periculō ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum iubet.

All Gaul combines for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī concilio prīncipum indictō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre
 5 possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitatī imperandum; nē tantā multitudine cōfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs,
 10 Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs, Brannovīcibus, [Blannoviīs,] mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia;
 15 Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nervīīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrigibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem Atrebātibus; iiii Vellocassīs; [Lexoviīs, et]
 20 Aulercīs Eburovīcibus iii; Rauracīs et Bōiīs bīna; x ūniversīs cīvitatibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovīī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī
 25 suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent, neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitio duo mīlia mīsērunt.

Enthusiastic Approach of the Gauls.

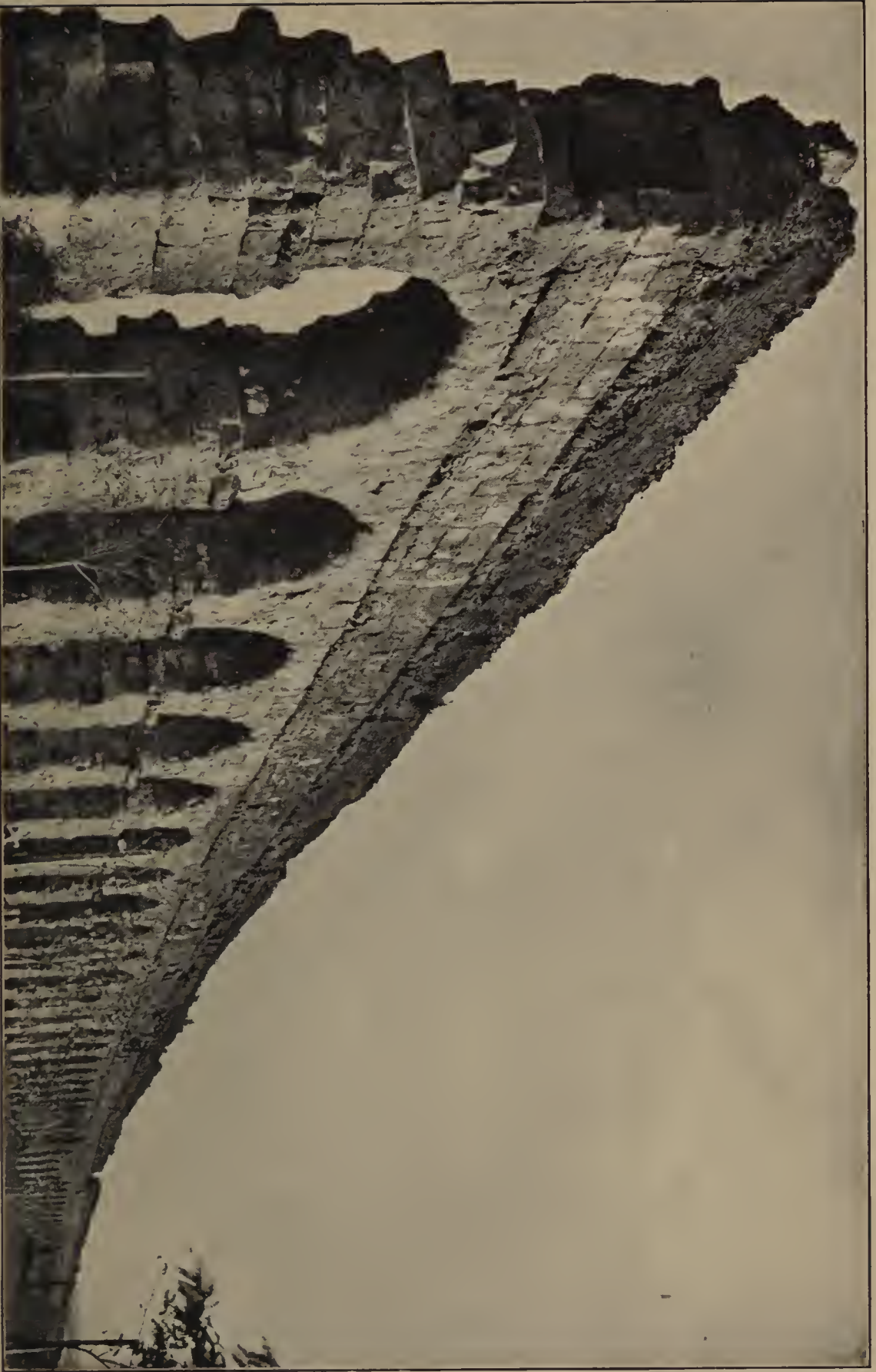
76. Hūius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae 5 cōsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae belli laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equitum milibus viii et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus 10 recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporedorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlēcti ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō bellum 15 administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī adspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equi- 20 tātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

A Council of War at Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Plan.

77. At ēi quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īscii quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Āc 25 variis dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem āc nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hīc summō in Avernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus
auctōritātis : “ Nihil,” inquit, “ dē eōrum sententiā
dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis
nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō
5 neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēseō. Cum hīs
mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant ; quōrum in cōn-
siliō omnium vestrum cōsensū prīstinae residēre vir-
tūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn
virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē
10 ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī
dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam
probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam
praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem ; sed
in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,
15 quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid,
hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs
cōsanguineisque nostrīs animī fore existimātis, sī
paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur ?
Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō expoliāre quī vestrae salutis
20 causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt ; nec stultitiā ac
temeritāte vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem
Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.
An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōn-
stantiāque dubitātis ? Quid ergō ? Rōmānōs in illīs
25 ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exer-
cērī putātis ? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōfirmārī nōn
potestis omnī aditū praeseptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus ad-
propinquāre eōrum adventum ; cūius rei timōre ex-
territi diem noctemque in opere versantur.

30 “ Quid ergō mei cōnsili est ? Facere quod nostrī
māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonum-
que fēcērunt ; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā



THE RUINS OF THE OLD AQUEDUCT AT ROME

subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāverunt, neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā instituī et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō 5 fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs 10 fāmā nōbilis potentisque bellō cōgnōverunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitatibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finiti- 15 mam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte ! ”

The Mandubii are driven out of the Town. Cæsar declines to receive them.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque 20 omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant : illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus 25 exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipi prohibēbat.

Arrival of the Relieving Army amid the Joy of the Besieged.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsi-
 5 dunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, quam in longitudinem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmōstrāvimus, complent; pedestrisque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiori-
 bus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in
 10 campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiis ante oppidum consistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnis cāsūs
 15 comparant.

A Fierce Struggle in the Valley. Defeat of the Gauls.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris,
 20 quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcera, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs
 25 sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō volnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superioriōres esse Gallī cōfiderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnitiōnibus con-

tinēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat ; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat. Cum 5 ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōfertis turmīs in hostīs inpetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārīi circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentis ūsque 10 ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

A Night Attack on the Romans.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā 15 nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestris mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significationē quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātis prōicere, fundīs, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaue 20 quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt ; fundīs librilibus, sudibusque 25 quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris ademptō multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur ; complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte 30

nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō et ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

It fails.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant ; posteāquam propius
 5 successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobis dēlati trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiecti pīlis mūrālibus interībant. Multis undique volneribus acceptis, nūllā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret, veriti nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus
 10 castris ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent ; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandis morātī, prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus
 15 adpropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Last Attempt of the Army of Relief.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsi Gallī quid agant cōsulunt. Locōrum peritōs adhibent ; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt.
 20 Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī ; necessariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus ob
 25 tinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant ; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt ; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt cum merīdiēs esse

videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex iiii ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere 5 iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprà dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrīs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt. 10

Vercingetorix takes a Hand. The Romans' Critical Position.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex ōppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcīs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est hūc con- 15 curritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distinetur nec facile plūrībus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt 20 vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

Valorous Fighting on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscīt; labōrantibus *subsidiū* submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi 25 perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrā-

tur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium māgnū habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt ; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger
 5 ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit ; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Cæsar exhorts his Troops.

86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus vi subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī
 10 sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet ; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs ; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant ; omnium superiorum dīmiciatiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus
 15 locis propter māgnitudinem mūnitiōnum, loca prae-rupta [ex] ascēsus temptant ; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitudinem tēlorum ex turribus prōpūgnantis dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

And is all over the Field.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum ; postrēmō ipse cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs
 20 subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat cōtendit ; cohortis III ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi,
 partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostis adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis XL cohortibus

tibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

The Gauls are utterly defeated.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, [quō insignī in proeliis ūtī cōsuērat], turmisque equitum et 5 cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superioribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostrī omissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Re- 10 pente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna militāria 15 LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc 20 tōtīus diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus nōvissimum agmen cōsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitatīs discēdunt.

25

Surrender of Vercingetorix.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed communis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for-

tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō
 5 castrīs cōsīdit ; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur ; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitātis recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Cæsar distributes his Forces for the Winter. A Thanksgiving decreed at Rome.

- 10 **90.** Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur ; civitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat. māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit ; captivōrum circiter xx milia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.
- 15 T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet ; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant.
- 20 C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte
 25 hiemāre cōstituit.

Hīs *rēbus ex Caesaris* litterīs cōgnītīs Rōmae diērum vīginti supplicātiō redditur.

NOTES.

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

cf. (confer) = *compare*.

e.g. (exempli gratia) = *for example*.

etc. (et cetera) = *and the rest ; and so forth*.

i.e. (id est) = *that is*.

in fin. (in fine) = *at the end*.

lit. = *literal, literally*.

Ms. = *manuscript* ; Mss. = *manuscripts*.

p. (pagina) = *page* ; pp. (paginae) = *pages*.

sc. (scilicet) = *understand, supply*.

DICTIONARIES.

Crombie, — *Crombie's Gymnasium sive Symbola Critica*.

Dict. Antiqq., — *Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*.

Dict. Biog., — *Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology*.

Dict. Geog., — *Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography*.

Lex. or Lexicon, — *Andrews's Freund's Latin Lexicon*, or *Harper's Latin Dictionary*.

NOTES.

A = Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar*; B = Bennett's *Latin Grammar*; G = Gildersleeve-Lodge *Latin Grammar*;
H = Harkness's *Complete Latin Grammar*.

BOOK I.

Events of the year 58 B.C. Consuls, L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus and Aulus Gabinius. I. A general description of Gaul. II. The war with the Helvetians. III. The war with Ariovistus.

Commentarii. Sketches, memoirs, which were professedly not of an elaborate kind or finished style. *Commentarii* is the title of the two historical works composed by Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* and *De Bello Civili*.

Page 1, line 1. CHAPTER I. — **Gallia . . . tris**, *all Gaul is divided into three parts*.

Omnis, except the Roman province, **provincia**, in the southern part.

Est divisa, *is divided*; lit., has been divided. But the so-called present passive (*is divided*) in English expresses a completed action, and is therefore often used to translate the Latin perfect passive.

Quarum, partitive gen. governed by **unam**. B. 201, 1; H. 442; A. 346, *a*, 2; G. 367.

Quarum, etc. Order: **unam** (*partem*) **quarum** **Belgae incolunt**, **Aquitani** (*incolunt*) **aliam** (*partem*), (*ii incolunt*) **tertiam** (*partem*) **qui linguâ ipsorum** (*appellantur*) **Celtae**, **nostrâ** (*linguâ*) **appellantur Galli**.

2. **Belgae**. For this and all other geographical words, see Geographical Index.

3. **Ipsorum lingua**, lit., in the language of themselves = *in their own language*.

Lingua, instrumental abl. B. 218; H. 476; A. 409; G. 401.

4. **Lingua, institutis**, abl. of specification (denoting *in what respect*). B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397.

Inter se, lit., among themselves = *from one another*.

5. **Flumen**, supply **dividit**.

Matrōna and **Sequāna** have a verb (**dividit**) in the sing. because they are considered as a whole. B. 255, 3; H. 392, 4; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2. With **dividit** supply **eos** = Gallos, *the Gauls*.

7. **Horum**, partitive gen. governed by **fortissimi**.

Propterēa quod (= *propter-ea, quod*, lit., on account of these things, that) = *because*.

Cultu, *the culture* (civilization), **humanitate**, *the refinement*.

8. **Provinciae**, *of the province, i.e.* the Roman province in Transalpine Gaul, whence the modern *Provence*. See Map and Index.

Minime saepe, *least frequently*.

10. **Atque**, etc. Order: **atque** important **ea** (*those things*) **quae** pertinent ad effeminandos animos (lit., minds = *the mind*).

Effeminandos, *effeminating*, enervating. How is the gerundive used? B. 338, 3; H. 628; A. 503, 506; G. 427.

11. Before **proximi** repeat **propterēa quod**.

Germanis, *to the Germans*. Dat. limiting **proximi**. B. 192, 1; H. 434, 2; A. 384; G. 359.

12. **Quibuscum** = cum quibus.

13. **Quoque**, *also*, always follows the emphatic word.

Virtute, *in bravery*. Abl. of specification, denoting *in what respect*. B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397.

14. **Fere . . . proeliis**. Take the **in**, which is a part of the meaning of **proeliis**, before **fere**, *i.e.* translate, *in almost daily battles*.

Proeliis, instrumental abl.

15. **Cum**, *when* = on which occasions.

Suis finibus, *from their territories*. **Suis** refers to the Helvetians, and **eos** to the Germans. Why? B. 244, 1; H. 503; A. 300, 1; G. 309, 1.

Finibus, abl. of separation. B. 214, 2; H. 464, 1; A. 400; G. 390, 2.

16. **Ipsi**, *they themselves*, *i.e.* the Helvetians. Look for **ipse** in the index of your grammar, and find the reference.

17. **Eorum**, *of them* (*i.e. horum omnium*). Partitive gen.

Quam . . . est, *which it has been said that the Gauls possess*.

Gallos is subject accusative of **obtinere**, and **Gallos obtinere** (*that the Gauls possess*) depends on the word of saying, **dictum est** (which is here used impersonally). B. 330; H. 615; A. 562, 4, *b*; G. 528. Remember that in translating the subject accus. it is generally preceded by the word *that*.

18. **Continetur**, lit., it is held in = *it is bounded*.

19. **Ab**, *in the direction of*.

Page 2, line 7. **Ditissimus**, from **dives**.

8. **Marco . . . consulibus**, *Marcus Messāla and Marcus Piso being consuls* = in the consulship of Marcus, etc. This is one of the Roman methods of designating *the year* of an event. By referring to a chronological list of Roman consuls (*e.g.* in vol. 3d of Smith's Dict. of Greek and Rom. Biog. and Myth.), we find the year was 61 B.C.

M. Messāla, M. Pisone, abl. absolute without a participle. B. 227, 1; H. 489; A. 419, *a*; G. 410.

10. CHAPTER 2. — **Civitati**, *the state*. Dat. (limiting **persuasit**) of the indirect object; the direct object is the object clause **ut . . . exirent**. B. 187, ii, *a*; H. 426, 2; A. 367; G. 346, 2.

11. **Exirent**. Subjunctive of *purpose*, after **ut**. B. 295, 1; H. 565; A. 563; G. 546. Why in the imperfect tense? (Because it follows the historical perfect or secondary tense **persuasit**.) B. 267, 268, 1; H. 543, 546; A. 483, 485, *a*; G. 509.

Perfacile esse, *that it was very easy*. The subject of **esse** (represented in the translation by *it*) is the substantive clause **totius . . . potiri**; the infinitive with its subject accus. follows the verb **persuasit**, which implies a word of *saying*.

Cum . . . praestarent, *since* (because) *they excelled all in valor*.

Virtute, abl. of *specification*.

12. **Omnibus**, dat. limiting the compound **praestarent**, because the prep. (**prae**) retains its force (*i.e.* they stood *before* all, etc.). B. 187, iii, 1; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Praestarent. Causal subjunct. after **cum**. B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

Imperio, abl. governed by **potiri**. B. 218, 1; H. 477; A. 410; G. 407.

13. **Hoc facilius**, *the more easily on this account*. **Hoc**, abl. of cause.

14. **Una ex parte**, *on one side*.

15. **Helvetium**, an adj. from *Helvetius*.

17. **Tertia**, *i.e.* *tertia ex parte continentur*.

20. **His . . . fiebat**, *from these circumstances it happened*.

Rebus, abl. of cause.

Minus late, *less widely*, than they wished to do.

Vagarentur, *they roamed about*, wandered. Subjunct. of result after **ut**. B. 297, 2; H. 571, 1; A. 537; G. 553, 3.

In translating the subjunctive, use those auxiliaries (when auxiliaries are necessary) which best convey the real meaning. The auxiliaries given in Latin grammars are merely those which most frequently apply.

22. **Bellandi**, *of waging war*: gen. limiting **cupidi**. B. 204, 1, 338, 1, *b*; H. 451, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374.

24. **Angustos . . . habere**, *that they had narrow territories*.

Se, subject accus. of **habere**; following **arbitrabantur**.

25. **Milia**, accus. of *extent of space*. B. 181; H. 417; A. 425; G. 335.

Passuum, *of paces*. Partitive gen. **Passus**, a Roman measure of length = five Roman feet. **Mille passuum** = one Roman mile; **milia passuum** = *miles*.

28. CHAPTER 3. **Ea quae pertinerent**, *those things which pertained*, but with the force of "such things as pertained"; **pertinerent** is subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1 and 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2. This may also be taken as a dependent clause in implied indir. disc. B. 323; H. 649, 1; A. 591, 1; G. 628.

Page 3, line 1. **Quam . . . numerum**, *as large a number as possible*. Notice this use and meaning of **quam** with the superlative. B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2; A. 291, *c*; G. 303.

3. **Suppeteret**, *might be at hand* (ready). Subjunct. of purpose. B. 282; H. 568; A. 530, 531; G. 545.

5. **Conficiendas**, *accomplishing*: a gerundive.

Biennium, *that two years*: subject accus. of *esse*; following the verb of thinking **duxerunt**.

Sibi, *for them*: dat. limiting the indeclinable adj. **satis**.

6. **In**, *for*.

9. **Sibi suscepit**, *undertook for himself*, i.e. he reserved that duty for himself.

12. **Amicus**, and that was considered a distinguished honor.

13. **Occuparet**. As **persuadet** in line 10 is a present tense, why is **occuparet** an imperfect instead of a present? Because **persuadet** is an *historical present* (= *persuasit*).

14. Order: *itemque persuadet Dumnorigi, Haeduo, fratri Diviciaci, qui, etc.*

16. **Maxime acceptus**, *especially agreeable*.

13. **Perfacile . . . perficere**, *he proves to them that to accomplish their undertakings is very easy to do*. **Conata perficere** is subject accus. of *esse*, depending on **probat**.

Factu. How is the supine in *u* used? B. 340, 2; H. 635, 1; A. 510, and Note 1; G. 436.

19. **Obtenturus esset**, *was about (intended) to seize upon*; the active periphrastic form. B. 115; H. 236; A. 195; G. 247. The subjunctive refers the assertion to Orgetorix. B. 314, 1; H. 643; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

20. **Non esse dubium**, *that it was not doubtful*. The speech now takes the form of *oratio obliqua*. **Quin**, *that*, is used with verbs of doubt, when they are negatived or questioned.

Galliae, partitive gen.; **totius Galliae** = *omnium Gallorum*.

21. **Plurimum possent** = *were the most powerful*. **Possent**, subjunct. of result after **quin**. B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558, a; G. 555, 2.

22. **Conciliaturum (esse)**, *will procure*. Why *must esse* be supplied? Because it is necessary to complete the *verbal form*, fut. infin.

23. **Inter se** = *to one another*.

24. **Regno occupato**, abl. absolute. Order: *sperant sese posse (will be able) potiri totius Galliae per tris, etc.*

25. **Galliae**, gen. governed by **potiri**. B. 212, 2; H. 477, 1, 3; A. 410, a; G. 407, N. d.

Posse (= *fore ut possint*).

26. CHAPTER 4. — **Est enuntiata** = enuntiata est.

27. **Ex . . . dicere**, *to plead his cause in chains* (lit., out of chains).

28. Order: oportebat poenam, ut cremaretur igni (abl.), sequi (*eum*) damnatum (lit., condemned = if he should be condemned).

Poenam sequi, *that the punishment should follow* (overtake), is subject of oportebat.

Page 4, line 1. **Die constituta**, *on the appointed day*. **Die**, abl. of *time when*. B. 230; H. 486; A. 423; G. 393. **Dictionis**, *of the pleading*, limits die.

2. **Familiam**, *household*, among the Romans often denoted the slaves belonging to one master. Dict. Antiqq.

Ad, *about*, when used with numerals.

5. **Ne**, *that . . . not*.

7. **Conaretur**, *was endeavoring*. Subjunct. after cum temporal. B. 288, 1, B; H. 600, II; A. 546; G. 585.

8. **Neque** = *and . . . not; i.e. and the suspicion is not wanting*.

9. **Quin ipse consciverit**, *that he himself inflicted* (lit., decreed, resolved on). **Consciverit**, subjunct. of result. B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558; G. 555, 2.

Sibi, *on himself*.

11. CHAPTER 5. — **Nihilo minus** (= *nihilominus*), lit., less in nothing = *nevertheless*. **Nihilo**, abl. of deg. of diff. **Id** is defined by the clause **ut . . . exeant**, which is in apposition with it.

13. **Paratos**, an adj.

14. **Numero**, *in number*; abl. of specification.

17. **Domum**, *home*. B. 182, 1, b; H. 419, 1; A. 427, 2; G. 337.

Spe, abl. absol.

Sublata, *being removed*: from tollo.

18. **Subeunda**, *undergoing*: a gerundive from subeo. Order: iubent quemque efferre domo sibi trium mensium (*three months'*) molita cibaria.

Molita cibaria, *i.e. ground corn*, of which bread was made.

19. **Domo**. B. 229, 1, b; H. 462, 4; A. 427, 1; G. 390, 2.

22. **Uti** = ut.

25. **Oppugnarant** = oppugnaverant.

Nore'-i-am.

Receptos . . . **adsciscunt** = *they take to themselves and admit to themselves as allies*. For the translation of **receptos**, see II. 639; A. 496, N. 2; G. 664, R.

Sibi. B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Page 5, line 2. **Singuli carri**, *a single wagon at a time*. Notice the force of the distributive.

Ducerentur, *could be drawn*: subjunctive of characteristic. B. 283; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

4. **Multo**, lit., by much = much. Abl. of degree of difference. B. 223; H. 479, 1; A. 414; G. 403.

7. **Non nullis locis**, *in some places*. Prep. *in* omitted.

10. **Allobrogibus** . . . **persuasuros** (*esse*), *that they would either persuade the Allobrogians*.

11. **Bono animo**, *of good mind, i.e. well disposed*: abl. of quality. B. 224, 1; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

12. **Viderentur**, *they seemed*, subjunct. because the sentiment or thought is that of the Helvetians. B. 314, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

Vel (*se*) **coacturos** (*esse eos*) **vi**.

15. **Qua die convenient** = *ut ea die convenient, that they may assemble on that day*; or, *on which day they are to assemble*; hence **convenient** is subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; II. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

16. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.** (*ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*), *the fifth day before the Calends of April*. One of the Roman methods of fixing *the day of the month*. In determining such a day the Romans always counted the day *from* which and that *to* which they reckoned. Thus, commencing with April first and counting back five days, you will fix the date = March 28th. (This reduction is based upon the Julian calendar.) B. 371, 5, *d*; H. 754; A. 631; G. p. 491.

Diem, an idiomatic accus. *as if* governed by **ante**, but **ante** governs **Kalendas**.

Aprilis, plural adj. (*is* being the termination of the accus. plural of -i stems).

Consulibus. B.C. 58.

19. CHAPTER 7. — **Iter facere** = *to march*.

Urbe, *i.e.* Rome.

20. **Quam . . . itineribus**, *by as great journeys as he can*.
B. 240, 3; H. 159, 2; A. 291, c; G. 303.

21. **Ulteriore**, *farther* = Transalpinam, beyond the Alps.

Provinciae toti imperat, *he assigns to (i.e. levies on) the whole province*.

25. **Certiores . . . sunt** = *were informed*.

28. **Qui . . . dicerent** = *ut illi dicerent, who were to say* (that they might say; to say); subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

Sibi . . . liceat. This is the speech of the ambassadors, which is given in *oratio obliqua*.

Sibi . . . animo, *lit., that they have in mind = that they intend*.

Sibi, dat. of the possessor. B. 190; H. 430; A. 373; G. 349.

Page 6, line 1. Habarent, *they had* (not, they might have).

Rogare, *sc. se, that they ask*, followed by the object clause **ut . . . liceat**.

3. **Memoria**, *in memory*: abl. of means.

Lucium . . . occisum (esse), *that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain*, in 107 B.C. Why *had been slain*? Because **occisum esse** is past with respect to **tenebat**, which is *also past*.

5. **Iugum**, *the yoke*, which consisted of two spears set upright and one across their top. Under this the conquered army was obliged to pass, without arms, in token of submission.

Concedendum (esse sibi). The student should endeavor to gain a clear idea of the nature and meaning of this construction, which is of very frequent occurrence in Latin writers. Let him observe (1) that **esse** is necessary to complete the verbal form—the passive periphrastic; (2) that **sibi** indicates the agent, in the dative case. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355; (3) that the verb is here, as it frequently is, used impersonally, *i.e.* without a subject accus., both verb and subject being expressed by a single form—a usage unknown to English;

(4) and that such forms are best translated either (a) by rendering the dative of the agent (sometimes, as here, understood) as if it were the subject; *that he ought to grant the request*; or (b) we may form a subject out of the substantive idea implied in the verb, "concession," "grant"; *that the concession should be made by him*. Order: neque existimabat homines inimico animo temperaturos (esse) ab iniuria et maleficio, facultate facienda itineris per provinciam data.

6. **Inimico animo.** B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

7. **Itineris faciundi**, of making a march. B. 339, 1; H. 623, 626; A. 503, 504; G. 428.

9. **Convenirent**, should assemble: B. 293, III, 2; H. 603, II, 2; A. 553; G. 572.

10. **Si . . . reverterentur.** In *oratio recta* it would be, si quid vultis, ad Idus Aprilis revertimini.

11. **Idus Aprilis**, the Ides of April = April 13th. The Ides fell on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the remaining months.

Reverterentur, as expressing a command, was imperative in *oratio recta*. B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652.

17. CHAPTER 8.—**Perducit**, he constructs.

18. **Quo** = (ut eo), in order that, followed by **possit**, subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 1, a; H. 568, 7; A. 531, a; G. 545, 2.

Se invito, he being unwilling = against his will. Abl. absol.

21. **Negat se posse** = he says that he cannot.

23. **Prohibiturum**, sc. se esse.

24. **Spe**, abl. of separation (here governed by **de** in composition).

Navibus, abl. absol.

25. **Alii** = some, sc. conati transire; the **conati** expressed agrees with **Helvetii**. The meaning evidently is, that while the Helvetians generally tried to force a passage in boats and on rafts, yet some of them endeavored to cross by the fords of the river.

26. Order: conati nonnumquam interdum, saepius noctu, si possent perrumpere, (*tamen*) repulsi munitione operis et concursu, etc.

27. **Possent**, subjunct. of indirect question after **si** = num. B. 300, 3; H. 649, II, 3; A. 576, *a*; G. 460, 1, *b*.

28. **Conatu**, abl. of separation (governed by **de** in composition).

Page 7, line 3. CHAPTER 9. — **Sua sponte**, of themselves, without the aid of others.

4. **Eo**, through him : abl. of means.

5. **Gratia . . . largitione**, on account of his popularity and liberal giving : abl. of cause. In rendering the oblique cases use those phrases and prepositions which best convey the real meaning.

6. **Plurimum poterat** = was very powerful.

8. **Novis . . . studebat**, was eager for new things (political changes).

9. **Beneficio**, kindness, good services.

12. **Sequāni**, sc. uti obsides dent.

13. **Itinere**, from a march : abl. of separation. B. 214, 2; H. 464; A. 400; G. 390, 2.

19. CHAPTER 10. — **Provinciae**, to the province : gen. limiting **periculo**.

Futurum (esse), that it would happen : used impersonally.

Ut haberet, that it (the province) should have.

20. **Locis . . . finitimos**, adjacent to open and very fertile districts. **Locis**, dat. limiting **finitimos**.

22. **Munitioni**, dat. limiting **praefecit**, the prep. (**prae**) retaining its force in the compound.

26. **Quā**, an adv.

Proximum = shortest.

Page 8, line 3. **Compluribus . . . pulsus**, these having been defeated in several battles.

Proeliis, instrumental abl.

4. **Citerioris**, of the hither = Cisalpinae.

Extremum, a noun.

12. CHAPTER 11. — **Se suaque**, themselves and their property (interests).

13. **Rogatum**, to ask. B. 340, 1, *a*; H. 633; A. 509; G. 435.

Ita . . . debuerint. The speech of the ambassadors, given in *oratio obliqua*.

Se meritos esse, *that they had deserved*, follows legatos mittunt, which involves the idea of *saying*.

14. Order: ut agri (*eorum*) non debuerint vastari, liberi eorum (*non debuerint*) abduci in servitutem, etc.

15. Nostri, gen. agreeing with exercitus.

18. Certiorem faciunt = *inform*.

22. Sibi . . . reliqui, *that they have nothing (of) remaining but the soil of the ground*. Sibi, dat. of the possessor.

23. Reliqui, partitive gen. after nihil.

Quibus rebus = *by these circumstances*.

Non . . . sibi = *that he ought not to wait*. See note on line 5, page 6. Sibi, dat. of the agent. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355.

28. CHAPTER 12. — Fluat, *it flows* (not, may flow), subjunct. of indirect question. B. 300, 1; H. 649, II; A. 573, 574; G. 467.

Page 9, line 1. Ratibus, *by means of rafts*: abl. of means. (Abl. absol. of means would do, but the former is more direct.)

3. Order: Helvetios iam (*already*) traduxisse id flumen tris partis (= *three-fourths*) copiarum.

Flumen, accus. governed by trans in composition. B. 179, 1; H. 413; A. 395; G. 331, R. 1.

4. De tertia vigilia, *in the third watch*. The Romans divided the night into four vigiliae or watches. The first began at sunset, the second ended at midnight, and the fourth ended at sunrise. Their length of course varied with the season of the year.

5. Profectus, from proficiscor.

7. Adgressus, *having attacked*.

8. Mandarunt = mandaverunt.

9. In, followed by the accus., implies that they *went to* the woods and *there* concealed themselves.

11. Unus = *particular*.

12. Memoria, abl. of time when = *within the memory*.

14. Sive . . . sive, *either . . . or*.

Consilio, *by the design*: abl. of cause.

Quae . . . Helvetiae, *the part of the Helvetian state which*.

15. **Pars** is emphatically repeated in *ea, that*.

Populo, dat. governed by the compound **intulerat**, indirect obj. B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

16. **Princeps persolvit**, *was the first to suffer*.

18. Order: quod Tigurini, eodem proelio, quo interfecerant Cassium (*etiam interfecerant*), Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Luci Pisonis eius (*i.e. Caesar's*) soceri.

22. CHAPTER 13. — **Faciendum** (esse), *should be made*. Passive periphrastic form.

25. **Diebus**, abl. of time within which. B. 231; H. 487; A. 423; G. 393.

Aegerrime, *with the greatest difficulty*.

Ut . . . transirent, is in apposition with **id**.

28. **Bello**, abl. of time *when*.

29. **Egit**, *treated*.

Si pacem, etc. Divico's speech, given in *oratio obliqua*, the principles of which the student should endeavor to comprehend: "*he who knows the Oratio Obliqua knows Latin*." See B. 313; H. 641; A. 577; G. 508.

30. **Ituros** (esse), **futuros** (esse). The omission of *esse* in the fut. inf. act. is very common.

Page 10, line 1. **Helvetios ituros** (esse), *that the Helvetians would go*, follows **egit**, which implies a word of *saying*.

2. **Persequi**, *sc. eos*.

3. **Reminisceretur**, *he should remember* (let him remember). In the *oratio recta* (*i.e.* Divico's own words), it was **reminiscere**, imperative. B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652. So, **tribueret**, **despiceret**, and **committeret**, farther on.

3. **Incommodi**, *disaster*. B. 206, 2; H. 454; A. 350, c; G. 376.

4. **Quod . . . esset**, *because he had suddenly attacked one canton*.

6. **Suis**, *sc. sociis*, or *amicis*, *to their companions* (friends).

8. **Didicisse**, from **disco**.

9. **Insidiis**, abl. of means.

10. **Ne committeret**, *he should not allow*; followed by the object clause **ut . . . caperet**.

Constitissent, *they had taken their stand*.

12. **Memoriam proderet**, *should hand down* (transmit) *the memory* (of it).

13. CHAPTER 14. — **Eo . . . dari**, *that less* (of) *doubt is afforded* (to) *him on this account*. **Eo**, abl. (from *is*) of cause. **Minus**, subject. accus. of **dari**; following **respondit**.

14. **Commemorassent** = *commemoravissent*, subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*.

15. **Eo gravius . . . quo minus**, *the more grievously . . . the less*; lit., more grievously in that degree . . . by which the less: **eo**, **quo**, abl. of degree of difference, best rendered *the . . . the*. B. 223; H. 479; A. 414, *a*; G. 403.

16. **Quī sī fuisset** = *if they* (the Roman people) *had been*.

18. **Cavere**, *sc. eum* (*i.e.* *populum Romanum*).

Eo (*eum*) **deceptum** (*esse*), *that they had been deceived in this*.

Commissum (*esse*) = *that any fault had been committed*. Used impersonally.

20. **Timendum** (*esse sibi*) = *that they should fear*. See note on line 5, page 6.

Quod si, *but if*.

21. **Num memoriam deponere** (*eum*) **posse**, *could they lay aside the recollection?* A rhetorical question, and hence the infin. **posse** instead of the subjunct. B. 315, 2; H. 642, 2; A. 586; G. 651, R.

Num, an interrogative particle, implying that the answer will be "No."

24. **Quod gloriarentur**, *that they boasted*. The clauses beginning with **quod** are the subjects accus. of **pertinere**.

Victoria, abl. of cause.

26. **Se . . . tulisse**, *that they had inflicted injuries with impunity*.

Eodem = *to the same end*.

27. Order: *enim immortalis deos consuesse* (= *consuevisse*) *interdum concedere secundiores* (*more prosperous*) *res et diuturniorem impunitatem his, quos velint ulcisci pro eorum scelere, quo* (*in order that*) *homines doleant gravius ex commutatione rerum*.

Page 11, line 1. **Cum**, *although*, followed by **sint** (*are*), subjunct. of concession. B. 309, 3; H. 598; A. 549; G. 587.

2. **Facturos**, *sc. eos esse, that they will perform*.

7. **Consuerint** = *consueverint*.

12. CHAPTER 15. — **Coactum habebat** = *had (i.e. already possessed) collected*; a periphrasis. B. 337, 6; H. 431, 3; A. 497, *b*; G. 238.

Qui videant = *ut ii videant, that they may observe, or, who are to observe*; subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

13. **Novissimum agmen** = *the rear*. (1) **Exercitus**, *an army*; the generic word. (2) **Agmen**, *an army in line of march*. (3) **Acies**, *an army drawn up and ready for battle*.

14. **Alieno loco**, *in an unfavorable position*. **Loco**, abl., prep. *in* omitted.

17. **Quo** = *by this*.

19. **Subsistere**, *to stand*.

Novissimo agmine, *sc. in, at their rear*.

20. **Proelio** = *to battle*; abl. Lit., with battle.

21. **Satis habebat**, *considered it sufficient*.

23. **Ita**, *in such a manner, uti, that*.

24. **Primum**, *sc. agmen, the van, the advance*.

25. **Quinis . . . senis**, *than five or six, for each of the fifteen days*; hence the use of the distributives.

Milibus, abl., after the comparative **amplius**, which is subject of **interesset**.

27. CHAPTER 16. — **Haeduos frumentum**, *corn of the Hæduans*. B. 178, 1, *a*; H. 411; A. 396; G. 339.

28. **Essent . . . polliciti**, *they had promised in the name of the state*.

Flagitare = *flagitabat, demanded*, and is called the *historical infinitive*. B. 335; H. 610; A. 463; G. 647.

Page 12, line 3. **Ne quidem**, *not even*.

4. **Frumento**, governed by **uti**. B. 218, 1; H. 477; A. 410; G. 407.

Flumine, abl. of means = *(by means of) the river*.

5. **Navibus**, *in boats*, abl. of the instrument.

Propterea quod (*i.e.* propter ea, quod), *on this account, because.*

Minus here = non, *not.*

7. **Diem . . . ducere**, *delayed* (*sc.* him = put him off) *day after day.* **Diem**, accus. of time *how long.* **Ducere**, *historical infin.*

Conferri . . . dicere, *they said that it* (the corn) *was being gathered, was being collected, was at hand.*

10. **Oporteret.** The subjunct. here reflects Cæsar's own past thoughts (principle of *oratio obliqua*).

14. **Annuus**, *annually.* Difference of idiom often renders it necessary to translate adjectives as adverbs.

In suos, *over his people.*

16. **Posset**, *sc.* frumentum.

17. **Sublevetur.** B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540; G. 541.

22. CHAPTER 17. — **Esse non nullos**, *that there are some*, follows **proponit**, which implies a word of *saying.* The speech of Liscus is given in *oratio obliqua.*

23. **Plurimum valeat**, *is very powerful.*

24. **Plus possint**, *are more powerful.*

26. **Quod . . . debeant**, *which they ought to furnish.* The reading of this passage in the Mss. is various.

28. **Quam**, *than*; after the comparative implied in **præferre.**

29. **Una**, an adv.

Page 13, line 1. **Haeduis**, *from the Hæduans*: dat. rendered *from.* B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 347, R. 5.

Sint erepturi, *they will wrest* (take away). This so-called periphrastic form here supplies the place of the fut. subjunc. B. 269, 3; H. 541, N. 1; G. 514.

2. **Quaeque** = et quae, *and those things which.*

3. **Quin etiam** = *moreover.*

5. **Fecerit**, *he did*; subjunct. of indirect question (and would be subjunct. in *oratio recta* also). B. 300, 1. H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

6. **Quam diu**, abbreviated from the full form, tam diu quam diu = *so long as.*

8. CHAPTER 18. — **Pluribus**, *several.* Abl. absol.

10. **Solo**, *sc.* eo, *him alone.*

13. *Dumnorigem*, *that Dumnorix*, subject accus. of *esse*, depending on *reperit*, a word of *perceiving*.

Audacia, abl. of quality. B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

13. *Redempta habere*, *sc. illum*, *that he had bought up*. Refer to note on line 12, page 11.

17. *Illo licente* (from *liceor*), *he bidding* (= when he bid). *Contra* = *against him*.

18. *Suam . . . familiarem* = *his property*, estate.

18. *Facultatis*, *meaus*, resources.

20. *Alere*, *that he maintained*. Supply *se*.

22. *Largiter posse*, *sc. se* = *that he had great influence*.

23. *Matrem collocasse* = *that he had given his mother in marriage*: supply the supine, *nuptum*, expressed below.

25. *Sororem . . . matre*, *his sister on his mother's side*.

26. *Cupere*, *wished well*.

27. *Suo nomine*, *on his own account*: abl. of cause.

Page 14, line 1. *Sit* belongs equally to *deminuta* and *restitutus*.

3. *Imperio* = (*that*) *under the government*: abl. of cause.

5. *Quod* = *as* (as to the fact that), *proelium factum*, *an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought a few days before*.

Quod proelium, lit., what battle = *as to the battle which*.

6. *Diebus*. B. 223; H. 479; A. 414; G. 403.

Factum. Supply *esse*, which is very often omitted in the compound forms of the infinitive.

8. *Auxilio Caesari*. B. 191, 2. *b*; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

11. CHAPTER 19. — *Quibus*, *these*.

12. *Accederent*, *were added*: subjunct. of cause. B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

13. *Traduxisset*, *he had led*: subjunct. because the statement is made on another's authority.

14. *Dandos* (*esse*), *should be given*: pres. inf. of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

16. *Satis causae*, *sufficient (of) cause*: partitive gen.

17. *In eum animadverteret* = *should punish him*. "Note: That *animadvertere in aliquem*, by an ellipsis of *supplicio*, signifies *to punish any one*."

19. *Unum repugnabat* = *one consideration opposed itself*.

22. *Ne, that*, after verbs of fearing. B. 296, 2; H. 567, 1; A. 564; G. 550, 2.

24. *Conaretur, he should attempt*; subjunct. with an idea of purpose and anticipation. B. 292; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

26. *Principem, a leading man*.

27. *Cui, in whom*: dat. of advantage after the phrase *fidem habebat*.

Page 15, line 1. *Ipsa, Diviciaco*; abl. absol.

3. *Apud se, in his* (Cæsar's) *presence*.

4. *Causa cognita, his case having been investigated*.

7. CHAPTER 20. — *Ne, that . . . not*. Why not *ut non*? Because *statueret* is subjunct. of purpose.

Quid gravius, anything too severe.

8. *Ex . . . capere, feel more (of) pain on that account than himself*.

9. *Cum, although*; hence *posset*, subjunct. of concession.

10. *Gratia, on account of his popularity*.

Plurimum, sc. posset.

11. *Minimum posset, was by no means powerful*.

Per se, i.e. Diviciacum.

12. *Opibus, abl. with uteretur*.

13. *Suam* belongs to both nouns.

15. *A Caesare, on the part of Cæsar*.

16. (1) *Eum* = *talem*. (2) *Eum, i.e. Cæsar*.

17. *Non . . . factum (esse), it had not been done at his desire*.

18. *Futurum (esse), it would happen*.

20. *Cum, while*.

21. *Rogat (ut) faciat*. B. 295, 8; H. 565, 4; A. 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2.

22. *Tanti . . . esse, that his influence with him is so great*. *Tanti*, gen. of degree of value. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 380.

23. *Rei publicae iniuriam, the injury to the state*; *rei publicae*, obj. gen. limiting *iniuriam*.

Eius voluntati = *for the sake of his good will*.

25. Quae (*what*); hence reprehendat (*he censures, blames*), subjunct. of indir. question. B. 300, 1; H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

28. Praeterita, *the past*, lit., things past; a perf. part.

Fratri, *for (the sake of) his brother*.

29. Dumnorigi, *over Dumnorix*; dat. of disadvantage.

Agat, *he does*; subjunct. of indirect question.

Page 16, line 1. CHAPTER 21. — Certior factus = *having been informed*.

2. Hostis (*that the enemy*), subject accus. of consedissee.

Sub, *near*, at the base of.

Milia. B. 181; H. 417; A. 425; G. 335.

Passuum, partitive gen. governed by octo milia.

4. Qui . . . misit = misit (*milites*) ut ii cognoscerent, and hence the subjunct. in a relative clause of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

5. Facilem esse, *sc. ascensum*.

Legatum . . . praetore = *his lieutenant with praetorian power*.

7. Summum iugum, *the highest ridge*.

8. Quid . . . sit, *what his plan is*: consili, partitive gen. limiting quid.

9. Itinere, instrumental abl.

11. Rei, gen. limiting peritissimus.

Habebatur, *was considered*.

12. In, *sc. exercitu*.

14. CHAPTER 22. — Prima luce = *at daybreak, dawn*.

Summus mons, *the top of the mountain*. B. 241, 1; H. 498, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

15. Repeat cum before ipse.

16. Neque . . . aut . . . aut = *and . . . neither . . . nor*. Neque = ne + que, *and not*.

18. Equo admisso = *his horse at full speed*; lit., urged on.

19. Montem . . . cognovisse. Caesar gives the report of Considius in *oratio obliqua*.

20. Insignibus, *ornaments, decorations*.

22. Aciem instruit, *he draws up his army in battle array*. See note on line 13, page 11.

22. **Erat** . . . **praeceptum** = *he had been instructed* (enjoined); or, instruction (command) had been given him. The verb is used impersonally. Compare note on line 5, page 6.

26. **Nostros**, *our men*; *sc.* milites.

Multo die = *late in the day*; in contrast with **prima luce**.

27. **Et** . . . **et** . . . **et**, *both . . . and . . . and*.

Montem (*that the mountain*), subject accus. of **teneri**, *was held*.

29. **Vidisset** (*he had seen*), subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*. **Pro viso**, *as seen*.

Page 17, line 1. Order: **eo die** ¹*sequitur* **hostis intervallo** (*abl. of distance*) **quo** (*with which*) **consuerat** (= *consueverat*).

4. CHAPTER 23. — **Diei**. B. 201, 3, *a*; H. 446, 5; A. 359, *b*. **Supererat**, from **supersum**.

5. **Metiri**, supply *eum*, its subject accus.

7. **Milibus**, *abl. of deg. of diff.*; **amplius** does not affect the construction.

8. **Rei frumentariae**, *a supply of corn*. B. 187, III; H. 429; A. 370; G. 347.

Prospiciendum (*esse sibi*) = *he ought to provide for*. See note on line 5, page 6.

11. **Seu** . . . **sive** (line 14), *either . . . or*.

12. **Existimarent** (*they thought*), subjunct. because it represents the thought of the Helvetians. So **commisissent**, **confiderent**. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 540; G. 541.

Eo, *for this reason*: *abl. of cause*.

14. **Re**, *abl. of separation*, depending on **intercludi**.

15. **Posse**, *sc.* Romanos, *that they could*.

18. CHAPTER 24. — **Animum advertit** (= *animadvertit*), *he observes*, *lit.*, turns his attention to.

20. **Qui sustineret** = *ut is sustineret*. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

21. **Triplicem aciem**, *a triple line of battle* = his army in three lines: as was usual in Roman tactics.

23. **Proxime**, *lately, recently*.

26. **Eum**, *i.e.* locum.

Constiterant, *had taken their position*: from **consisto**.

Page 18, line 1. **Confertissima acie**, *in very dense array*.

2. **Phalange**, a *phalanx*: consisting of a dense mass of soldiers in a rectangular form, each of whom held his shield over his head, like the soldiers of the Roman **testudo**. See note on line 30, page 45.

Sub, *close to*.

4. CHAPTER 25. — **Suo**, *sc. equo remoto*, implied in **remotis equis**.

6. **Suos**, *his men*; *sc. milites*.

7. **Pilis**, *abl. absol.*

9. **Gallis . . . impedimento**, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting*. **Gallis impedimento**. B. 191, 2, a; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

10. **Pluribus**, *several*.

11. **Uno . . . colligatis**, *having been pierced by one blow of the javelins and (thus) fastened together*.

Cum, *because*.

12. **Evellere**, *sc. ferrum*.

13. **Multi**, being an emphatic word, precedes **ut** (*so that*), which usually stands first in its clause.

14. **Nudo**, *with unprotected*.

16. **Pedem referre** = *to retire, retreat*.

Mille, *acc. of extent of space*.

17. **Se recipere**, *to betake themselves*.

19. **Agmen . . . claudebant**, *closed the enemy's line of march*.

Novissimis praesidio, *a protection (defence) to the rear*. See references to line 9, above.

Novissimis, *sc. militibus* = *novissimo agmini*.

20. **Latere aperto** (*abl. absol.*), *on the unprotected flank* = on the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left side.

23. **Conversa . . . intulerunt**, *advanced their standards turned in two directions* = "faced about and advanced in two divisions."

24. **Acies**, *sc. acies signa intulit*.

25. **Tertia**, *sc. acies signa intulit*.

26. CHAPTER 26. — **Ancipiti proelio**, *in a double conflict*.

28. *Alteri . . . alteri*, the one party (the Helvetians), the other party (the Boii and Tulingi).

Page 19, line 2. *Proelio*, abl. of time when (*in this whole battle*).

Cum, although: hence the concessive subjunct. *pugnatum sit*. B. 309, 3; H. 598; A. 549; G. 587.

Hora septima = one o'clock. The Roman day, commencing at sunrise and ending at sunset, was divided into twelve hours.

3. *Aversum*, turned away = *put to flight*.

4. *Ad . . . noctem*, till late at night.

12. *Ierunt*, from *eo*.

Partem, acc. of duration of time.

16. *Lingonas*, Greek form of the accus.

Litteras, a letter.

17. *Iuvarent*, subjunct. of prohibition (command): in *oratio recta* (i.e. in Caesar's letter), imperative.

Neve. B. 282, 1, *d*; H. 561, 4; A. 450, N. 5; G. 444, 2.

18. *Qui si*, if they, *iuviscent*, should assist (them); in *oratio recta*, fut. perf. (*iuveritis*). B. 319, B, *a*; H. 644, 2.

Loco. *In* omitted. *In quo* (*habuisset*) *Helvetios*.

Se habiturum (*esse*), that he would consider (them), depends on *litteras . . . misit*.

22. CHAPTER 27. — *Qui* is subject of *paruerunt*.

30. *Ne*, lest, that.

Page 20, line 1. *Supplicio afficerentur* = they would be punished.

2. *Suam fugam* (subject accus. of *posse*), that their flight.

4. *Prima*, at the beginning of. B. 241, 1; H. 498, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

Egressi, masc. agreeing with *milia*, line 29, p. 19, in sense.

6. CHAPTER 28. — *Quod*, this. B. 251, 6; H. 510; A. 308, *f*; G. 610, R. 1.

Resciit = *rescivit*.

Order: *imperavit his per quorum* (*whose*) *finis ierant*, *uti conquirerent*, etc.

8. *Reductos*, sc. *eos*, them (when) brought back.

In . . . numero, i.e. they were put to death.

13. Quo, *with which* = ut eo; hence **tolerarent**, subjunct. of purpose.

14. **Facerent** = *they should give* (make up).

16. **Id . . . fecit**, *he did that chiefly for this reason*.

21. Order: concessit Haeduis petentibus, ut collocarent Boios in suis finibus, quod cogniti erant egregia virtute (*they had been ascertained* (to be) *of eminent valor*). The object of concessit is the object clause ut . . . collocarent.

Virtute, abl. of quality (description). B. 224; H. 473, 2; A. 415; G. 400.

24. **Atque . . . erant**, *to what they themselves were* (in).

26. CHAPTER 29. — **Tabulae**, lit., *tablets*, like folding slates; hence, *lists*, or *registers*.

27. **Litteris Graecis**, *in Greek letters*; not in the Greek language.

Confectae, *prepared*, made out.

28. **Ratio**, *an account*.

Qui, *what*, interrog. adj. pron.

29. **Exisset**, *had gone out*; subjunct. of indirect question.

Eorum qui possent has the force of "*of such as were able*;" hence *possent* is subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

Page 21, line 2. **Capitum**, *souls*.

5. **Ad**, *about*.

6. **Eorum**, governed by **censu**, *an enumeration*.

10. CHAPTER 30. — **Principes**, *the leading men*.

Gratulatum, *to congratulate* (him): supine.

11. **Intellegere . . . haberent** (line 20), *oratio obliqua*: in which all declarative sentences are expressed by the infin. with a subject accus., and dependent clauses take the subjunct.

12. **Helvetiorum . . . Romani**, *injuries of the Helvetians to the Roman people* (= inflicted by the H. on the R. people). **Helvetiorum**, subjective gen.; **populi**, objective gen.: both governed by **iniuriis**.

13. **Ex usu**, *to the advantage*.

15. **Eo consilio**, *with this design*; abl. of cause.

Rebus, abl. absol.

21. **Uti sibi liceret**, *that it might be allowed (to) them*.

In, *for*.

23. Ex, *with*.

25. Ne quis (indef. pron.), *that no one*.

Nisi, *sc. ii, those*.

26. Consilio, *agreement*.

Inter . . . sanxerunt, *they ratified (by an oath, iure iurando) to one another; the object of the verb is the object clause ne . . . enuntiaret*.

Page 22, line 1. CHAPTER 31. — **Secreto in occulto**, *in a secret place apart (from others)*. **Secreto**, without participation by others.

In occulto, *in a place of concealment*.

2. Agere, *to treat, act*.

3. Caesari = *Cæsar's*; dat. of reference. B. 188, I. N.; H. 525, 4, N.; A. 377; G. 350.

Non . . . laborare, *that they strove and labored no less for this*.

4. Id is governed by contendere, and refers to ne . . . impetrarent, *that those things might not be divulged, which they might say (not, had said, because dixissent = dixerimus in oratio recta), than that they might obtain, etc.*

9. Harum, *of these (factions)*: partitive gen. limiting alterius, *of one*.

11. Inter se, *with one another*.

12. Factum esse, *it came to pass, happened*.

15. Copias, *the abundance, resources*.

16. Traductos (esse), *had been brought over*. Esse, *sc. eos, they are*.

18. Clientis, *allies, vassals, of a more powerful people*.

Semel . . . iterum, *lit., once and again = again and again*.

19. Accepisse, *sc. se, with which the part. pulsos agrees; that having been defeated they had suffered, etc.*

20. Quibus . . . proeliis = *by these battles*.

21. Qui. Supply eos; *that they who*.

22. Hospitio. "The relation of hospes to his Roman friend was next in importance to that of cliens. The hospitality of the Romans was either hospitium privatum, or publicum." Plurimum potuissent, *had been the most powerful*.

27. **Quo minus essent**, lit., *that they would be the less*: translate, *to be*. The negative in **quo minus** is not to be translated, as it is already implied in **recusaturos** (*esse*). B. 295, 3; H. 568, 8; A. 558, *b*; G. 549.

28. **Unum**, *the only one*.

29. **Potuerit**, *could*: subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and was also subjunct. of characteristic in *oratio recta*, on account of **unum**. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 5; A. 535, *b*; G. 631, 1.

31. **Postulatum**, *to ask*. B. 340, 1; H. 633; A. 509; G. 435.

Page 23, line 1. **Peius**, *a worse thing*, subject accus. of **accidisse**, *had happened*.

4. **Esset**, *was*. *Oratio obliqua*.

5. **Sequanos**, subject accus. of **decedere**: translate, *the Sequanians to depart*.

6. **Harudum hominum**, *Harudians*.

7. **Quibus**, *for whom*, dat. of advantage.

8. **Sedes**, *abodes*, homes.

11. **Conferendum . . . Gallicum** (*agrum*), *was the Gallic land to be compared*.

12. **Hanc**, *this* = ours, the Gallic. H. 507, 2; A. 297, *a*; G. 305, and 4.

14. **Autem**, *moreover*, besides. **Ut semel**, when once = *as soon as*.

15. **Quod**, *which*; adj. pron. **Ad**, *near*.

16. **Nobilissimi cuiusque**, *of all the most illustrious*. B. 252, 5, *c*; H. 515, 2; A. 313, *b*; G. 318, 2.

17. **Et . . . edere**, *and that he put forth upon them all* (kinds of) *examples and tortures*, i.e. he made *examples* of his hostages by *torturing* them.

18. **Si qua**, *if any*. See B. 252, 1; H. 512, 1; A. 149, and *b*; G. 107, 1, R.

19. **Esse**, *sc. eum*, *that he is*.

22. **Quid auxili**, *some (of) help*.

23. **Omnibus . . . faciendum**, *the same thing must be done by all the Gauls*.

Gallis. B. 189, 1; H. 431; A. 374; G. 355.

24. **Ut . . . emigrent** defines **idem** and **quod**.

26. **Enuntiata sint**, *should be divulged*. The regular form

would be **enuntiata essent** (= **enuntiata erunt** in *oratio recta*), since an *historical* tense introduces the speech.

27. **Non** (se) **dubitare**, *that he did not doubt*.

28. **Sumat**, *would take* = *would inflict*; subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and would also be subjunct. in *oratio recta* in consequence of **quin**. B. 298; H. 595, 1; A. 558, a; G. 555, 2.

Caesarem . . . **posse**, *that Caesar . . . could*.

30. **Deterrere** has for object the object clause **ne** . . . **traducatur**. See note, line 27, page 22.

31. **Rhenum**: B. 179, 3; H. 413; A. 395; G. 331, R. 1.

32. **Posse**, *i.e.* **Caesarem**.

Page 24, line 1. CHAPTER 32. — **Habita**, *having been delivered*.

3. **Unos**, *alone*.

4. **Nihil**, *none*.

Rerum, partitive gen.

Facerent, *did*. Subordinate clause in ind. disc.

7. **Respondere**, **permanere**, historical infin. B. 335; H. 610; A. 463; G. 647.

8. **Neque** = *et non*, *and . . . not*.

10. Order: **fortunam Sequanorum esse** (*is*) **miseriorem gravioremque prae** (*in comparison with*) (**fortuna**) **reliquorum hoc** (*on this account*; abl. of cause).

11. **Soli**, *they alone*.

13. **Absentis**, *even when absent*.

15. **Tamen**, *notwithstanding*, *i.e.* their hard condition. Order: **vero omnes cruciatus essent perferendi Sequanis** (*by the Sequanians*; dat. of agent).

20. CHAPTER 33. — **Sibi curae**, *a care to him*. B. 191, 2, a; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

21. **Et** . . . **suo**, *both by his* (Caesar's) *services*. See chapters 35, 40, and 43.

22. **Iniuriis**, dative.

24. **Secundum**, *in accordance with*.

Quare, an interrog. word, making **putaret** subjunct. of indirect question.

Sibi. See references to **Sequanis**, above.

29. **Quod**, rel. pron. referring to the preceding clause.

Page 25, line 1. Tanto = *the great*.

2. Paulatim . . . consuescere, *moreover, for the Germans gradually to become accustomed*, depends on videbat, and is at the same time subject accus. of esse understood.

5. Periculosum, neuter accus. agreeing with the clause Germanos . . . venire.

Sibi temperaturos (esse), *would restrain themselves*, B. 187, II, a ; H. 426, 4, N. ; A. 367 ; G. 346, 2.

6. Quin exirent = *from going forth*. B. 298 ; H. 595 ; A. 558 ; G. 555.

7. Ut, *as*.

8. Fecissent, *had done* : subjunct. of Cæsar's past thought (principle of oratio obliqua).

10. Quibus . . . putabat, *he thought that he ought to oppose these things as early as possible*. With occurendum supply esse sibi, and see note on line 5, page 6.

Rebus. B. 187, III ; H. 429 ; A. 370 ; G. 347.

12. Spiritus, *airs*.

15. CHAPTER 34. — Qui postularent = *ut ii postularent* (subjunct. of purpose).

16. Medium utriusque, *central with respect to them both*. B. 204, and 1 ; H. 451, 2 ; A. 349, a ; G. 374.

17. Re publica, *the common welfare*.

18. Ipsi, dat. of the possessor.

19. Venturum fuisse, *would have come* : corresponding to the plup. subjunct. in the principal clause of a conditional sentence (apodösis) in oratio recta. B. 321, A, 2, a ; H. 647 ; A. 589, b, 2 ; G. 597, 4.

20. Quid . . . velit, *he wishes anything from him*. "Here we may also notice the expression velle aliquem aliquid, *to want a thing from a person*, e.g. quid me vis ?" B. 178, I, a ; H. 411 ; A. 396 ; G. 341, N. 2.

24. Videri (*that it seemed*) has for subject accus. the clauses quid . . . esset, which are qualified by mirum.

Quid Caesari negoti esset, lit., *what of business there was to Cæsar* = *what business Cæsar had*.

25. Caesari, dat. of the possessor.

26. Negoti, partitive gen.

Page 26, line 1. CHAPTER 35.—**Tanto . . . adfectus**, *having been treated with his own and the Roman people's very great kindness.*

2. **Cum**, *since*, because : hence **appellatus esset**, causal subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*.

Suo, Cæsar's.

3. **Hanc gratiam referret**, *he was making this requital.*
 “Referre is thus construed : **Gratiam alicui referre**, to repay a favor to any one. **Referre ad senatum**, to lay before the senate. **Referre aliquem**, to resemble any one. **Refert patris**, it concerns my father. **Refert mea**, it concerns me.”

5. **Dicendum (esse) sibi** = *that he ought to speak.* See note, line 5, page 6.

6. **Haec esse**, *that these are the things.*

7. **Quam**, *any* : indef. adj. pron. from *quis*.

10. **Eius** = *Ariovisti*.

11. **Iniuria**, *unjustly* ; an adverbial abl.

13. **Gratiam**, *good will*.

14. **Marco Messāla**. See note on line 8, page 2.

15. **Censuisset**, *had decreed*.

16. **Provinciam**. Provinces and the functions of various officers were assigned by lot. The lots or *sortes* were thrown into a narrow-necked urn (*situla, sitella, urna*), and drawn forth one at a time. Dict. Antiqq.

Quod posset, *as far as he could*. **Posset**, subjunct. in a relative clause implying restriction. B. 283, 5 ; H. 591, 3 ; A. 535, d ; G. 627, R. 1.

18. **Se** is repeated from line 14 on account of the long parenthesis.

20. CHAPTER 36.—**Jus esse**, etc. *Oratio obliqua*. Remember 1, declarative sentences are expressed by the inf. with a subject accus. ; 2, dependent sentences (*i.e.*, conditional, interrogative, temporal, and causal sentences) which, in their nature are *not* declarative, have their verbs in the subjunct.

23. **Ad**, *according to*.

28. **Essent**, belongs equally to **congressi**.

29. **Qui faceret**, *because he was making* = *cum* is *faceret*, hence the subjunct. of cause (*i.e.* *faceret* would be subjunct).

in *oratio recta* also). B. 283, 3, *a* ; H. 592 ; A. 535, *e* ; G. 633.

Page 27, line 2. **Eo**, *that* (condition, stipulation).

3. **Convenisset**, *had been agreed upon*.

4. **Fecissent**, *they should do*. This represents the fut. perf. of the direct disc.

Longe . . . **afuturum** (esse), *the name of brothers of the Roman people would be far away (= useless) from them* (eis, dat.).

5. **Quod**, *that* = as to the fact that; serving to introduce the subject of remark. B. 299, 2; H. 588, II, 3, N.; A. 572, *a*; G. 525, 2.

7. **Congrederetur**, *he might meet him* (in battle). In *oratio recta*, imperative (congrederere). B. 316; H. 642; A. 588; G. 652.

8. **Intellecturum**, *sc. eum esse, that he would learn*.

Quid, *what*; accus. of specification.

10. **Possent** = *could do*.

13. CHAPTER 37. — **Haedui**, *sc. veniebant*.

Questum, *to complain*; supine.

16. **Treveri**, *sc. veniebant questum*.

19. **Quibus** = *by these*.

Maturandum (esse) **sibi** = *that he ought to make haste*.

20. **Ne**, *lest*.

25. CHAPTER 38. — **Tridui**, gen. of measure = trium dierum. **Viam**. B. 176, 4, *a*; H. 409; A. 390; G. 333, 2.

Page 28, line 1. **Sibi praecavendum** (esse), *that he ought to take precaution*; or, *that precaution should be taken by him*.

5. **Ducendum**, *protracting*.

6. **Ut**, *as if*.

8. **Pedum sexcentorum**, *than six hundred feet*; gen. of measure; a subdivision of the gen. of quality. **Amplius** does not influence the construction. B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, R. 4.

9. **Radices** . . . **contingant**, *the banks of the river on each side touch the base (roots) of the mountain*.

10. **Ripae**, nom., subject of *contingant*, of which **radices** is the object.

11. **Hunc** (*montem*) is governed by **circum** in composition.

16. CHAPTER 39.—**Causa**, *for the sake*: abl. of cause.

18. **Germanos**, *that the Germans*, subject accus. of **esse**, *were*.

20. **Congressos**, *having met*.

21. **Aciem**, *the look*.

23. **Non mediocriter**, *in no ordinary manner*.

24. **Hic**, *sc. timor*.

Praefectis, *the prefects*. Each consul named twelve superior officers (for the infantry and cavalry of the Roman allies), who were termed **Praefecti Sociorum**, and corresponded to the legionary tribunes. Dict. Antiqq.

26. **Usum**, *experience*.

27. **Quorum . . . petebat**, *one of whom having assigned one reason, another another (reason), which he said was a necessary one for departing, begged*. The form **alius alia**, etc., is quite idiomatic. The literal meaning is, "another of whom, another reason being assigned (by him)." B. 253, 2; H. 516, 1; A. 315, c; G. 221, R. 1.

31. **Voltum fingere**, *to feign a countenance* = to hide their fear by feigning calmness and composure.

Page 29, line 3. **Castris**. Prep. *in* omitted; a very common omission with nouns qualified by **totus**.

6. **Quique** = *et qui*, *and those who*.

7. Order: (ii) *ex his qui volebant se existimari*.

10. **Aut . . . timere**, *or that they feared for the supply of corn, that it might not be brought up conveniently enough*.

Ut = *that . . . not*, after words denoting fear. B. 296, 2; H. 567, 1; A. 564; G. 550, 2.

12. **Signa ferri**, *the standards to be advanced* = the army to move.

13. Order: *milites non fore audientis (obedient) dicto nec laturos (esse) signa propter timorem*.

16. CHAPTER 40.—**Omnium ordinum**, *of all ranks*. **Ordo** is used as equivalent to **centuria**, and the first centuries in a legion are sometimes called **primi ordines** (B. G. v. 28, 44). Even the centurions of the first centuries are occasionally called *primi ordines* (B. G. v. 30; vi. 7).

18. **Sibi quaerendum** (esse) = *they ought to inquire*.

20. **Se consule** = *in his consulship*.

22. **Sibi . . . persuaderi** = *that he at least was persuaded*.

In translating such impersonal forms, the best method is to render the indirect object as the subject. B. 187, II, *b*; H. 426, 3; A. 372; G. 217.

24. **Gratiam**, *good will*, friendship.

25. **Quod si**, *but if*.

26. **Tandem**, *in the world*, gives force and spirit to a question.

27. **Sua**, *their own*.

28. **Periculum**, *that a trial*, **factum** (esse), *had been made*.

Page 30, line 2. **Factum**, *sc. esse periculum*.

Servili tumultu, *in the insurrection of the slaves*; conducted by Spartacus, many of whose gladiators were Germans.

3. **Quos**. The antecedent is implied in **servile** = *servorum*.

Aliquid, *somewhat*, adverbial accus. H. 416, 2; A. 397, *a*; G. 338.

5. **Quantum boni** (partitive gen.), *how much (of good)*.

9. **Congressi** = *having fought*.

10. **Illorum**, *of the former*.

12. **Quos**, *any*: indef. pron. from *quis*.

13. Order: *hos (that these)*, *si quaererent*, *posse reperire Ariovistum (that A.)*, *Gallis defatigatis diuturnitate belli*, *cum*, etc.

15. **Neque . . . fecisset**, *and had made no show of himself (for the purpose of fighting)*.

16. Order: *subito adortum (having attacked) (eos) iam desperantis*, etc.

17. **Ratione**, *lit.*, by system, method = *by stratagem*.

18. **Cui rationi**, etc. It will be better here to transfer the noun (*ratione*) to the antecedent clause, and translate the latter first, thus: *that not even himself hoped that our armies could be entrapped by that stratagem, for which there had been opportunity, etc.*

21. **Qui**, *sc. eos*, *that those who*.

In . . . simulationem, *to a pretence about a supply of corn*.

22. **Conferrent**, *ascribed*, attributed.

28. *Quod*, etc., as to the fact that the soldiers are said not to intend to be obedient to the word (of command).

29. *Nihil* = *non*, but stronger.

Scire, *sc. se*.

Quibuscumque, that to whomsoever; dat. limiting *dicto audiens*.

31. *Male* . . . *gesta*, on account of their affairs having been badly managed; abl. absol. of cause.

32. *Esse convictam*, had been proved (on them).

Suam, that his own, is rendered emphatic by its position in the sentence and by being placed before its noun.

Innocentiam, integrity, i.e. in respect to any charge of peculation or plunder.

Page 31, line 3. *Longiorem*, a more distant.

Conlaturus fuisset, he had intended to defer: act. periphrastic form to express intention.

4. *Repraesentaturum* (*esse*), would do immediately.

De, in; i.e. after the fourth watch had begun.

5. *Quam primum*, as soon as possible.

9. *Praetoriam cohortem*, a praetorian cohort; a select troop which attended the person of the general or (as he was primitively called) *praetor* of the Roman army. Dict. Antiqq.

14. CHAPTER 41.—*Innata est*, arose, sprung up (from *innascor*).

15. *Ei* . . . *egit* = thanked him. An idiomatic phrase.

18. *Ordinum*, ranks. See note on line 16, page 29.

19. *Egerunt*, acted, strove.

Caesari. B. 187, II, a; H. 426, 1, N. 2; A. 368, 2.

21. *Summa*, the management.

Suum esse, to be theirs = belonged to them.

Imperatoris, possessive predicate gen. B. 198, 3; H. 439, 447; A. 343, c; G. 366.

23. *Ei*, in him: dat. governed by *fidem habebat* = confidebat.

Ex aliis = of (all) others.

24. *Milium*, *sc. passuum*, miles; limiting *circuitu*, by a circuit.

Amplius. See note, line 8, page 28.

25. *Locis*, *sc. in*.

26. **Cum**, *as*, because; hence **intermitteret**, subjunct. of cause.

28. **A nostris** (*sc. copiis*), *from ours*. B. 223; II. 491, III, 3; A. 414; G. 403.

Page 32, line 2. CHAPTER 42. — **Quod**, etc., the message of Ariovistus in *oratio obliqua*.

Id licere = *that that might*; **per se** = *so far as he was concerned*.

3. **Se** in **seque** is subject accus. of **posse**.

6. **Petenti**, *sc. ei*.

9. **Fore uti desisteret**, lit., it would happen that he would desist = *that he would desist*; a periphrase for the fut. infin. B. 270, 3; H. 571, 1; 619, 2; A. 569, *a*; G. 248.

Pertinacia, abl. of separation.

11. **Utro citroque**, thither and hither = *from the one side to the other*.

12. **Quem**, *any*.

14. **Veniret**. In *oratio recta*, **uterque veniat**, *let both come*.

15. **Ratione**, *manner, way*.

18. **Omnibus . . . detractis**, *all the horses having been taken from the Gallic horsemen*.

Equis, abl. absol.; **equitibus**, a dat. rendered *from*. B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 345, R. 1.

19. **Eo** = **iis** = *on them*.

21. **Quid . . . facto** = *any need of action*. **Facto**, perf. part. governed by **opus**. B. 218, 2, *c*; H. 477, III; A. 411, *a*; G. 406.

26. **Ad . . . rescribere**, *is transferring it to the cavalry*, a more honorable service. The joke consists in the fact that this phrase also means "to enroll among the knights" or *equites*, who were an aristocratic class in Rome.

28. CHAPTER 43. — **Satis**, *quite*.

Page 33, line 4. **Constiterunt**, *took their stand*.

5. **Ex equis**, *from horses* = *on horseback*.

6. **Denos**, *ten apiece*. Notice the force of the distributive.

7. **Ventum est** (*ab illis*) = *they came*.

Initio, abl. of time.

10. **Missa**, *sc. essent*.

Quam rem, *that this thing*.

11. Illum, *that he*, subject accus. of consecutum (esse).

14. Quam, *how, what*.

15. Ipsis, *for themselves*, the Romans.

17. In eos = in regard to them, *in their favor*.

Ut, *how*: hence tenuissent, subjunct. of indirect question (in oratio obliqua).

21. Sui . . . deperdere, *should lose nothing of their own*.

Sui, partitive gen. from suus.

23. Eis, *from them*: dat.

27. At, *at least*, yet.

Quos amplius, *any more*.

29. CHAPTER 44. — Pauca, lit., a few things = *briefly*.

Page 34, line 4. Ipsis = *Gallis*, implied in Gallia.

5. Iure, *according to the law* (right).

7. Sibi, *on him*.

11. Paratum, *ready*: an adj.

Uti, *to enjoy*.

14. Ornamento, *a distinction*.

20. Quod, *as to the fact that*.

22. Nisi, *without*.

24. Prius quam, *before*.

27. Quid . . . vellet, *what did he mean (want)?*

Sibi, ethical dat. B. 188, 2, *b*; H. 432; A. 380; G. 351.

28. Hanc Galliam, this Gaul = *this part of Gaul*.

29. Ut . . . sic, *as . . . so*.

Concedi non oporteret, *it would be proper (right) that no concession should be made*.

30. Quod interpellaremus, *because we were interrupting*; quod here = *on the ground that*, hence the subjunct. of cause (which was required in oratio recta also). B. 286, 1; H. 588, 11; A. 540, 2; G. 541.

32. Quod. See references, line 5, page 27.

Page 35, line 1. Rerum, gen. limiting imperitum. B. 204, 1; H. 451, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374.

2. Allobrogum, *with the Allobrogians*.

6. Debere se, *that he ought*.

Caesarem, *that Caesar*, subject accus. of habere, *has (it)*.

8. **Qui nisi** = *unless he*.

10. **Interfecerit**, *he should kill*: perf. subj. In *oratio recta*, fut. perf. ind.

11. Order: **sese** (*that he*) **esse facturum gratum** (*a thing pleasing*) **multis**, etc.

13. **Compertum habere** = *had learned*. B. 337, 7; II. 431, 3; A. 497, *b*; G. 238.

14. **Quod si**, *but if*.

Discessisset, *he should depart*; in *oratio recta*, fut. perf. ind.

19. CHAPTER 45. — **In . . . sententiam**, *to this purport*.

20. **Negotio**, *from the business*; abl. of separation, depending on **de** in composition.

21. **Pati**, *allowed*.

23. **Esse Ariovisti**, *belonged to Ariovistus*. B. 198, 3; H. 447; A. 343, *b*; G. 366.

Bello . . . Arvernos, depends on **dicta sunt**.

25. **Quibus**, *whom*; not, to whom, because *had forgiven* (**ignovisset**) is transitive in English.

Neque, *and . . . not*.

27. **Antiquissimum . . . tempus**, *all the most ancient time* = the greatest antiquity. B. 252, 5, *c*; H. 515, 2; A. 313, *b*; G. 318, 2.

30. **Quam . . . voluisset**, *which (though) conquered in war, they (the senate) had wished should enjoy its own laws*. **Quam** is subj. accus. of **uti**.

Page 36, line 1. CHAPTER 46. — **Nuntiatum est** = *word is brought*: the subject (**nuntius**) being implied in the (impersonal) verb.

2. **Tumulum**, governed by **propius**. "*Propius* and *proxime*, from *prope*, are also used as prepositions with the accusative." B. 141, 3; H. 420, 5; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

5. **Quod**, *any*: adj. pron. from **qui**.

Suis (*sc. militibus*), *his men*.

8. **Committendum** (*esse*), *that it should be allowed*. The inf. without a subject *i.e.* impersonally.

9. **Per fidem**, *through good faith* in *Cæsar's intentions*.

10. **Elatum est** (*it was carried out*) = *it was reported*.

11. **Omni . . . interdixisset**, *had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul*.

Gallia, abl. of separation; **Romanis**, dat. governed by the compound **interdixissent** (subjunct. of indirect question).

13. **Ut**, *how*; introducing an indirect question.

18. CHAPTER 47.—**Coeptae essent**, *had begun* (subj. in *oratio obliqua*). Why not *coeepissent*? B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; A. 205, a; G. 423, N. 3.

Neque = *ne* + *que*, *and . . . not*.

19. **Constitueret**, *he would appoint*: instead of infin. with accus. B. 296, 1; H. 565; A. 563, b; G. 546.

20. **Minus** = *non*, *not*.

21. **Eo**, *for this reason*: abl. of cause.

23. **Quin conicerent** = *from throwing*.

26. **C.** = *Caius*, the name proper to the individual; **Valerium**, *Valerius*, the name of his *gens* or clan; **Procillum**, *Procillus*, the name of his family (the change from **Caburus** to **Procillus** being probably the result of adoption into a Roman family).

27. **Humanitate**, *refinement*.

Page 37, line 1. **Civitate**, *with citizenship*.

3. **Multā**, *much*, agreeing with **quā**.

Longinquā, *from long*.

4. **In eo**, *in his case*.

6. **Utebatur**, *was wont* (used) *to enjoy*. Notice the force of the imperf.

7. **Quos** = *them*.

9. **Quid . . . venirent** (*were they coming*)? In *oratio recta* (i.e. A. said), "**Quid ad me venit**?" B. 315, 1; H. 642; A. 586; G. 651.

10. **An**, *sc. venirent*, *were they coming*? B. 162, 4, a; H. 380, 3; A. 335, a; G. 457, 1.

Conantīs, *sc. eos*.

16. CHAPTER 48.—**Consilio**, *design*, purpose: abl. of cause.

Frumento, *from corn*: abl. of separation.

Qui agrees with the nearest antecedent.

22. **Castris**. *In* omitted.

23. **Quo**, *in which*: abl. of means.

24. **Numero**, *in number*: abl. of specification.

26. *Singuli singulos*, *each one, one*: *singuli* agrees with *ii* understood, and *singulos* with *quos*. Notice the force of the distributives.

27. *Versabantur* = *they acted*.

28. *Qui*, *any one*: indef. pron.

29. *Si . . . recipiendum*, *if an advance was to be made farther in any direction (anywhere), or a retreat was to be made rather hastily*.

Page 38, line 6, CHAPTER 49.—*Castris*, *for the camp*: dat. *Acie triplici*. See note, line 21, page 17.

8. *In armis*, *under arms*.

11. *Expedita*, *unencumbered*, carrying only their arms.

13. *Nihilo secius* = *nevertheless*: lit., differently in nothing, *nihilo* being abl. of degree of difference.

18. CHAPTER 50.—*Instituto suo*, *according to his plan*.

19. *Paulum*, accus. of extent of space.

20. *Potestatem fecit*, *he afforded an opportunity*.

23. *Quae* = *ut ea*, *that it*, and hence *oppugnaret*, subjunct. of purpose. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.

26. *Et inlatis*, *having been both inflicted*.

Page 39, line 2. *Esset*, *was*, the subjunct. refers the statement to *captivis*. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, 3; G. 541.

3. *Matres familiae*, *the mothers of family; the matrons*.

4. *Utrum . . . necne*. B. 300, 4, *a*; H. 650; A. 335; G. 459.

5. *Eas*, *that they*: subj. accus. of *dicere*, *spoke*.

Non . . . fas, *that it was not the will of heaven*: *fas*, *right*, in relation to divine law.

7. CHAPTER 51.—*Praesidio*, *as a defense* (protection), dat. of purpose; *castris*, dat. of advantage. B. 191, 2; H. 433; A. 382; G. 356.

8. *Alarios*, *the auxiliaries*, which were placed on the wings (*alae*) of the legions; hence the name.

10. *Minus valebat*, *he was less strong*.

Pro, *in proportion to*.

11. *Ad speciem*, *for show* (effect).

12. *Acie*, of the Roman legions.

14. *Generatim*, *by nations or tribes*.

17. Ne qua, *that no*.

18. Eo, *there* = in redis et carris.

19. Passis manibus, *with outstretched hands*.

Passis, perf. part. from pando.

21. CHAPTER 52. — Caesar . . . praefecit, *Cæsar appointed over each legion a lieutenant and a quæstor (i.e. one quæstor in all)*.

23. Cornu, *wing*, of his own army: hence eam partem refers to the enemy's left wing.

26. Itá-que = et ita, *and so*.

28. Reiectis, *being thrown aside*.

Page 40, line 3. Phalanga, Greek accus. sing. B. 47, 1; H. 109, 3; A. 81, 2; G. 66, 3.

Insilirent in, *leaped against*; subjunct. of characteristic after the indefinite expression reperti sunt milites. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535, a, and N. 1; G. 631, 2.

4. Manibus, *with their hands*.

Desuper, *from above, i.e. over the top of the enemy's shields*, to grasp which was the object of the leap.

9. Expeditior, *more disengaged*.

Inter . . . versabantur, *were engaged in the line of battle*.

10. Laborantibus (dat.), *hard pressed*.

12. CHAPTER 53. — Prius quam, *before*: quam being here, as elsewhere after the comparative, a conjunction.

14. Viribus confisi, *relying on (i.e. on account of) their strength*. Viribus, abl. of cause.

19. Sueva natione, *a Suevian by nation*. B. 226; H. 480; A. 418; G. 397.

20. Norica, *sc. natione*.

21. Duxerat, *sc. in matrimonium* = *he had married*.

22. Altera . . . altera, *the one . . . the other*.

23. Est belongs equally to occisa and capta.

24. Trinis = *threefold, three*. B. 81, 4, b; H. 164, 3; A. 137, b; G. 97, R. 3.

In ipsum Caesarem incidit, *fell in with Cæsar himself*.

25. Quae res, *this circumstance*.

30. De tanta, *from so great*.

Quicquam, *aught, anything*.

Page 41, line 2. **Consultum** (esse), *sc. ab eis* = *that they had consulted*; or, *that a consultation had been held*: impersonally.

8. CHAPTER 54. — **Rhenum**. **Proximus** is often followed by the accus., but **ad** may be supplied. See B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1.

10. **Duobus**, *i.e.* the Helvetian and the German.

11. **Paulo**, *a little*, *lit.*, by a little: abl. of deg. of diff. B. 223; H. 479, 1; A. 414; G. 403.

13. **Ad . . . agendos**, *to hold the assizes, i.e.* the district courts, to adjust lawsuits, and all matters pertaining to the civil jurisdiction of the country.

BOOK II.

Events of the year 57 B.C. Consuls, P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther and Q. Cæcilius Metellus Nepos. I. Conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians. II. Defeat of the Nervians. III. Expedition of Publius Crassus into the maritime states, and their submission.

Page 42, line 1. CHAPTER I. — **Ita uti**, *just as*.

3. **Omnīs Belgas**, *that all the Belgians*. **Belgas**, subject accus. of **coniurare** and **dare**, depending on the preceding clause.

4. **Quam esse**, *which . . . is*.

5. **Inter se** = *to one another*.

7. **Vererentur**, *they feared*: subjunct. to assign a reason on another's authority. B. 286, 1; H. 588, II; A. 592, and 3; G. 541.

9. **Partim qui . . . partim qui** (line 12), *some of whom . . . others of whom*.

10. **Versari**, *should remain, or, to remain*.

11. **Molestē ferebant**, *they bore (it) grievously* = *they took it ill*.

13. **Ab non nullis**, *sc. sollicitarentur (they were incited)*.

14. **Conducendos**, *hiring*.

15. **Regna**, *royal power*.

16. **Imperio nostro** = *under our government*: abl. absolute; the idea is, "the government being ours."

18. CHAPTER 2. — *Inita aestate*, lit., the summer being entered upon = *at the beginning of summer*: abl. absol. to express the *time*.

19. *Qui deduceret* = *to lead (them) down* = *ut* is *deduceret*, and hence the subjunct. of *purpose*.

20. *Cum primum* (when first) = *as soon as*.

Pabuli, of *food*.

Page 43, line 1. *Dat negotium*, *he assigns the business*, which is defined in the clause *uti . . . faciant*.

4. *Constanter*, *uniformly, consistently*.

5. *Manus cogi*, *that bands (forces) were being collected*.

6. *Dubitandum* (*esse sibi*) = *that he ought to hesitate*.

10. CHAPTER 3. — *De improvise*, *unexpectedly*.

Celerius . . . opinione, lit., sooner than every expectation = *than one would think*. B. 217, 4; H. 471, 8; A. 406, a; G. 398, N. 1.

11. *Proximi . . . sunt*, *are the nearest of the Belgians to* (Celtic) *Gaul*.

Ex Belgis = *Belgarum*. B. 201, 1, a; H. 444; A. 346, 4, c; G. 372, R. 2.

13. *Qui dicerent* = *ut ii dicerent*, *who were to say* (or simply, *to say*).

Se is the object of *permittere*: its subject accus. *se* is understood.

Se . . . omnia, *themselves and all their property*.

16. *Coniurasse* = *coniuravisse*, *sc. se*, *had they conspired*.

17. *Oppidis*, *into their towns*; instrumental abl. B. 218, 7; H. 476; A. 409; G. 401, and 389, end.

18. *Recipere*, *sc. Romanos*.

20. *Incolant*, *dwell*: subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*.

21. Order: *ut potuerint deterrere ne quidem Suessiones, suos fratres*, etc.

23. *Unum*, *sc. et*.

25. *Quin consentirent* = *from conspiring*. B. 295, 3, a; H. 595, 2; A. 558; G. 555.

26. CHAPTER 4. — *Quae*, *what*: interrog. adj. pron. from *quis*: hence *essent*, *were*; indirect question.

27. *Quid possent* = *how powerful they were*.

30. Gallos is the object of *expulisse*.

Solosque esse, and that they were the only (people).

Page 44, line 3. *Prohibuerint*, *prevented*; subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*, and was also subjunct. of characteristic in *oratio recta*. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 5; A. 535, *b*.

Fieri, *it came to pass*; impersonally.

4. *Memoria*, *in consequence of the recollection*; abl. of cause: in line 1 it is abl. of *time when*.

5. *Re militari*, *the art of war*.

6. *Habere explorata* = *had ascertained*.

7. *Propinquitatibus*, *by blood relationships*; *adfinitatibus*, *by marriage relationships*.

9. *Plurimum valere*, *were the most powerful*.

12. *Pollicitos* (*esse*).

14. *Suos*, *i.e.* of the Remi.

16. *Diviciacum*, a different person from *Diviciacus* the *Hæduan*.

17. *Cum . . . tum*, *both . . . and*. B. 290, 2; H. 657, 4, N. 1; A. 323, *g*; G. 588.

19. *Summam*, *the management* (conduct).

22. *Nervios*, *sc.* *polliceri*.

Maxime, *most*, with *feri* forms a superlative.

Ipsos, *themselves*, *i.e.* the Belgians generally.

28. *Arbitrari*, *sc.* *se*, *they* (the Remi) *supposed*.

29. CHAPTER 5. — *Liberaliter prosecutus* = *having treated them kindly*; lit., having followed up (their services) kindly in a speech.

Page 45, line 2. — *Ad diem*, *to the day*, *i.e.* on the very day appointed.

3. *Quanto opere* = *quantopere*, *how much*.

4. *Reipublicae*. B. 211, 1; H. 449, 1, 2; A. 355; G. 381. *Intersit*, *it concerns*.

5. *Ne . . . sit* (*sibi*) = *that he might not have to contend*.

10. *Neque* = *et non*. Order: *neque cognovit* (*and learned*) *ab his exploratoribus*, *quos miserat*, *et ab Remis* (*eas*) *iam longe abesse* (*that they were now not far distant*).

15. Order: *et reddebat tuta ab hostibus* (*ea loca*) *quae erant post eum*.

16. Order: *et efficiebat (brought it about) ut commeatus possent portari ad eum sine periculo ab Remis.* The strong emphasis given to **commeatus** places it at the beginning of the sentence, and displaces the conj. **ut**.

19. In . . . **parte**, *on the other side.*

20. There were ten cohorts in a legion: the number of men in a legion varied at different times from three thousand to six thousand.

21. **Vallo**, *with a palisaded rampart*, the construction of which was as follows: When the Romans were about to encamp, (1) they dug a trench all round the camp; (2) the earth thrown from the trench formed the rampart or **agger**; (3) on the top of the agger, at its outer edge, stakes (**valli**) were firmly set, thus completing the **vallum**.

Pedum duodecim, gen. of quality.

Duodeviginti pedum, *i.e.* in latitudinem.

24. CHAPTER 6. — **Ex itinere**, *on the march.*

26. Order: *oppugnatio Gallorum eadem atque (as) Belgarum est haec (this = the following).*

28. **Moenibus.** B. 187, 3; H. 429, 2; A. 370; G. 348.

29. **Iaci . . . sunt**, *have begun to be thrown.* B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; A. 205, *a*; G. 423, 3.

Defensoribus, abl. of separation.

30. **Testudine**, *a testudo* (tortoise), here, a body of soldiers arranged in a compact mass, each holding his shield over his head, and the shields of the entire body fitting so closely together as to form a protection against stones, arrows, darts, etc. Also, a military machine moving upon wheels and roofed over, used in besieging cities, under which the soldiers worked in undermining the walls, plying the battering-ram, etc. (as in Book V. 42, 43). Dict. Antiqq.

Portas, *sc.* ad.

Page 46, line 4. **Nobilitate**, abl. of quality.

10. CHAPTER 7. — **Cretas**, Greek acc. pl.

13. **Accessit** = *was added.*

Hostibus, *from the enemy*; dat. of disadvantage.

14. **Potiundi**, the older form of the gerundive.

17. **Copiis**, abl. of accompaniment: supply **cum**, which

Cæsar sometimes uses and sometimes omits. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, and *a*; G. 392, R. 1.

A minus, *at the distance of less than*: **minus** does not influence the construction. "If the place from which the distance is reckoned is not specified, the prep. **ab** often stands only before the measure."

19. **Amplius**, *more than*; accus. of extent of space.

20. **Milibus**, abl. after the comparative **amplius**.

22. CHAPTER 8. — **Opinionem**, *reputation* (for).

Proelio, *from battle*: abl. of separation.

"**Supersedere** takes the abl. because its sense is equivalent to *abstinere*."

25. **Loco pro**, *the place in front of*: **loco**, abl. absolute expressing cause.

Page 47, line 1. **Tantum . . . poterat**, *extended in breadth as great a space in front (of the camp) as an army drawn up could occupy*.

Adversus, an adj. agreeing with **collis**. Supply loci after **tantum** and omit it after **quantum**.

3. **Atque . . . habebat**, *and (the hill) had slopes* (lit., depressions of the side) *on each side*.

Et . . . redibat, *and sloping gently in front, returned gradually to the plain*.

6. **Extremas fossas**, *the ends of the trenches*.

7. **Tormenta**, *the hurling engines*, by which large stones, darts, arrows, etc., were hurled against the enemy. The exact construction of them is unknown.

11. **Quo**, *of anything*.

14. **Eductas instruxerunt** = *eduxerunt et instruxerunt*.

16. CHAPTER 9. — **Si**, *if* = to see if (whether).

20. **Contendebatur**, impersonally = *a contest was carried on*.

21. **Neutri**, *neither side*.

22. **Secundiore . . . nostris** (*militibus*), *the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable to our men*; **proelio**, abl. absol. with **secundiore**.

24. **Quod**, subject accus. of **esse**, depending on the impersonal verb **demonstratum est**.

26. **Consilio**, *design*: abl. of cause (motive).

28. Minus = non, *not*.

29. Popularentur. Repeat the *ut*, previously expressed.

30. Commeatu, abl. of separation.

Page 48, line 2. CHAPTER 10. — Armaturae, gen. of quality.

10. Spem . . . fefellisse, *that hope had deceived them* : fefellisse, from fallo.

11. Neque = et non, *and* . . . *not* ; *and saw that our men did not advance, etc.*

14. Quorum, etc. Translate the antecedent clause (*ad* . . . *convenirent*) first.

16. Convenirent, *sc. ut*.

17. Domesticis, (which they had) *at home*.

21. Finibus, *the territories* ; dat. gov. by the compound *adpropinquare*.

His persuaderi non poterat = *these (latter) could not be persuaded*. A strictly literal translation of such constructions is impossible, because we cannot say "it could not be persuaded to them."

22. Neque ferrent, *and not bring*.

25. CHAPTER 11. — Neque (certo) imperio, *and under no definite command*.

Cum, *because, since*.

26. Fecerunt (*they effected*) = they acted in such a manner.

27. Order : hac re statim cognita per speculatores, Caesar veritus insidias continuit exercitum equitatumque castris, quod nondum, etc.

Page 49, line 3. Novissimum agmen, *the rear*.

6. Novissimos (*milites*) = novissimum agmen.

8. Ab . . . agmine, *at the end of the line of march*, nearest the pursuing Romans.

Ventum erat (ab nostris) = *they had come*, because we cannot say "it had been come."

9. Consisterent, *they made a stand* ; subjunct. after cum in narration.

10. Priores, *sc. et*, the former ones = *those in advance*.

15. Quantum . . . spatium, *as there was space of the day* = as the remainder of the day permitted.

Occasum. Sub with the accus. in expressions of time means *towards*.

18. CHAPTER 12.—**Diei.** B. 201, 3, *a*; H. 446, 5; A. 359, *b*.

19. **Reciperent**, *should recover*. B. 292, 1, *b*; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

24. **Paucis defendentibus**, abl. absol., with the force of a concessive clause, *though few defended it*. B. 227, 2, *c*; H. 489, 1; A. 420, 3.

25. **Vineas agere**, *to advance the sheds*. The **vinea** was a shed-like structure, sixteen feet long and seven broad, resting on posts eight feet high. It was constructed of light materials so as to be easily moved, and was covered on the top and sides with raw hides to protect it against fire. Under cover of such a machine, the Roman soldiers undermined the walls of towns or plied the battering-ram (*aries*).

Quaeque = et (ea) que.

28. **Aggere iacto**, *a mound having been thrown up*. The **agger** was a mound of earth or other materials, raised as near as possible to a besieged town, so as to form an elevated position from which, by means of the engines of war, stones, darts, etc., might be hurled into the town. It was sometimes flanked with towers (hence **turribus constitutis**), and surmounted by parapets. These contrivances of ancient warfare served the same purposes as the modern heavy artillery. See also note on line 25, page 77.

Page 50, line 5. CHAPTER 13.—**In deditionem**, *on surrender*.

6. **Qui cum** = *when they*.

9. **Maiores natu** = *the older men*, lit., *greater in respect to birth*.

14. **Passis**, *with outstretched*, from *pando*.

18. CHAPTER 14.—**Facit verba** = *speaks*.

Bellovacos, etc. The speech of Diviciacus is given in *oratio obliqua*.

19. **Impulsos**, *that they having been impelled*: a perf. part. agreeing with *eos* understood, which is subject accus. of **defecisse** and **intulisse**.

20. *Dicerent, said*: subjunct. because the speech is in *oratio obliqua*.

22. *Perferre, were suffering*.

Et . . . et (had both . . . and).

23. *Qui*. Supply *eos*, which is subject accus. of *profugisse*.

Principes, the authors.

27. *In eos, towards them = in their favor*.

Quod . . . fecerit, if he should do that: *fecerit*, perf. subj.; in *oratio recta*, fut. perf. ind. B. 319, *a*; H. 644, 2; A. 484, *c*; G. 656.

Page 51, line 1. *Si qua bella = whatever wars*; lit., if any.

3. CHAPTER 15. — *Honoris causā, out of respect (to)*.

4. *Recepturum (esse)*.

5. *Magna auctoritate, of great authority (influence)*: abl. of quality.

12. *Nullum . . . accepturos (esse), line 19, oratio obliqua*.

Nihil (eos) pati, that they suffered no.

14. *Remitti, is relaxed*.

16. *Virtutis, gen. of quality*.

Qui dedidissent, because they had surrendered; a relative clause assigning a reason; the verb would therefore be subjunct. in *oratio recta*. B. 283, 3; H. 592; A. 535, *e*; G. 633.

22. CHAPTER 16. — *Amplius, more than*: although a comparative without *quam*, it does not influence the construction, i.e. *milia* is accus. of *extent of space*. B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, R. 4.

Page 52, line 4. CHAPTER 17. — *Qui deligant = ut ii deligant*, hence the subjunct. of purpose.

Cum, as, since.

5. *Ex . . . Belgis, of . . . the Belgians*. B. 201, 1, *a*; H. 444; A. 346, *c*; G. 372, R. 2.

6. *Una, along with him*.

7. *Eorum . . . perspecta = having clearly seen the manner of the marching of our army during (lit., of) those days*: *die-rum* and *exercitus* are both governed by *itineris*.

9. *Inter . . . legiones = between every two legions*.

11. *Neque . . . negoti, and that there would be no difficulty*.

13. *Sub sarcinis, under their burdens, including the armor*,

provisions, and implements, carried by the Roman soldiers while marching.

15. *Adiuvabat, it aided*; the subject is the clause *quod Nervii, etc., that the Nervii, etc.*

16. *Deferebant, reported.*

17. *Cum nihil possent = since they were not powerful.*

Neque student = they do not pay attention (aim at).

18. *Quicquid possunt = whatever power they have*; *quicquid* is accus. of specification.

19. *Quo, in order that.*

21. *Teneris . . . posset, tender (young) trees having been cut into and bent, numerous branches having sprung out breadth-wise (lit., into breadth) and brambles and briars having been thrown in between, they had brought it to pass that these hedges furnished defences like a wall, which (lit., whither) could not only not be entered, but not even seen through.*

29. CHAPTER 18. — *Collis . . . declivis, a hill sloping evenly from the top.*

Page 53, line 2. *Nascebatur, arose.*

Adversus . . . contrarius, opposite to and facing this one.

4. *Infimus apertus, clear at its base*: *infimus collis = the base of a hill.*

6. *Secundum, along.*

7. *Stationes, sentinels, sentries.*

10. CHAPTER 19. — *Ratio . . . agminis, the plan and the order of the line of march.*

Copiis. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, a; G. 392, R. 1.

11. *Ac, than.*

15. *Agmen, line of march.*

Praesidio impedimentis, a guard (defence) for the baggage.

18. Order: *cum illi identidem reciperent se in silvas ad suos.*

20. *Neque nostri, and our men (did) not.*

Quam . . . pertinebant, than to what limit (= as far as) the clear open ground extended.

22. *Cedentis, sc. eos = hostis.*

23. *Dimenso = having measured off*: passively. B. 112, b; H. 222, 2; A. 190, b.

26. *Convenerat, had been agreed upon.*

Ut . . . confirmaverant, just as they had established their line and their ranks within the woods and (as) they had encouraged one another (to do).

Page 54, line 4. **Adverso colle** = *up the hill*: abl. of the way by which (= means).

7. CHAPTER 20. — **Caesari**, by *Cæsar*.

8. **Vexillum**, the red flag.

9. **Concurri**, *sc. ab militibus*.

Signum, the signal which called the soldiers together: in line 12 it is the watchword.

10. **Aggeris**, *i.e.* materials for constructing a mound.

14. **Impediebat**, singular, because the subjects are considered collectively as a whole.

18. **Singulis . . . legionibus**, and from their respective legions; **singulos legatos**, the lieutenants individually.

21. **Nihil** = *non*: accus. of specification.

22. **Videbantur**, seemed proper.

24. CHAPTER 21. — **Quam in partem** = *in eam partem* quam.

25. **Non longiore**, in no longer.

27. **Neu** = *et ne*, and (that they should) not.

Page 55, line 1. **Quo**, lit., whither = *as far as*. **Quo posset**, a clause of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 6; A. 535, c; G. 298.

Quo, rel. adv.

3. **Pugnantibus**, *sc. militibus*, or *eis*, them fighting; dative.

5. **Ad . . . accommodanda**, for fitting on the ornaments, probably on the helmets.

6. **Scutis**, from the shields: abl. of separation (which may or may not be governed by a preposition), depending on **de** in composition.

7. **Tegimenta**, the covers, to keep them dry.

Order: in quam (= *whatever*) partem quisque devenit casu ab opere, quaeque (= *et quae* = *whatever*) signa conspexit prima, ad haec constitit (*by these he took his stand*).

12. CHAPTER 22. — **Quam . . . ordo**, than as the science and method of war.

13. **Cum . . . resisterent**, since the separate legions, some in one place, others in another, were resisting the enemy.

16. Neque . . . subsidia, and no certain reserves.

Conlocari. Repeat poterant, line 18. Order: neque (poterat) quid esset opus in quaque parte provideri.

19. Fortunae, gen. limiting eventus.

22. CHAPTER 23. — Acie, old form of gen. for aciei.

Constiterant, they had taken their stand.

Cursu exanimatos, exhausted with running.

Page 56, line 4. In ipsis, on the very.

7. Constitisset, subjunct. of cause after cum, since, because. B. 286, 2; H. 598; A. 549; G. 586.

8. Agmine, abl. of manner; duce = under their leader.

9. Summam imperi = the chief command.

10. Aperto latere (abl. absol.), on their unprotected flank: that is, the space between the left of the seventh and the left wing, which had been uncovered by the four legions.

13. CHAPTER 24. — Una, along.

14. Pulsos (esse), had been repulsed.

15. Adversis hostibus, the enemy in front of them: dative.

16. Decumana porta, the decuman gate, the largest of the four in a Roman camp and the principal gate of ingress and egress, in the rear of the camp, and so named because the tenth (decimus) cohorts had their stations near it.

17. Summo iugo = the summit.

19. Versari, were busy, occupied.

22. Alii . . . partem, some . . . in one direction, others in another. B. 253, 2; H. 516, 1; A. 315, c; G. 319.

24. Virtutis opinio, reputation for bravery.

28. Dispersos, separated.

Page 57, line 2. — Castris potitos (esse). B. 218, 1; H. 477, 1; A. 410 and N.; G. 407.

7. CHAPTER 25. — Sibi ipsos esse impedimento, were themselves a hindrance to themselves; were in one another's way.

11. Primipilo, the chief centurion.

12. Ut = so that.

14. Ab novissimis (militibus) = from the rear.

17. Rem . . . angusto = that matters were in a strait, i.e. in a critical condition.

18. Ab, in.

Uni militi, *from a soldier.*

20. Processit. The subject is Caesar, the first word in the chapter.

21. Inferre, *to advance* against the enemy.

23. Inlata, *having been infused.*

24. Pro se quisque, *every one for his part*, to the best of his ability.

25. In extremis, *in the extremity of.*

Operam navare, *to act vigorously.*

Page 58, line 2. CHAPTER 26.—Et . . . inferrent, *and (should) advance their standards turned about against the enemy, i.e. to face about (convertere signa), and then advance (signa inferre) against the enemy.*

3. Aversi, *while turned away, i.e. lest*, being attacked in the rear, they should be surrounded.

10. Gererentur. B. 300, I ; H. 649, II ; A. 573, 574 ; G. 467.

11. Qui cum, *when they, i.e. the tenth legion.* The relative at the beginning of a sentence is often most neatly rendered by the personal pronoun.

13. Versaretur = *were.*

14. Nihil . . . fecerunt (lit., made for themselves nothing of remainder for speed) = *made all the haste they could.*

Reliqui, *partitive gen.*

17. CHAPTER 27.—Scutis innixi, *leaning on their shields :* scutis, dat. depending on the compound in-nixi. This may also be explained as an abl. of means.

18. Armatis, *sc. iis, them armed ;* dative. Repeat the preceding ut with occurrerent.

20. Quo . . . praeferrent, *that they might bring themselves before (= might excel) the legionary soldiers.* The Mss. readings here vary considerably.

21. In extremā, *at the end of*, at the extremity of.

23. Cecidissent, *from cado.*

Iacentibus = *occisis, the slain ;* dative.

26. Ut . . . tumulo, *as from a mound* of the slain.

27. Order : ut (*so that*) deberet iudicari homines tantae virtutis non ausos esse nequiquam transire.

Page 59, line 1. Ex = *from being*.

Animi, *of courage*.

4. CHAPTER 28.—Maiores natu, lit., older in respect to birth = *the older men*.

6. Coniectos (esse) ; its subject is quos, depending on dix-
eramus.

7. Nihil, *sc. esse*.

12. Possent, *were able* (could) : subjunct. because the state-
ment is made by Nervians. This may also be explained as a
subjunct. of characteristic.

13. Quos = *them*.

In, *towards*.

18. CHAPTER 29.—Auxilio Nervii = *to the aid of the
Nervians*.

21. Quod cum, *although this*.

22. In . . . partibus, *sides round about*, lit., sides in a cir-
cuit.

Despectus, *slopes*.

24. Non amplius, *not more than*, does not influence the con-
struction.

Pedum, gen. of quality, or measure.

26. Ponderis, gen. of quality.

28. Cum iter, etc., just before their disastrous defeat by
Caius Marius.

Page 60, line 3.—Custodiam, *a guard*.

4. Eorum, *of the former*, who had fallen in battle.

5. Cum . . . defenderent, *as* (because) *they sometimes
waged war, sometimes repelled* (it) *waged* (on them) : with
inlatum supply bellum sibi.

10. CHAPTER 30.—Pedum, *sc. in altitudinem*.

12. Oppido, instrumental abl., or place where.

14. Inridere, increpitare, historical infinitives.

15. Ab . . . spatio, *at so great a distance*. See note on
line 17, page 46.

Institueretur. B. 286, 1 ; H. 588, II ; A. 540 ; G. 541.

Quibusnam manibus, *with what hands, pray*. The nam
expresses wonder in the questioner.

17. Prae, *in comparison with*.

19. In, *on*.

21. CHAPTER 31. — **Moveri**, *sc. eam* = *turrim*.

23. Qui locuti . . . dixerunt (line 27), *who having spoken . . . said*.

24. Existimare, *sc. se*.

25. Qui = cum ii, *because they*, and is followed by subjunct. of reason, *possent*, independently of *oratio obliqua*. B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592; A. 540, *c*; G. 633.

27. Unum . . . deprecari, *sc. se*, *that they begged and earnestly entreated one thing*.

28. Pro, *in accordance with*.

Page 61, line 4. Traditis armis = si arma tradita essent. B. 227, 2, *b*; H. 489, 2; A. 521, *a*, and 420, 4; G. 667, and N.

5. Sibi praestare, *that it would be better for them*; the subject accus. (represented in the translation by *it*) is the clause *quamvis . . . pati*.

11. CHAPTER 32. — Prius quam = priusquam, *before*.

Aries, *the battering-ram*, consisted of a heavy beam from 80 to 120 feet in length, to one end of which was attached a mass of bronze or iron in the form of a ram's head. This machine, plied by a hundred or more men, was sufficient to demolish strong towers and massive walls.

13. In, *in the case of*.

14. Quam, *any*.

16. Facere, *sc. se*, *that they were doing*, *i.e.* were already collecting their arms, as is implied by the present tense.

24. CHAPTER 33. — Ante inito consilio = *by a plan* (design) *previously formed*.

Ut . . . est, *as was evident*: impersonally.

26. Deducturos (*esse*), *would draw off*.

Denique, here, *at least*.

Page 62, line 1. Scutis, repeat cum.

2. Viminibus, repeat ex.

3. Pellibus induxerant (ablative of means) = *they had covered with hides*.

Qua, *where*, *sc. via*.

6. Celeriter, to be joined with **facta**.

8. Ita . . . ut, as . . . as, the ut indicating a comparison, and hence the indicative, debuit, ought.

9. Iniquo loco, in an unfavorable position; sc. in.

Eos qui has the force of such as, and hence iacerent, subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 1; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

12. Ad, about, with numerals.

15. Sectionem universam vendidit, sold at auction the entire property in parcels, including the citizens and the movable property.

Sectio, strictly a cutting or dividing, is technically used of an auction sale where goods are sold in parcels. "Those are called sectores who buy property publice, and sometimes the things sold were called sectio."

16. Capitum, souls.

27. CHAPTER 35. — Daturas (esse), feminine, because se = nationes.

Page 63, line 2. — Inita . . . aestate, lit., the next summer having been entered on = at the beginning of the next summer: abl. absol. of time.

7. Dies quindecim, for fifteen days.

Supplicatio, "a solemn thanksgiving or supplication to the gods decreed by the senate, when all the temples were opened and the statues of the gods frequently placed in public upon couches (pulvinaria), to which the people offered up their thanksgivings and prayers."

Quod, etc. The reference is not to the thanksgiving, but to the duration of it; i.e. the antecedent is the preceding clause.

BOOK III.

Events of the year 56 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus, L. Marcius Philippus. I. War with some of the Alpine Communities. II. War with the Venēti. III. War with the Venelli. IV. Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania. V. Expedition of Cæsar against the Morini and Menapii.

Page 64, line 4. CHAPTER I. — Summas, the summits of. B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2.

6. Quo, adv.

9. **Hiemandi causa.** B. 338, 1, *c*; A. 504, *b*; G. 428, R. 2. **Secundis**, *successful*, favorable.

16. **Cum hic** (*vicus*), *since* (*as*) *this* village; hence causal subjunct. **divideretur**.

Page 65, line 2. CHAPTER 2. — **Eo**, *thither*, *i.e.* in hiberna.

6. **Id**, *this*, is defined by the clause **ut . . . caperent**.

7. **Opprimendae**, *of crushing*.

8. **Neque eam plenissimam**, *and that not a very full one*; for the reason stated in the next clause.

12. **Iniquitatem**, *the unevenness*, and hence, the unfavorableness.

15. **Accedebat**, *there was added* (as another reason); its subject is **quod . . . habebant** (line 19).

Abstractos (*esse*).

16. **Romanos conari**, *that the Romans were attempting*.

19. **Sibi . . . habebant** = *they had persuaded themselves*.

Persuasum agrees with the clauses **Romanos . . . adiungere**.

20. CHAPTER 3. — **Cum**, *since* (*as*), hence followed by **essent perfectae**, subjunct. of reason.

21. **Essent perfectae**, *had been completed*. **Perfectae** applies equally to **opus**, but agrees only with the nearest noun, **munitiones**. B. 235, 2, *b*, γγ; H. 392; A. 287, 2; G. 286, 1, *b*.

22. **Satis . . . provisum** = *had sufficient provision been made*: impersonally.

24. **Timendum**, *sc. esse sibi*.

26. **Periculi**, partitive gen.

Praeter, *contrary to*.

28. **Neque . . . veniri** (*posset*) = *neither could aid* (reënförceiment) *come* to them; lit., *neither could it be come* (to them) for aid, which is not English.

Page 66, line 5. **Ad extremum**, *till the last*, *i.e.* their last effort.

6. **Rei . . . experiri**, *to try the outcome of the matter*, *i.e.* to wait and see how the matter would end.

7. CHAPTER 4. — **Constituissent**, *they had determined upon*: subjunct. by attraction.

8. **Conlocandis**, *for arranging*: dat. of the gerundive, agreeing with **rebus**.

9. Decurrere, etc., historical infinitives.

11. Integris, *with fresh*.

14. Hoc superari, *they were surpassed in this*. Hoc. B. 226; H. 480, 3; A. 418; G. 397. Superari. The historical inf. in the pass. is far less common than in the active.

17. Non modo = non modo non, the negative ne in *ne quidem* belonging to both clauses. B. 343, 2, a; H. 656, 3; A. 217, e; G. 482, R. 1. Order: ac non modo facultas excendendi ex pugna (non) dabatur defesso (militi), sed (facultas) relinquendi eius loci (*that place*), ubi constiterat, ac recipiendi sui (*of recovering himself*) (dabatur) ne quidem saucio (militi).

21. CHAPTER 5.—Horis, abl. after the comparative **amplius**.

23. Languidioribus nostris, *our men being rather faint*: abl. absol.

24. Vallum scindere, *to demolish the rampart*, by cutting away the palisades and thus making an opening.

25. Ad extremum casum, *to the last extremity*.

Page 67, line 1. Unam, *the only*.

2. Extremum auxilium, *a last resource*.

4. Intermitterent, *ut* is omitted. B. 295, 1, 8; H. 562, 1, N.; A. 565, a, and N.; G. 546, R. 2, and 652.

5. Exciperent, *they should pick up*.

8. CHAPTER 6.—Portis, abl. of the *way by which* (instrumental abl.).

10. Sui colligendi, *of collecting themselves*. Sui, gen. sing. neuter. B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; A. 504, c; G. 428, R. 1.

11. Potiundorum, older form of the gerundive.

12. Circumventos interficiunt = circumveniunt et interficiunt.

13. Amplius and plus (line 14) are used without quam and without influence on the construction.

17. Armis, *of their arms*; abl. of separation.

19. Saepius, *too often*.

20. Alio . . . viderat, *he remembered that he had come into winter-quarters with one purpose, (and) he had seen that he had encountered other things (than this)*.

28. CHAPTER 7.—Pacatam (esse).

Page 68, line 2. **Inita hieme** = *at the beginning of winter*; lit., winter having been entered on.

6. **Mare Oceanum**, *the ocean sea* = the Atlantic Ocean. B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; A. 432, a; G. 359, N. 1.

7. **Praefectos**. See note on line 24, page 28.

12. CHAPTER 8. — Order: *auctoritas huius civitatis est longe amplissima omnis maritimae orae earum regionum: orae*, *partitive gen.*

16. **Et . . . interiectis**, *and (only) a few harbors having been established* (lit., placed between) *along the great and unbroken violence of the sea; i.e. unbroken by natural or other obstacles.*

18. **Habent vectigalis**, *they hold as tributary.*

19. **Retinendi**, *i.e. the Venēti detained Silius and Velanius*, and their example was followed by other communities.

25. **Inter se** = *with one another.*

Communi consilio, *in accordance with their common purpose.*

Acturos, *sc. se esse, that they will do.*

28. **Acceperint**, subjunctive in informal indirect discourse.

Page 69, line 2. **Suos**, *his* hostages. **Suos** and **sibi** here, contrary to the general rule, refer to different subjects.

3. **Sibi**, *to them.*

Remittat, *let him send back*; in *oratio recta*, **remittas**, or **remitte** (the imperative becoming subjunct. in *oratio obliqua*).

5. CHAPTER 9. — **Longius**, *too far.*

Navis longas, *long ships* = ships of war, propelled by oars.

7. **Institui**, *to be procured.* See Lex.

12. **Admisissent**, *they had committed*; in **se**, *against themselves.*

Legatos retentos (*esse*), is in apposition with **facinus**, and defines it: the construction depends on **intellegebant**.

Quod nomen, *a name which.*

17. **Hoc**: . . . **spe**, *with the greater hope on this account*: **hoc**, *abl. of cause.*

17. **Natura**, *in (i.e. by reason of) the nature*: *abl. of cause.*

18. **Pedestria itinera**, *that the roads by land.*

22. **Ut**, *although*, hence followed by concessive subjunct.

Acciderent, *should happen.* B. 308; H. 586, II; A. 527, a; G. 608.

23. Plurimum posse, *were very powerful*.

24. Facultatem, *abundance*.

26. Longe aliam, *far different*.

Concluso, *a confined, inclosed, e.g. the Mediterranean*.

27. Atque = *from that*, because *different* in English is not followed by *than*.

29. Navis quam plurimas, *as many ships as possible*.

Page 70, line 8. CHAPTER 10. — Iniuria, rebellio, etc., are in apposition with multa.

Retentorum, *translate of detaining*.

Equitum, objective gen. Equitum . . . retentorum is an appositional gen.

11. Sibi . . . licere, *that the same thing was allowed them*.

12. Novis rebus, *i.e. revolutions in governments, political changes*.

14. Autem, *and*.

16. Conspirarent, *should conspire*. B. 292; H. 605; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

Partiendum (esse).

19. CHAPTER 11. — Proximi here governs flumini in the dat. Compare note on line 8, page 41.

20. Adeat, *sc. ut*. Compare note on line 4, page 67.

21. Auxilio, dat. of end or purpose.

22. Arcessiti (esse).

28. Qui curet = *ut is curet*.

Page 71, line 1. Manum, *force*.

5. Copiis, *sc. cum*. B. 222, 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1.

6. CHAPTER 12. — Posita, *i.e. oppida*, implied in oppidorum.

7. Extremis, *the extremities of*.

8. Se incitavisset, *had urged itself = had rushed in*.

9. Neque navibus, *nor by ships*.

11. Adflitarentur, *would be dashed*: subjunct. in the apodōsis, minuente aestu supplying the protāsis.

Utraque re, *by both circumstances*.

13. Extruso . . . molibus, *the sea being kept off by a mound and dikes*; mari, abl. absol.

14. His, *i.e. aggere ac molibus*, of their besiegers.

Fortunis, dative, governed by *desperare*, which, in *Cæsar*, is usually followed by *de*.

15. *Adpulso*, *having been brought to land*: from *adpello*.

Cuius rei = *quarum*, *of which*.

19. *Eo*, *on this account*: abl. of cause.

Partem. B. 181; H. 417; A. 423; G. 336.

20. Order: *difficultas navigandi erat summa vasto atque aperto mari* (*on account of the vast and open sea*), *magnis aestibus* (*the high tides*).

23. CHAPTER 13. — *Ipsorum*, *their own*.

24. *Planiores*, more level = *flatter*.

26. *Excipere possent*, *they might be able to take*.

28. *Factae*, *sc. sunt*.

Page 72, line 1. *Contumeliam*, *violence*, of storms.

Transtra, *the cross-banks* for rowers.

2. *Pedalibus . . . trabibus*, *of beams a foot thick*.

Trabibus, abl. of the material.

Confixa (sunt) *ferreis clavis crassitudine* (*of the thickness*) *digiti pollicis*.

3. *Crassitudine*, abl. of quality, the gen. *pollicis* taking the place of the accompanying adjective.

Pro = *instead of*.

4. *Alutae . . . confectae*, *and leather thinly dressed*.

8. *Regi*, be directed, *propelled*.

9. *Non . . . commode*, *not well enough*.

Order: *congressus nostrae classi* (= *of our fleet*) *cum his navibus erat eius modi*.

10. *Classi*, dat. of the possessor.

11. *Reliqua*, (all) *other things*.

12. *Pro*, *considering*.

13. *Nostrae* (naves); *eis*, dat.

Rostro, *with the beak*, a projection of pointed iron fitted to the prow of ancient war vessels, somewhat similar to those of modern steam-rams.

16. *Copulis*, *with grappling-irons*.

19. *Nihil* = *non*, but stronger.

20. *Navibus*, dat. of the agent.

21. *Casus*, *the chance*.

24. CHAPTER 14. — **Captis oppidis**, *i.e.* though their towns were taken.

Neque . . . posse = *and that no injury could be done to them.*

25. **Exspectandam** (*esse sibi*) **classem** = *that he ought to wait for the fleet.*

27. **Paratissimae**, *admirably prepared.*

Ornatissimae, *splendidly furnished.*

28. **Profectae**, from **proficiscor**.

29. Order: **neque constabat satis Bruto.**

Page 73, line 1. **Singulae naves**, *a ship apiece.*

3. **Insisterent**, *they should pursue*: subjunct. of deliberative indirect question.

Rostro, abl.; **noceri non posse** = *that no harm could be done.*

4. **Excitatis**, *having been erected* on our ships.

5. **Ex**, *of*, but in the sense of *raised up from*.

6. **Adigi**. Notice the force of **ad** = *to* or *into* them.

7. **Missa**, *those thrown*, *sc.* tela.

Magno usui = *of great service*; dat. of the end or purpose.

8. **Falces praeacutae**, *sharpened hooks, sickle-shaped.*

9. **Non . . . falcium**, *of a form not unlike* (that of = **formae**) *mural hooks*; **forma**, abl. of description (quality). **Murales falces** were sickle-shaped hooks of iron fastened to long poles, used to pull down the walls of besieged towns.

11. **Navigio**, of the Romans.

14. **Gallicis navibus**, dat. limiting **consisteret**, but may be rendered as a gen. limiting **spes**.

19. **Paulo fortius**, *a little braver* than usual; **paulo**, abl. of degree of difference.

22. CHAPTER 15. — **Singulas . . . circumsteterant**, *two and three* (Roman) *ships had surrounded a single one* (of the enemy's), *i.e.* in one instance two, in another three. Notice the fine effect of the distributives **binae**, **ternae**, exhibiting a number of such conflicts.

23. **Summa vi** = *with all their might.*

24. **Quod fieri** = *that this was being done.*

Page 74, line 1. **Singulas**, *them one by one* = one after another.

4. **Hora quarta**, *i.e.* four hours after six o'clock = *ten o'clock* in the morning.

7. CHAPTER 16. — **Cum . . . tum** (line 9), *both . . . and also*.

8. **Gravioris**, *of more venerable*.

9. **Navium quod**, *lit., what of ships = whatever ships*: partitive gen.

11. **Quo**, *whither*, introducing an indirect question with the additional ideas of purpose and deliberation.

12. **Habebant**, *had = knew*.

13. **In quos**, *upon whom*.

Eo, *for this reason*.

Gravius vindicandum (*esse sibi*) = *that punishment*, etc.

14. **Quo**, *in order that = ut eo*.

16. **Sub corona**, *lit., under a wreath or garland = as slaves*; because when prisoners of war were to be sold as slaves they were crowned like an animal for sacrifice.

Page 75, line 2. CHAPTER 17. — **Omnibus rebus**, *in all respects*; *abl. of specification*.

Loco, *in omitted*.

Cum, *although*.

7. **Non nihil**, *somewhat*: *acc. of specification*.

Opinionem, *an impression*.

10. **Eo**, *i.e. Caesar*.

12. **Legato**, *dat. of the agent*; **dimicandum** (*esse*), *impersonal use of the gerundive*.

16. CHAPTER 18. — **Uti . . . transeat**, *an object clause following persuadet*; in English = *to pass over to the enemy*.

17. **Qui ubi** = *when he*.

Pro, *as*.

19. **Neque . . . abesse**, *and that it was not farther off*.

20. **Proxima**, *on the nearest, i.e. on the approaching*.

23. **Negoti . . . gerendi** = *of achieving an exploit*.

24. **Iri oportere**, *sc. ab iis, that they ought to go*. Such constructions are not used in English, and therefore a strictly literal translation cannot be given.

25. **Superiorum**, *on the previous*.

27. **Erat provisum** = *provision had been made*.

29. **Prius** with **quam** (line 1, page 76) = *before*.

Page 76, line 1. — **Arma** stands before the connective **uti** on account of its strong emphasis.

2. **Ut . . . victoria**, *as if victory were certain* (lit., having been ascertained).

3. **Victoria**, abl. absol.

Quibus = *ut eis*, *that with them*, hence **compleant**, subjunct. of purpose.

5. CHAPTER 19. — **Ab . . . acclivis**, *ascending from the bottom* (base).

9. **Cupientibus**, *sc. eis*, *to them eager for it*.

11. **Factum est**, *it happened*.

13. **Superiorum**, *in former*.

17. Order : **equites consecrati reliquos**, *reliquerunt paucos* (*but few*), *qui evaserant ex fuga*.

22. **Minime resistens**, *by no means resolute*.

Page 77, line 1. CHAPTER 20. — **Paucis . . . annis**, according to the usual explanation, in the war with Sertorius, who was aided by Sequanians.

7. **Tolosa**, *from Toulouse*.

9. **Regionibus**, dat. limiting **finitimae**.

11. **Quo . . . valebant**, *in which they were very powerful*.

12. **Agmen**. The column (in marching order).

18. CHAPTER 21. — **Superioribus victoriis**, *on former victories*; abl. of cause or means, with **freti**.

20. **Adulescentulo duce** = *with a mere boy as their leader*; abl. absol. without a participle. Note the force of the diminutive.

21. **Perspici**, *that it should be seen*; its subject accus. (represented in the translation by *it*) is the clause **quid . . . possent**.

23. **Ex itinere** = *on his march*.

25. **Vineas**. See note on line 25, page 49.

Turrīs. Movable towers were among the most important engines used in storming a fortified place. Their height was such as to overtop the walls, towers, and all other fortifications of the besieged place. They were 10, 15, and 20 stories high. The use of the stories was to receive the engines of war, **tormenta**, and slingers and archers. The battering-ram, **aries**, was placed in the lowest story.

Alias . . . alias, *at one time . . . at another time*.

26. **Cuniculis**, *underground passages or mines*, which, by the removal of earth from beneath the fortifications and works of the besiegers, caused their destruction: so called from their resemblance to the burrowing of a rabbit.

Aggerem. See note, line 28, page 49.

Cuius rei, *in which*, *i.e.* the art of constructing **cuniculi**.

28. **Secturae**, *quarries*, in connection with the mines. The correct reading is uncertain.

Order: **ubi intellexerunt nihil posse profici his rebus** (abl. of means) **diligentia** (*on account of the diligence*, abl. of cause) **nostrorum**.

Page 78, line 5. CHAPTER 22. — **Soldurios**, *retainers*, of a Gallic chieftain. A Celtic word which Cæsar makes = **devotis**.

6. **Uti . . . fruantur**, a clause in apposition with **condicio**, and defining it.

7. **Quorum amicitiae**, *to whose friendship*; **dediderint**, *they have devoted*: subjunct. by attraction.

9. **Ferant**. Repeat **uti**, line 6.

12. **Recusaret**, *refused*: subjunct. of characteristic. B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

Cum his, etc., repeated from line 5, on account of the long intervening parenthesis.

21. CHAPTER 23. — **Paucis . . . quibus**, *within a few days after (which)*.

Ventum erat, *sc.* **ab Romanis** = *they had come*.

22. **Expugnatum** (*esse*).

25. **Citerioris Hispaniae**, *of Hither Spain*. Hispania was divided into **citerior** and **ulterior**, the Ibērus (Ebro) being the dividing line.

Finitimae, *bordering on*, adjacent to; hence **Aquitaniae** is dat.

Page 79, line 1. **Omnīs annos**, *i.e.* *during all the years*, about six, of the military career of Sertorius.

3. **Loca capere**, *to occupy positions*.

5. **Quod** is defined in the clauses **suas . . . augēri** (line 10).

9. **In dies**, *from day to day*, daily; used of progressive increase or decrease.

10. **Cunctandum** (*esse sibi*).

14. CHAPTER 24. — **Duplici acie**, *a double line of battle* = his army in two lines; instead of the usual **triplici acie**, because his army was small.

19. **Obsessis** = *having blockaded*.

21. **Sese recipere**, *to retreat*.

22. **Infirmiores animo**, *less resolute in courage*.

25. **Sua . . . timoris**, *by their own delay and an impression of their fear*.

28. **Exspectari**, *sc. a se* = *to wait*.

29. **Iretur**, *sc. a se* = *they should go*.

Page 80, line 1. CHAPTER 25. — **Cum alii . . . alii**, *while some . . . others*.

3. **Quibus**, *in whom*; *dat. of ind. obj. with confidebat*.

4. **Subministrandis**, *by supplying*; **comportandis**, *by collecting*.

6. **Opinionem pugnantium**, *the impression of their fighting*.

10. **Ab**, *about*.

Munita, *sc. esse*.

12. CHAPTER 26. — **Praefectos**. See note on line 24, page 28.

15. **Intritae**, *not exhausted, unworn*.

16. **Longiore**, *by a rather long*; **itinere**, *route*; *abl. of means*.

20. **Prius**, with **quam** = *before*.

21. **Quid rei** (*partitive gen.*) = *what*.

22. **Ab**, *in*; **parte**, *direction*.

25. **Per**, *by means of*.

27. **Apertissimis**, *in very open* = *unobstructed*, and therefore favorable for the operations of cavalry.

Page 81, line 1. **Multa nocte**, *late at night*.

8. CHAPTER 27. — **Confisae**, *relying*; **tempore**, *abl. of cause*.

11. CHAPTER 28. — **Supererant**, *alone remained* = *solī erant*, and hence **essent**, **misissent**, *subjunct. of characteristic*.

14. **Longe . . . ac**, *in a manner far different from* (*lit., in a manner far other than*).

16. **Continētis**, *continuous*.

18. **Quarum** = *of these*.

19. **Neque**, *and no*.

24. *Longius . . . locis, too far in places too (much) obstructed.*

27. *Militibus, abl. absol. or dat. of disadvantage.*

Page 82, line 1. CHAPTER 29. — *Ab latere, on the flank.*

4. *Magno spatio, i.e. a large (cleared) space.*

5. *Extrema, the rear of.*

6. *Ipsi, sc. et.*

8. *Sub pellibus = in tents (because they were covered with skins) = in the camp.*

BOOK IV.

Events of the year 55 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Pompeius Magnus, M. Licinius Crassus. I. War with the Usipētes and Tencteri. II. Cæsar builds a bridge over the Rhine and crosses into Germany. III. Cæsar passes over into Britain. Battle with the natives. A description of their mode of fighting. IV. War with the Morini and Menapii.

Page 83, line 1. CHAPTER 1. — *Ea hieme, during that winter.*

Qui here agrees with the following noun, *annus*, instead of the preceding, *hieme*. Observe that the date is fixed by naming the consuls for the year.

6. *Premebantur.* What does the use of the indicative here show? (That the facts related were matters of Cæsar's own personal knowledge.)

7. *Agri cultura, abl. of separation.*

9. *Omnium* occupies one of the places of strong emphasis — the *end* of the sentence.

10. *Singula . . . armatorum, a thousand (of) armed men each.* Notice the force of the distributive.

12. *Illos, the former.*

Hi . . . illi, the latter . . . the former.

In vicem (= invicem), in turn.

13. *Anno (by a year) post = the year after.*

14. *Ratio . . . usus, the science and practice.*

17. *Maximam partem, for the most part.* B. 185, 1; H. 416, 2; A. 397, a; G. 334, R. 2.

19. *Et . . . et, both . . . and.*

Page 84, line 2. **Officio** is best explained as abl. of means.

3. **Et . . . et**, *both . . . and*.

4. **Magnitudine**, abl. of description (quality).

Efficit, *makes* them.

Eam = *talem*, *such*.

5. **Vestitus quicquam**, lit., anything of clothing = *any clothing*.

7. **Lavarentur** = *they bathe*; with reflexive force.

9. CHAPTER 2. — **Eo**, *on this account*; abl. of cause. Order: *ut habeant (eos) quibus vendant (ea) quae ceperint bello*.

10. **Quibus vendant** = *ut eis vendant*; hence subjunct. of purpose.

Quam . . . quo (*than that*), has the force of *non quo* (= *non quod*), and is used with **desiderent** to denote that the supposed reason is not the true one. B. 286, I, *b*; H. 588, II, 2; A. 592, 3, N.; G. 541, I.

11. **Quin etiam**, *moreover*, *nay even*.

12. **Quaeque** = *et quae*, *and those which*.

15. **Summi laboris**, (capable) *of the greatest labor*: predicate gen. of quality.

Efficiunt, lit., *they effect*. Its object is the object clause **summi . . . laboris**.

16. **Equestribus proeliis**, *in cavalry engagements*: abl. of time when.

17. **Vestigio**. Prep. *in* omitted.

25. CHAPTER 3. — **Publice**, *in a public point of view*.

28. **A Suevis**, *in the direction of the Suevians*.

Page 85, line 1. **Agri** is the subject.

3. **Captus**, *the standard*.

Ei . . . humaniores, *and they are a little more civilized than the others of the same stock*.

6. **Ventitant**, *go often*: notice the force of the frequentative.

7. **Moribus**, abl.

12. CHAPTER 4. — **Causa**, *case*.

14. **Ad extremum** = *at last*.

21. **Transire**, difference of idiom requires us to render "*from crossing*."

25. **Viam**, *a journey*: accus. of extent of space.

28. *Certiores facti* = *having been informed*.

Page 86, line 3. *Fieret*. B. 292, 1, *b*; H. 605, II; A. 551, *b*; G. 577.

Transierunt, *i.e.* the Germans.

4. *Partem*, accus. of time *how long*.

6. CHAPTER 5. — *Infirmatatem*, want of stability = *fickleness*.

8. *Mobiles*, *changeable*.

10. *Consuetudinis*, possessive predicate gen. B. 198, 3; H. 447; A. 343, *c*; G. 366.

Consistere, *to stop*.

13. *Quibusque ex* = *et ex quibus*.

16. *Quorum eos*. B. 209, 1; H. 457; A. 354, *b*; G. 377.

In vestigio = *at once*.

17. *Serviant*, *they are slaves*: causal subjunct. after *cum*.

18. *Ad . . . eorum*, *in accordance with their wish*.

Ficta, fictions = *falsely*; really a cognate accus.

22. CHAPTER 6. — *Facta*, *sc. esse*: so with *missas*.

24. *Quae postulassent*, *which they should ask*. In *oratio recta* the tense would be fut. perf. indic. (*postulaveritis*).

25. *Fore parata*, *would be provided*. This form may be called a fut. perf. infin. B. 270, 4; H. 619, 4.

Page 87, line 2. *Equitatu imperato*, *and the cavalry (i.e. the amount to be furnished) having been ordered*. The cavalry of the Romans was mostly furnished by their allies.

8. CHAPTER 7. — *Priores*, *first*; because two parties are referred to.

9. *Recusare quin contendant* = *refuse to contend*. B. 298; H. 595, 2; A. 558; G. 555.

12. *Resistere*, *sc. iis*.

Neque deprecari, *and not to beg off*.

Dicere, *sc. se*, *they say*.

13. *Gratiám*, *good will*.

15. *Attribuant*, *let them assign*; subjunct. here because in *oratio recta* the verb was either subjunct. or imperative.

16. *Concedere*, *yield*.

17. *Reliquum neminem*, *no other (people)*. These words occupy the places of strongest emphasis—the *beginning* and the *end* of the clause.

19. CHAPTER 8. — *Visum est, it appeared proper; respondere* is understood.

21. *Verum esse, was it right.*

22. *Alienos (agros), those of others.*

24. *Licere, sc. iis = they may.*

Page 88, line 3. CHAPTER 9. — *Propius se.* See note on line 2, page 36.

14. CHAPTER 10. — *Longo spatio, in a long course.*

16. *Citatus, rapidly, as an adv.*

17. *In pluris partis, in several directions.*

20. *Multis capitibus, by many mouths.*

26. CHAPTER 11. — *Agmen, their line of march.*

Page 89, line 1. *Ut faceret = that he would grant.*

2. *Quorum . . . principes = if their leading men.*

Fidem fecisset = would give a pledge of good faith: in oratio recta, fidem fecerint (fut. perf.). Order: *ostendebant se usuros (esse) (would avail themselves of) ea condicione.*

5. *Eodem illo, to that same purpose, i.e. delay.*

9. *Quam frequentissimi, in as large numbers as possible.*

12. *Mittit, sc. eos.*

Proelio, to battle; abl. of means.

15. CHAPTER 12. — *Ubi primum = as soon as.*

16. *Cum, although; with haberet, subjunct. of concession.* Observe that *amplius* does not influence the case of *equites*.

22. *Resistentibus, i.e. nostris militibus: abl. absol.*

23. *Subfossis equis, our horses having been stabbed underneath, i.e. in the belly.*

25. *Prius quam, before.*

28. *Amplissimo genere, of a most illustrious family: abl. of source.* B. 215; H. 469, 2; A. 403, a; G. 395.

Page 90, line 1. *Intercluso, cut off, i.e. intercepted.*

5. *Incitato = urging on.*

8. CHAPTER 13. — *Audiendos (esse), ought to be listened to.*

9. *Ultro, actually.*

10. *Intulissent, had waged.* B. 283, 2; H. 591, 1; A. 535; G. 631, 2.

11. Summae . . . esse, *would be* (an indication of) *the greatest folly*: dementiae. predicate gen. of quality. B. 203, 5; H. 447; A. 343, c; G. 366.

13. Order: quantum auctoritatis hostes, etc.

16. Consilio, *his plan*.

Quaestore. "The proconsul or praetor, who had the administration of a province, was attended by a quaestor." The duties of a quaestor combined those of quartermaster and paymaster in the army.

22. Contra atque = *contrary to what*.

24. Si . . . impetrarent. *if they could do anything, they might obtain it by deceiving him in regard to a truce*.

25. Order: Caesar gavisus (*rejoicing*) quos (= *that they*) oblato (*esse*) sibi, iussit illos retineri.

Simul . . . simul = *both . . . and*.

Page 91, line 3. CHAPTER 14. — Quid ageretur, *what was being done*.

5. Discessu suorum, *i.e.* of their leaders and principal men, whom Caesar had detained.

Concili habendi, *for holding a council, i.e.* for deliberation.

7. Ne praestaret, *whether it were better*. Ne . . . an. B. 300, 4; H. 650, 1; A. 335; G. 458.

9. Pristini diei = *of the day before*.

17. CHAPTER 15. — Post tergum = *in the rear*.

23. Ad unum, *to a man*.

24. Ex, *after*.

Cum, *although*.

Page 92, line 4. CHAPTER 16. — Suis . . . rebus, *for their own affairs also*.

6. Accessit, *there was added*.

9. Neque interfuisse, *and had not been present*; proelio, *in the battle*: dat.

12. Order: qui postularent (ut) dederent sibi eos, qui intulissent, etc.

16. Sui . . . potestatis, *that any (thing of) authority or power should belong to him*. Sui is possessive predicate gen. of the possessive pronoun, *suus*.

22. Modo, *only*.

24. **Opinionem**, *the reputation*.

26. **Ad**, *among*.

Page 93, line 1. CHAPTER 17.—**Commemoravi**. One of the few instances in which Cæsar uses the verb in the first person sing.

3. **Suae . . . esse**, *that it did not belong to (become) his dignity nor that of the Roman people*.

6. **Id . . . contendendum**, *that he should strive to do it*.

8. **Rationem**, *plan*.

9. **Tigna . . . sesquipedalia**, *pairs of beams a foot and a half thick*. The distributive **bina** is used because many such pairs were required. The accompanying plan of Cæsar's bridge will render its construction quite intelligible.

Paulum . . . praeacuta, *sharpened a little at the (lower) end*.

10. **Dimensa**, *proportioned* (lit., measured off), *i.e.* to the depth of the river in different places.

11. **Inter se** = *from one another*; *i.e.* the beams were two feet apart.

Cum, *when*; conjunction.

Machinationibus immissa, *let down by means of machines*.

13. **Sublicae modo**, *after the manner of a pile*.

14. **Secundum . . . fluminis**, *according to the nature of the river*; that is, in the direction of the current; the top of the beam being farther down the stream than the bottom.

Ut procumberent, *so that they leaned forward* with the current.

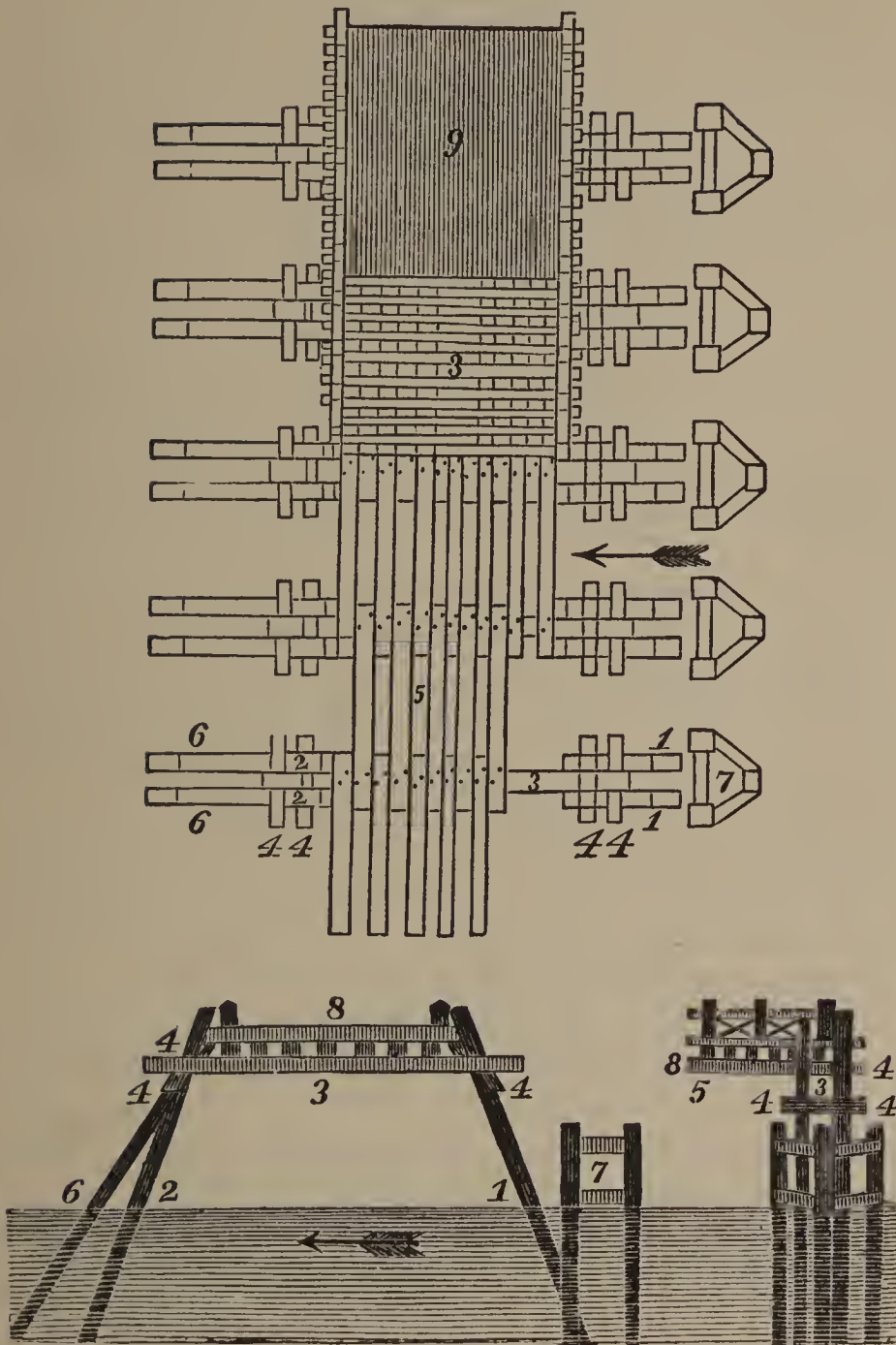
15. Order: *item statuebat contraria his (tignis) duo (tigna) iuncta ad eundem modum intervallo quadragenûm pedum ab (at) inferiore parte (fluminis) conversa contra vim atque impetum fluminis*. Hence the distance between the opposite pairs of beams, measured on the river bed, was forty feet.

16. **Quadragenum** = *quadragenorum*: a contraction quite common with the distributives.

17. **Contra . . . conversa**, *i.e.* sloping against the current, the bottom of the beam being farther down the stream than the top.

18. Order: *utraque haec (both these pairs) distinebantur trabibus bipedalibus immissis insuper (let in above), quantum iunctura eorum tignorum distabat (as far as the joining of those*

PLAN OF THE BRIDGE



1. Bina tigna sesquipedalia prona ac fastigata secundum fluminis naturam. — 2. Alia bina ex adverso defixa. — 3. Trabes bipedales. — 4. Binae fibulae. — 5. Materia directa. — 6. Sublicae obliquae. — 7. Defensores. — 8. Longurii. — 9. Crates.

beams stood apart, *i.e.* two feet), *binis fibulis* (*there being pairs of braces*) *utrimque ab extrema parte* (*at the end*).

21. *Quibus . . . revinctis*, *these* (pairs of beams) *being* (thus) *kept apart and being firmly bound together in the opposite direction*; that is, while the *trabs* tended to keep the sloping beams apart, the power of the *fibulae* was exerted in an opposite direction and tended to brace them together.

22. *Ea* = *talis*, *such*.

23. *Quo maior . . . hoc artius*, *the greater . . . the more tightly*.

24. *Haec contexebantur*, *these* (cross beams) *were connected* (or *covered*) *by timber laid on straight: directa*, straight, lengthwise of the bridge.

26. *Nihilo secius* = *notwithstanding*; *lit.*, in nothing differently.

27. *Oblique agebantur*, *were driven in obliquely*.

28. *Pro . . . subiectae*, *added as a buttress*.

29. *Aliae, sc. sublicae*.

Supra pontem, i.e. in the stream a short distance above the bridge.

30. *Deiciendi*. Supply *causā*, *for the purpose*.

32. *Neu*, *and not*.

Page 94, line 1. CHAPTER 18. — *Diebus . . . quibus* = *within ten days after*.

3. *Ad . . . partem*, *at each end*.

7. *Ex . . . quo*, *from the time that*.

20. CHAPTER 19. — *Hunc . . . earum*, *that this* (place) *had been selected nearly central in those regions*.

Regionum limits medium. B. 204; H. 450; A. 349; G. 374.

23. *Constituisse, sc. eos*, *that they had determined*.

26. *Ut . . . liberaret*. These clauses define *Cæsar's* object in crossing the Rhine, and are in apposition with *his rebus*.

Page 95, line 1. *Prōfectum* (*esse*), from *prōficio*.

4. CHAPTER 20. — *Maturae, early*.

5. *In Britanniam*. *Cæsar* was the first Roman to invade Britain.

6. *Omnibus fere, in nearly all*; *bellis*, *abl.* of time when.

7. *Inde, thence, i.e.* from Britain.

9. *Modo, only.*

10. *Adisset = adiisset, he should go to.*

12. *Neque quisquam = no one.*

Temere, without purpose.

13. *Neque quicquam = and nothing.*

14. *Gallias, the Gauls, i.e. divisions of Gaul.*

16. *Neque quanta . . . portus, clauses (of indirect question) depending on reperire poterat.*

17. *Quem . . . belli, what experience in war.*

21. CHAPTER 21. — *Periculum, the trial.*

23. *Navi longā. See Vocab.*

Huic mandat, he commissions him.

27. *Et quam . . . fecerat, instead of et classem, quam, etc., the relative clause preceding the antecedent.*

Superiore, in the preceding.

Page 96, line 3. *Qui polliceantur = to promise. B. 282, 2; H. 590; A. 531, 2; G. 630.*

Dare, to give; instead of se daturus esse. H. 619, 1; A. 580, c, N.; G. 527, R. 3.

8. *Virtutem, energy; consilium, prudence, judgment.*

10. *In . . . regionibus refers to Britain.*

Magni, great. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 379, 380, 1.

11. *(Ut) adeat (eas) civitatīs quas possit (sc. adire).*

Ut . . . sequantur = to pursue (= embrace) the protection, etc.

14. *Quantum (for tantum quantum) = as far as.*

Qui non auderet, to one who did not dare, subjunct. of characteristic.

16. *Quae, what (things); interrog. pron.*

Perspexisset. B. 300, 1, a; H. 649, II; A. 574; G. 467.

19. CHAPTER 22. — *Temporis, occasion. See Book III, 28.*

23. *Satis, quite.*

24. *Post tergum = behind him.*

26. *Tantularum, with such trifling.*

29. *Coactis contractisque, having been collected and brought together.*

Page 97, line 1. *Quod . . . habebat, what (of) war vessels he had besides.*

2. **Praefectis.** This shows that Cæsar took with him auxiliaries besides the two legions. See note on line 24, page 28.

Huc accedebant, *to these there were added.*

3. **A,** *at the distance of.*

4. **Tenebantur quo minus possent** = *were detained from being able.*

12. CHAPTER 23. — **Solvit,** *sc. navis* (he loosens the ships) = *he sets sail.*

17. **Expositas,** *displayed.*

19. **Continebatur,** *was bounded.*

25. **Ut . . . ratio,** *as the science of war.*

26. **Ut . . . haberent,** *inasmuch as they had* (= were characterized by) *a rapid and changeable movement.* On **ut quæ** in relative clauses with subjunct. of reason, see B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592, and 2; A. 535, *e*, and N. 1; G. 633.

29. **Secundum,** *favorable.*

Page 98, line 2. **Litore,** *in* omitted.

5. CHAPTER 24. — **Copiis.** Supply **cum,** which is often omitted with the abl. of accompaniment.

7. **Nisi . . . alto,** *except in deep water.*

8. **Militibus,** dat. of the agent. Render: *moreover, the soldiers had, at the same time, to leap down from the ships, etc.*

12. **Cum,** *while.*

13. **Notissimis** = *well known.*

14. **Insuefactos** = *their trained.*

21. CHAPTER 25. — **Ad . . . apertum,** *on the unprotected flank; i.e. unprotected by shields.*

22. **Tormentis.** See note on line 7, page 47.

25. **Constiterunt . . . rettulerunt,** *halted and (then) retreated only a little.*

28. **Aquilam.** The chief centurion of the legion (*primipilus*) stood next in rank to the *Tribuni militum*; he had a seat in the military council; and to his charge was committed the eagle of the legion, whence he is sometimes styled *Aquilifer*.

Ea res, *i.e. his intended leaping into the water.*

Page 99, line 2. **Certe,** *at least; not certainly,* which usually is *certo*.

6. **Inter se** = *one another.*

7. **Universi**, *all together.*

Ex proximis, *sc. ii, those from the nearest.*

12. CHAPTER 26. — **Signa**. While the **aquila** was the principal standard of the legion, the **signa** were, in a special sense, those of the cohorts.

Alius . . . adgregabat, *one from one ship, another from another, was ranging himself under whatever standards he had chanced to meet.*

15. **Aliquos singularis egredientis**, *any disembarking one at a time.*

17. **Ab . . . aperto** = *on its unprotected flank.*

In universos = *at the whole body.*

19. **Speculatoria navigia**, *observation vessels, light and swift.*

21. **Simul** = *simul atque, as soon as.*

22. **Suis**, *their comrades.*

24. **Cursum . . . capere**, *to hold on their course and to reach the island.*

26. **Caesari**, *of Cæsar*; *dat. governed by default.*

Page 100, line 1. CHAPTER 27. — **Quaeque** = *et (ea) quae.*

4. **Praemissum (esse)**. See Chap. 21.

Cum, *although.*

5. **Oratoris modo**, *in the character of an ambassador.*

8. **Contulerunt**, *they heaped.*

9. **Ut ignosceretur (sc. sibi)** = *that they might be pardoned.*

10. **Quod cum**, *because although.*

Utro, *actually*; *or, on their part.*

11. **Ignoscere**, *sc. se.*

12. **Imprudentialae**. B. 187, II, *a*; H. 426, 2; A. 367; G. 346, R. 2.

15. **Suos** = *their followers.*

18. CHAPTER 28. — **Post . . . quam**, *the fourth day after.*

20. **Sustulerant**, *had taken up, i.e. on board.* From **tollo**.

24. **Aliae . . . aliae**, *some . . . others.*

26. **Occasum**. See note, line 2, page 36.

Suo, *to themselves.*

27. **Quae tamen cum**, *as these, however.*

Ancoris iactis, *i.e. when the anchors were cast.*

28. *Adversa nocte, in the face of the night*; the sense being, “*though the night was against them.*”

Provectae, having sailed out.

In altum = to sea.

Page 101, line 1. CHAPTER 29.—*Luna plena.* Modern astronomy, combining the necessary data, has determined this “full moon”; it occurred on the night of August 30th–31st, B.C. 55.

2. *Aestus maximos, the highest tides.* The tides are produced by the joint attractions of the sun and moon; and when the moon is either new or full, their joint attractions produce the highest tides. The student may thus observe that the statements of ancient authors often find new and unlooked-for corroboration in the discoveries of modern science.

3. *Incognitum, unknown*; because, in a confined sea like the Mediterranean (to which the observations of the Romans had been limited), the tides are scarcely perceptible.

5. *In . . . subduxerat, and had drawn on (dry) land.* The ships of the Romans, when not in use, and especially in winter, were drawn on shore: hence the phrase *navis subducere*.

8. *Facultas, means.*

14. *Deërant, were wanting*: from *desum*.

15. *Hiemari oportere = that the winter must be spent.*

22. CHAPTER 30.—*Hoc, on this account*: abl. of cause.

24. *Optimum, the best thing.*

Page 102, line 4. CHAPTER 31.—*Eventu, the accident (to).*

5. *Fore id, that that would happen.*

8. *Quae naves.* In translating, transfer *naves* to the antecedent clause; *the timber and copper of those ships which, etc.*

13. *Effecit.* Its object is the object clause *reliquis . . . posset = he effected that they could sail (navigari, sc. ab iis), etc.*

18. CHAPTER 32.—*Ventitaret, kept coming.* Notice the force of the frequentative.

In statione, on guard.

20. *Consuetudo ferret, lit., custom produced = than was customary.*

21. *Id . . . erat = what it was.*

NOTES on pages 102-105, LINES 22-27 3-28, 309
2-28, 1-6.

22. Aliquid . . . consili = *that some new design had been entered into by the barbarians.*

Consili, partitive gen.

27. Conferta, *being crowded together.*

Page 103, line 3. Dispensos = *them while scattered; sc. milites.*

5. Incertis ordinibus, *their ranks being confused.*

8. CHAPTER 33. — Ipso, *by the very.*

13. Illi, *the former, i.e. the warriors.*

14. Receptum, *retreat.*

16. Usu, *practice.*

17. Incitatos . . . sustinēre, *to check their horses (previously) urged swiftly on.*

21. CHAPTER 34. — Quibus rebus, *by these circumstances; abl. of means.*

Perturbatis nostris is dat. with auxilium tulit.

26. Suo loco, *in his own position, i.e. where he then was.*

28. Order: reliqui (*i.e. Britanni*), qui erant in agris discesserunt; that is, to join their countrymen in the army.

Page 104, line 2. Quae . . . continerent = *ut illae continerent, so that they kept: hence the subjunct. of result.*

3. A pugna. The preposition is not necessary, but it expresses the idea more definitely.

6. In perpetuum (*sc. tempus*), *for ever.*

11. CHAPTER 35. — Idem fore, *that the same thing would happen.*

12. Ut . . . effugerent, a clause in apposition with idem.

19. Cursu, *by running.*

25. CHAPTER 36. — Propinqua aequinocti, *the day of the equinox being near.* The autumnal equinox is meant, which occurs September 21st or 22d.

26. Hiemi . . . subiciendam (esse), *that the voyage should be exposed to a storm.* The allusion is to the stormy weather known as "the equinoctial storm."

28. Navis solvit, *loosed his ships = set sail.*

Page 105, line 1. Capere, *to reach.*

6. CHAPTER 37. — Primo, *at first.*

Non . . . numero, *with not so large a number of their forces, i.e. with not a very large number.*

8. **Orbe facto**, *a circular line of battle having been formed.* The **orbis** was formed when a small force was attacked by a much superior one. The advantage of it was, that every part of such a line became a point of resistance.

13. **Horis**, abl. with **amplius**.

14. **Postea . . . quam**, *but after.*

21. **Siccitatīs**, *the dryness.* "The plural of abstract nouns is much more common in Latin than in our own language, to denote a repetition of the same thing, or its existence in different objects."

Order: **non haberent quo** (*whither*) **reciperent se**.

Page 106, line 3. CHAPTER 38.—**Ex litteris**, *from the letters*, addressed to the senate, and containing reports of his military operations.

4. **Dierum viginti**, *of twenty days.* Compare Book II, 35, line 7, page 63, and note on the same.

Supplicatio. See note, line 7, page 63.

BOOK V.

Events of the year 54 B.C. Consuls, L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, App. Claudius Pulcher. I. Cæsar's second expedition into Britain. II. War with Ambiorix. III. Insurrection among the Treveri.

Page 107, line 4. CHAPTER I.—Order: **uti curent quam plurimas navīs** (*that as many ships as*) **possint aedificandas** (*esse*).

5. **Modum**, *the measure.*

7. **Subductionis**, *drawing them on shore.* See note on line 5, page 101.

Quibus, *sc. eas, those which.*

8. **Nostro mari**, among Roman writers, is the Mediterranean.

Id, *sc. facit, he does that*; **eo magis**, *the more on this account.*

13. **Actuarias** = *swift sailers.*

14. **Usui** = *of service*; dat. of the end or purpose.

15. **Conventibus**, *the assizes.* See note, line 13, page 41.

16. **Illyricum** formed part of Cæsar's province.

NOTES on pages 107-110, LINES 18, 1-27, 311
2-26, 4-5.

18. **Civitatibus . . . imperat.** *Impero* here takes a dir. obj. (milites) in the acc., and an indir. obj. (civitatibus) in the dat.

Page 108, line 1. **Qui doceant** = *ut ii doceant*; hence subjunct. of purpose.

2. **Omnibus rationibus**, *in all respects.*

5. **Nisi . . . fecerint**, *if they should not do so*: in *oratio recta*, nisi ita feceritis (fut. perf. indic.).

7. **Litem**, *the damages.*

13. CHAPTER 2.—**Cuius**, *of which, i.e. navīs cuius generis.*

14. **Longas**, *sc. navīs.*

15. **Neque multum**, etc., *and that not much was wanting from this, that, etc.*

16. **Deduci**, *to be launched.*

Deducere navīs = *to launch the ships.* See note, line 5, page 101.

21. **Satis militum**, enough (of) soldiers = *soldiers enough.*

24. **Imperio**, *his authority.*

27. CHAPTER 3.—**Longe plurimum valet** = *is by far the strongest.*

Page 109, line 2. **Inter se** = *with one another.*

5. **Officio**, *allegiance.*

7. **Quaeque** = *et (ea) quae.*

8. **Indutiomārus**, subject of *instituit*.

16. **Civitati consulere**, *to consult the interests of the state.*
H. 426, 4; A. 367, c; G. 346, N. 2.

19. **Idcirco**, *for this reason*, refers forward to the clause **quo . . . continēret.**

21. **Laberetur**, *might fall off, i.e. from their allegiance.*

24. **Eius fidei**, *to his protection.*

26. CHAPTER 4.—**Quaeque res** = *et quae res, and what reason.*

Page 110, line 4. **Cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and also.*

Merito eius, *in accordance with his desert.*

5. **Magni interesse**, *that it was of great importance. **Magni.** gen. of degree of value. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1; A. 417; G. 379, 380, 1.*

8. **Id . . . factum** (esse), *that this had been done.*

9. **Suam gratiam**, *that his influence.*

Qui = cum is, *while he*: hence **fuisset**, subjunct. of cause or concession.

10. **Hoc dolore** = *with indignation at this* = *huius rei dolore.*

17. CHAPTER 5. — **Eodem**, *at the same place, i.e. the port Itius.*

21. **Loco**, *in the place* = *as.*

25. CHAPTER 6. — **Eum**, *sc. esse.*

27. **Accedebat huc**, *to this there was added.*

Page 111, line 1. **Quod dictum** (esse), *that this had been said.*

7. **Religionibus**, *by religious obligations, such, e.g., as the performance of vows previously made.*

10. **Singulos**, *them individually.*

15. **Fidem . . . interponere**, *he pledged his word to the rest.*

22. CHAPTER 7. — **Longius**, *too far.*

23. **Prospiciendum** (esse sibi) = *he ought to take care.*

Quid, *in any way*: cognate or adverbial accus.

27. **Dabat operam** = *he was exerting himself, taking care.*

28. Repeat **ut** before **nihilo**.

Page 112, line 6. **Vim faciat**, *he should use force.*

7. **Pro sano**, *as a sane man.*

Qui = *because he*; hence **neglexisset**, *had disregarded*, subjunct. of cause.

16. CHAPTER 8. — **Quaeque** = *et (ea) quae.*

18. **Pro . . . re**, *according to the occasion and the circumstance.*

Pari, *i.e. the number of cavalry which he took with him was equal to that which he left in Gaul.*

20. **Leni Africo**, *by a gentle southwest wind*: the wind derived its name from **Africa**, the quarter whence it blew.

22. **Orta luce** = *at dawn, daybreak.*

Sub, *on.*

Page 113, line 2. **Cum**, *although.*

Manus, *bands, forces.*

3. **Annotinis** (navibus), *the year-old ships = those of the preceding year.*

4. *Sui commōdi*, for his own convenience : pred. gen. of quality.

11. CHAPTER 9. — *Eo*, on this account.

12. *Molli . . . aperto*, a smooth and open, i.e. not steep and rocky.

13. *Praesidio navibus*, the guard for the ships ; both in the dative. *Navibus* is best explained as a dat. of the end or object for which, though *praesidio* depends on the compound verb.

22. *Rari*, in small parties.

Page 114, line 3. CHAPTER 10. — *Aliquantum itineris* = a short distance ; the accus. is that of extent of space.

8. *Sustinerent*, held out, i.e. withstood the force of the tempest.

9. *Ex . . . concursu*, from that collision.

12. CHAPTER 11. — *In . . . resistere*, to halt on their march.

15. *Magno negotio*, with great trouble.

17. *Labieno*, to Labienus, i.e. for his guidance ; *ad Labienum* would simply imply sending a letter to him.

18. *Eis*, with those, i.e. employing them.

19. *Multae*, (one) of much.

Operae, predicate gen. of quality.

20. *Esse*, that it was. The subject is the clause *omnīs . . . coniungi*.

21. *Subduci*, should be drawn on shore.

28. *Summa . . . administrandi*, the chief command and direction of the war.

Page 115, line 2. *Huic cum reliquis* = between him and the other.

6. CHAPTER 12. — *Quos natos (esse)*, who were born, i.e. were aboriginal, and produced from the very soil.

7. *Proditum (esse)*, it has been handed down.

15. *Examinatis*, weighed.

16. *Ibi*, Cornwall, in the southwest.

21. *Animi* of amusement.

22. *Remissioribus frigoribus*, the cold seasons being milder.

27. CHAPTER 13. — *Inferior*, sc. *angulus*.

28. *Alterum*, sc. *latus*.

Page 116, line 2. *Dimidio*, by a half; abl. of degree of difference.

3. Order : sed transmissus (*i.e.* ex Hibernia) in Britanniam est pari spatio (*of the same length*) atque (*as*) ex Gallia.

4. *Hoc medio*, the middle of this.

6. *Subiectae* (esse), to be presented, or exposed to view.

7. *Dies . . . noctem* that about the winter solstice (*i.e.* Dec. 22d) it is night for thirty successive days. The report mentioned in the text is physically impossible. A night of thirty days' duration occurs only at much higher latitudes.

9. *Ex aqua*, by means of water. The allusion is to the water-clock (*clepsydra*), in which water performed the part of sand in the hour-glass.

11. *Fert*, gives out, reports.

12. *Tertium*, *sc.* latus.

23. CHAPTER 14. — *Hoc*, on this account.

Capillo sunt promisso, lit., they are (a people) of long hair = they have long hair.

26. *Deni . . . que*, parties of ten and twelve.

Inter se, with one another.

28. *Quo* = ad quos, to whom.

Primum . . . est, each maiden was first conducted. Cæsar here speaks more Romano: *deducere uxorem domum* = to conduct the bride home to her husband.

Page 117, line 2. CHAPTER 15. — *Tamen ut*, yet so that.

3. *Omnibus partibus*, in all respects.

8. *In statione*, on guard.

10. *Atque . . . duarum*, and these (two cohorts) the first of two legions, *i.e.* the first cohorts of two different legions.

13. *Per medios*, *sc.* hostis.

18. CHAPTER 16. — *Intellectum est*, it became evident.

20. *Cedentis*, *sc.* eos = hostis.

23. *Consulto*, intentionally.

26. *Ratio*, their mode, manner.

Cedentibus, *sc.* nostris militibus.

Page 118, line 1. *Alios . . . exciperent*, they relieved one another in succession.

NOTES on pages 118-121, LINES 9-29, 2-28, 315
4-24, 6-22.

9. CHAPTER 17. — **Absisterent**, lit., *they did not keep off*, implying that they came close up to.

15. **Ex protinus**, *immediately after*.

17. **Summis**, *with all their*.

21. CHAPTER 18. — **Hoc aegre**, *that with difficulty*.

24. **Praefixis**, *fixed (planted) in front, i.e. of the bank*.

29. **Cum**, *although*.

Capite solo, *with the head only*; abl. of degree of difference.

Page 119, line 2. **Dimitterent**, *they left, abandoned*.

7. CHAPTER 19. — **Servabat**, *kept watching*.

9. **Quibus**, *sc. in*.

12. **Omnibus viis**, *by all the roads*; instrumental abl.

14. **Hoc metu**, *through this fear = through fear of this*.

15. **Longius**, *too far*.

16. **Tantum hostibus noceretur** = *that (only) so much injury could be done to the enemy*.

18. **Labore**, etc. That is, the injuries inflicted upon the enemy were now confined to the line of march of the legions, and cavalry digressions were prohibited.

22. CHAPTER 20. — **Fidem**, *the protection*.

28. **Qui (ei) praesit** = *ut is (ei) praesit, that he may preside over it*.

Page 120, line 4. CHAPTER 21. — **Militum** = *by the soldiers*.

5. **Prohibitis**, *having been protected*.

9. **Satis**, *quite*.

24. CHAPTER 22. — **Castra navalia**, *the naval camp, i.e. the ships*, which, as previously stated, Cæsar had connected with the camp.

Page 121, line 6. **Neque multum**, *and as (cum, repeated) not much*.

7. **Id . . . posse**, *that that might easily be wasted, i.e. the remainder of the summer*.

8. **Quid vectigalis**, *what (of) tribute, i.e. how much*.
Vectigalis, partitive gen.

13. CHAPTER 23. — **Deductis**, *having been launched*.

15. **Duobus commeatibus**, *by two transportations*.

22. **Locum caperent** = *reached their destination, in Britain*.

316 NOTES on pages 121-124, LINES 25, 4-25,
2-28, 3-25.

25. **Aequinoctium.** The autumnal equinox, Sept. 21st or 22d.

Page 122, line 4. CHAPTER 24. — **Aliter ac,** *otherwise than* (during).

7. **Q. Ciceroni.** A brother of the Roman orator.

18. **Medēri,** *to remedy.*

21. **Milibus . . . centum,** *within a hundred miles.*

25. CHAPTER 25. — **Summo loco,** *of the highest rank*; abl. of source.

Page 123, line 2. **Ex civitate,** *of the state*; meaning, probably, prominent men connected with the government. The reading of this passage in the Mss. is various.

4. **Quod,** *because.*

8. **Interfectum,** *sc. esse.*

10. **Perventum,** *sc. esse ab iis = they had arrived.*

14. CHAPTER 26. — **Cum,** *although.*

15. **Sabino . . . fuissent,** *had met Sabinus and Cotta.*

24. **Ex nostris,** *of our men*; instead of the partitive gen. **nostrorum.**

25. **Re,** *concern, interests.*

27. CHAPTER 27. — **Arpineius,** pronounce Arpiné-yus.

28. **Eques Romanus,** *a Roman knight*, a member of the equestrian order. "The Roman Equites were originally the horse-soldiers of the Roman state, and did not form a distinct class or **ordo** in the commonwealth till the time of the Gracchi, B.C. 123." The farmers of the public revenue (*publicani*) belonged chiefly to the equestrian order.

Page 124, line 3. **Sese,** subject of **confiteri.**

4. **Debēre,** *sc. se, that he owed.*

16. **Ex . . . sua,** *from his own weakness.*

18. **Galliae,** dat. of the possessor.

24. **Quibus . . . satisfecerit,** *inasmuch as he had done enough for them (i.e., the Gauls) so-far-as-it-concerned his loyalty.* **Pietas** embraces duty to the gods (*piety*), to country (*loyalty, patriotism*), to parents and relatives (in general, *affection*).

25. **Rationem officii,** *regard to his duty.*

Pro, *in consideration of*.

28. **Adföre** = *adfuturam esse, would be present*.

Ipsorum . . . consilium, *lit., that their deliberation was =*
it was for them to decide.

Page 125, line 2. **Civitati . . . consulere**, *he consults the*
interests of the state.

19. CHAPTER 28. — **Utro inlatis**, *having been inflicted be-*
sides, i.e. besides repelling the attack of the enemy.

22. **Quid . . . turpius**, *what was more trifling or shameful*.
A rhetorical question (*i.e. one which is in effect declarative*).

25. CHAPTER 29. — **Contra**, *in reply to*.

Sero, *too late*. Notice the force of the frequentative, **clami-**
tabat, *kept crying out*.

Page 126, line 1. — **Consulendi**, *of taking measures, con-*
sulting their interests.

2. **Arbitrari**, *sc. se*.

4. **Fuisse capturos**, *would have taken or formed*.

6. **Rem**, *the situation*.

7. **Dolori**, (*cause of*) *resentment, smart*.

8. **Mortem**. This is the first allusion that Caesar makes to
the death of Ariovistus.

10. **Redactam**, *sc. se esse, that she (Gaul) had been brought*.

11. **Sine . . . spe**, *without a fixed hope*.

13. **In . . . partem**, *on both sides; in either case*.

14. **Si . . . durius**, *if there should be nothing more difficult,*
i.e. than usual.

16. **Unam**, *that the only*.

19. **At**, *yet*.

22. CHAPTER 30. — **Ordinibus**, *ranks = centurions*.

23. **Vincite**, *carry your point*: introducing a speech in
oratio recta.

27. **Abs** is antiquated, except before **te**.

28. **Perendino die**, *on the day after to-morrow*.

Liceat, sustineant (*would endure*). What does the pres-
ent subjunct. here imply? B. 303; H. 576; A. 516, *b*;
G. 596.

Page 127, line 3. CHAPTER 31. — **Consurgitur**, *sc. ab iis =*
they rise.

318 NOTES on pages 127-130, LINES 6-28, 1-24,
6-27, 3-5.

6. **Unum**, *the same thing*.

9. **Dat manus** = *yields*: **dāre manus**, idiomatic for *to give up, yield, surrender*.

11. **Vigiliis**, *in wakefulness, i.e. without sleep*.

13. **Instrumento**, *the furniture*, in general.

15. **Nec maneat**, *sc. ab iis* = *they cannot remain*.

17. **Ut . . . non**, *as if they had not been persuaded*.

24. CHAPTER 32. — **A**, *at the distance of*. See note on line 17, page 46.

28. **Iniquissimo nostris**, *most disadvantageous to our men*.

Page 128, line 1. CHAPTER 33. — **Qui**, *inasmuch as he*, introduces a relative clause expressing a *reason*: hence causal subjunct. **providisset**. B. 283, 3, *a*; H. 592, 1; A. 535, *e*, and N. 1; G. 633.

2. **Trepidare**, *historical infin.*

3. **Ut**, *as if*.

6. **Qui cogitasset**. See note on line 1, above.

11. **Omnia obire**, *to perform all things*.

13. **In orbem**. See note on line 8, page 105.

18. **Factum**, *sc. esse*.

21. Repeat **ut** before **properaret** and **complerentur**.

23. CHAPTER 34. — **Consilium**, *prudence, judgment*.

24. **Tota acie**, *throughout the whole line*; **in** is omitted: = *per totam aciem* (in Livy).

Page 129, line 6. **Cedant**, *sc. ut*, *that they should give way*.

7. **Nihil . . . posse**, *that no injury could be done to them*.

20. CHAPTER 35. — **Cum**, *although*.

21. **Ipsis indignum**. B. 226, 2; H. 481; A. 418, *b*; G. 397, N. 2.

22. **T. Balventio**, *dat. of disadvantage, but may be rendered of Titus Balventius*.

27. **In . . . os**, *full in the mouth*.

Page 130, line 3. CHAPTER 36. — **Licere**, *sc. ei* = *that he might*.

5. **Ipsi . . . iri**, *but that no injury would be done to himself*.

Nihil, *accus. of specification*.

NOTES on pages 130-134, LINES 6-26, 6-19, 319
2-27, 3-25, 2-15.

6. *Fidem*, word.

7. *Si videatur*, if it should seem proper.

16. CHAPTER 37. — *Inter . . . agunt*, they treat with one another.

26. *Ad unum*, to a man.

Page 131, line 6. CHAPTER 38. — Order: *ne dimittant occasionem liberandi sui in perpetuum atque*, etc.

10. *Nihil . . . negoti*, that there would be no difficulty.

19. CHAPTER 39. — *Munitio*, of fortifying, i.e. collecting materials for that purpose.

Page 132, line 2. CHAPTER 40. — *Propositis*. Supply *eis qui litteras ferrent*.

5. *Admōdum*, with numerals = about, fully.

14. *Muralium pilorum*, of mural javelins, i.e. such as were thrown from the walls of besieged places.

15. *Pinnae . . . que*, battlements and parapets.

16. *Tenuissima*, in very delicate; *valetudine*, health; abl. of quality.

18. *Ultro*, actually.

21. CHAPTER 41. — *Sermonis aditum*, access (to him) for conversation.

23. *Egerat*, had discussed.

27. *Fidei . . . causa*, for the purpose of securing belief.

Page 133, line 3. *Per se* = so far as they were concerned.

5. *Unum modo*, one thing only.

8. *Utantur*, let them use; in *oratio recta*, imperative.

9. *Pro*, in consideration of.

15. CHAPTER 42. — *Nulla copia*, there being no supply; abl. absol.

24. CHAPTER 43. — *Ferventis . . . glandis*, glowing balls of pliant clay.

25. *Casas*, the huts, in winter-quarters.

Page 134, line 2. *Turrīs*. See note on line 25, page 77.

Agere, to move.

8. *Quisquam*. In what kind of sentences used? B. 252, 4; H. 513; A. 311; G. 317, 1.

15. *Turri*, abl. absol.

17. Nutu . . . que = *by beck and call*.

20. Deturbati, *sc.* hostes sunt.

23. CHAPTER 44. — Qui adpropinquarent, *who were approaching*. A graphic use of the subjunct. of characteristic.

Adpropinquabant would simply state a *fact*, *i.e.* that they were actually rising to the rank of chief centurions; adpropinquarent delineates *character*, and to that subordinates the fact.

31. Quaque, *and where*.

Page 135, line 5. Hunc, *the latter*.

6. In illum, *at the former*.

8. Pulloni, *of Pullo*; dat. of disadvantage, or reference.

19. Sic . . . versavit, *thus fortune whirled them both about* (tossed them up and down) *in their contest* (*i.e.* with one another) *and conflict* (*i.e.* with the enemy).

21. Uter utri, *which . . . to the other*. On their juxtaposition, see H. 667.

23. CHAPTER 45. — Quanto gravior . . . tanto crebriores, *the more severe . . . the more frequently*.

30. Prima, *the beginning of*.

Page 136, line 4. Versatus, *moving about*.

23. CHAPTER 47. — Litteras publicas, *the public documents*; *i.e.* such accounts and materials for reports as a commanding general would necessarily keep.

Page 137, line 1. Praesertim quos sciret = praesertim cum eos sciret, *especially since he knew that they*; the relative, strengthened by praesertim, introducing a reason. B. 283, 3; H. 592; A. 535, e; G. 633.

7. CHAPTER 48. — Opinione deiectus, *disappointed in his expectation*.

14. Graecis litteris, *in Greek letters*; *i.e.* Latin words in Greek characters. Educated Romans in Cæsar's time were generally quite familiar with Greek.

19. Adfore = adfuturum esse.

24. Perlectam (previously), *read through*.

Page 138, line 4. CHAPTER 49. — Faciat. Supply *ut*.

8. Animo, *in their courage*: abl. denoting *in what respect*.

NOTES on pages 138-142, LINES 13-23, 4-26, 321
23-28, 2-30, 1-4.

13. **Aequo . . . existimabat**, *he thought that he should relax in speed without anxiety.*

15. **Haec**, *sc. castra.*

17. **Viarum**. The Roman camp was laid out with great regularity and precision. It was divided into sections by streets at right angles with each other.

23. CHAPTER 50. — **Utrique** = *both parties*, each side.

Page 139, line 4. **Concursari**, *sc. ab militibus* = *that they should run to and fro*; so, **agi** = *that they should act*. See note on line 22, page 142.

8. CHAPTER 51. — **Vallo**, *the rampart*. See note, line 21, page 45.

14. **In speciem**, *for show*.

Singulis ordinibus, *by single rows, i.e. one row deep*.

15. **Ea**, *in that direction*.

22. CHAPTER 52. — **Neque . . . videbat**, *and he saw that the place was not left with trifling loss to them*.

26. **Non quemque**, *that not every tenth* = more than one in ten.

Page 140, line 23. CHAPTER 53. — **Trinis hibernis**, *in three winter-quarters*. The distributives are used with the force of cardinals with plural nouns which have no singular.

28. **Quid . . . consili** = *what other plan*.

Page 141, line 2. **Neque . . . fere** = *and scarcely any*.

5. **In his**, *among these, sc. nuntiis*.

20. CHAPTER 54. — **Publico consilio**, *by a public resolution*.
Cum, *although*.

24. **Tantum valuit** = *so great an influence did it exert*.

25. **Principes inferendi**, (to be) *first in waging*.

28. **Alteros**, *the one*, the Haedui.

30. **Alteros**, *the other*, the Remi.

Page 142, line 1. **Suspecta**, *suspected*; **nobis**, *dat.*, but may be rendered *by us*.

Idque . . . sit, *and I do not know whether this ought so much to be wondered at*.

2. **Cum . . . tum maxime**, *both . . . and particularly*.

4. Order: **dolebant gravissime se deperdidisse tantum eius opinionis** (*of that reputation*).

15. CHAPTER 55. — **Lapsus**, lit., having fallen = *being disappointed*.

22. CHAPTER 56. — **Ultro . . . veniri** = *that men came to him freely*. The verb thus used without a subject (impersonally) expresses in a forcible manner the very *essence of action*; thus, **veniri** means "that a coming took place."

24. **Alter**, *sc. ex parte*.

26. **Armatus concilium**, *an armed council*.

27. **Quo**, whither = *to which*.

Page 143, line 1. **Adfectus**, *visited*. In general, the accompanying noun determines the meaning of **adfectio**.

4. **Fidem**, *the protection*.

5. **Bona**, *property*. Compare the English "goods."

7. **Huc**, *i.e. into the territories of the Senōnes and Carnūtes*.

11. CHAPTER 57. — **Munitissimis**, *admirably fortified*.

13. **Rei . . . gerendae**, *of managing the affair well* = *of performing an exploit*.

16. **Habuerat** = *he had delivered*.

19. **Sub**, *close to, near to*.

23. **Opinionem**, *the impression*.

26. CHAPTER 58. — **Nocte una**, *within one night*.

Page 144, line 1. **Nulla ratione**, *in no way, manner*.

2. **Ex**, *according to*.

7. **Ubi . . . est**, *when it seemed proper*.

Sub, *towards*.

9. **Praecipit**, *he directs*, refers to the object clause **unum . . . Indutiomarus**, the conj. **ut** being omitted.

Interdicit, *he forbids*, refers to the object clause **neu . . . viderit**. It would be more in accordance with English idiom to omit **atque interdicit** in their present position, and to render them just before **neu quis**, which must then be translated *that any one*, on account of the negative force of **interdicit**: *he directs that, the enemy having been frightened off and put to flight, etc., and forbids that any one shall wound, etc.*

13. **Spatium . . . illum**, *that he, having found time*.

16. **Hominis** = **Labieni**.

18. **Deprehensus**, *overtaken*.

22. **Factum**, a perf. participle agreeing with **id**, but may be rendered *exploit*, or *was done*.

BOOK VI.

Events of the year 53 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Domitius Calvinus, M. Valerius Messāla. I. A rebellion in nearly all the states of Gaul. Their subjugation. II. Cæsar's expedition against the Suevi. III. Punishment of Ambiōrix and the Eburōnes.

Page 145, line 4. CHAPTER I. — **Proconsule**, *proconsul*, of Spain; an officer who acted in the place of a consul without holding the office of consul itself; though the proconsul was generally one who had held the office of consul, so that the proconsulship was a continuation, though a modified one, of the consulship. Dict. Antiqq.

5. **Ad urbem**, *near the city*, Rome.

cum imperio, *with military command*; because a proconsul was not permitted to enter the city while he held the **imperium**.

6. **Consul . . . rogavisset**, lit., *the consul had questioned by oath*; because they were *asked* to swear that they would obey their leaders, and never desert their standards.

8. **Magni interesse**, *that it was of great importance*. B. 203, 3; H. 448, 1, 449, 3; A. 417, 335, N. 2; G. 382, 1.

9. **Ad . . . Galliae**, *for an impression on Gaul*.

12. **Augēri** must be rendered *more than compensated*. The propriety of its use here is questionable.

Page 146, line 6. CHAPTER 2. — **Obsidibus . . . cavent**, *and in regard to the money they take precaution by means of hostages*, i.e. to secure its payment.

12. **Consilia communicare**, *are concerting plans*.

14. **Maturius**, *earlier*, i.e. than usual.

22. CHAPTER 3. — **Primo vere**, *at the beginning of spring*.

26. **Lutetiam Parisiorum**, *to Lutetia of the Parisians*; the modern Paris.

27. **Civitatem coniunxerant**, *they (the Parisii) had united their state with them (the Senōnes)*.

Page 147, line 1. Pro suggestu, *from a stage or platform.*

4. CHAPTER 4. — Princeps, *author.*

6. Conantibus, *i.e.* eis conantibus in oppida convenire.

9. Quorum in fide, *under whose protection.*

18. CHAPTER 5. — Totus, etc., *he applies himself wholly, with mind and soul, to the war, etc.*

21. Order: ne quis motus existat aut ex huius (*his*) iracundia, aut ex eo odio civitatis (*of the state* = on the part of the state), etc.

23. Pro explorato, *as settled, determined.*

Page 148, line 1. Venisse, *sc.* Ambiorigem.

2. Illi detrahenda (esse), *ought to be drawn off from him.*
B. 188, 2, *d*; H. 427; A. 381; G. 347, R. 5.

19. CHAPTER 6. — Custodis loco, *in the position of (= as) a guard.*

26. A, *at the distance of.*

Page 149, line 5. CHAPTER 7. — Ripis praeruptis, *with steep banks*: abl. of description or quality.

10. In . . . devocaturum (esse), *that he will not call in doubt* = he will not jeopardize.

12. Order: ut ex magno numero Gallorum equitum natura cogebat non nullos favere Gallicis rebus.

15. Ordinibus, *ranks = centurions.*

18. Fert consuetudo, *lit., custom brings* = is customary.

20. In tanta, *in view of the great.*

24. CHAPTER 8. — Longum = *too long.*

29. Quae fore, *that these things would happen.*

Page 150, line 6. Imperatori, *to your commander, Caesar.*

23. Est traditum, *were delivered.*

30. CHAPTER 9. — Nota . . . ratione, *the plan being known and having been adopted.* See plan and notes, Book IV.

Page 151, line 8. Communi odio, *in his general hatred*; abl. of cause.

10. Cognita causa, *the case having been investigated.* The position of Caesar between these words (in the abl. absolute) shows *that he was the investigator.*

21. CHAPTER 10. — Conditionem, *terms.*

NOTES on pages 151-154, LINES 27-30, 1-17, 325
1-28, 1-20.

27. **Penitus** . . . **recepisse**, *had betaken themselves* (= had gone) *inwardly towards the boundaries of their territories, i.e. towards the opposite borders of their country.*

30. **Nativo**, *a natural.*

Obiectam = *presenting itself*; opposed.

Page 152, line 1. **Suevorum**, *on the part of Suevians*; subjective gen.

5. CHAPTER 11. — **Alienum**, *foreign, irrelevant*, to the subject. The subject of **videtur** is the clause **de . . . proponere**.

6. **Quo**, *in what respect.*

8. **Singulis** = *each.*

9. **Principes sunt**, *they are the leaders.*

11. **Quorum . . . redeat**, *to whose decision and judgment the management of all affairs and measures falls.*

13. **Institutum**, *sc. esse.*

14. **Auxili egēret**, *should be without assistance.* B. 212, 1; H. 458, 2; A. 356 and N.; G. 383, 1.

17. **Ratio**, *principle.*

In . . . Galliae, *in the constitution of all Gaul*: so prominent a place does the principle occupy.

Page 153, line 1. CHAPTER 12. — **Publice**, *in the name of their state.*

10. **Se uti**, *that they were enjoying.*

11. **Reliquis rebus**, *in other respects.*

13. **Quos adaequare**, *that they (the Remi) were equal.*

14. **Gratia**, *in influence, favor.*

21. CHAPTER 13. — **Aliquo numero**, *in any estimation*; abl. of quality.

24. **Aere alieno**, *by debt*: lit., another's money.

28. **Druīdum**, (that) *of the Druids.* "The party of Druids, represented by Diviciācus and Liscus, was the popular party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed by the old clan-feeling kept up by military chiefs (**principes**), such as Orgetōrix and Dumnōrix."

Page 154, line 1. **Religiones**, *the doctrines of religion.*

7. **Qui**, *any one*; indef. adj.

20. **Media**, *the middle*; an adj.

25. **Eam rem**, *this matter*, the system of the Druids.

30. CHAPTER 14. — **In disciplinam**, *for instruction*.

Page 155, line 2. **Ediscere**, *to learn by heart*. In this manner long poems, like those of Ossian and Homer, have been traditionally preserved from very ancient times.

3. **Vicenos**, *twenty*, *i.e.* each person twenty years.

In, *under*.

4. **Ea**, *those matters*, which are subjects of instruction.

Cum, *although*.

5. **Rationibus**, *transactions*, accounts.

6. **Graecis litteris**, *i.e.* merely the *Greek characters*.

7. **Volgus**. How declined ?

8. **Litteris**, *on letters* ; abl. of cause.

12. **Non . . . animas**, *that souls do not perish* (= are immortal).

Sed . . . alios, *but pass, after death, from one person to another* ; lit., from some to others. This is the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, or metempsychosis.

15. **Mundi**, *of the universe*.

21. CHAPTER 15. — **Inlatas**, *sc. sibi iniurias, injuries inflicted on them*.

22. **Versantur**, *are engaged*.

Ut amplissimus . . . ita plurimos, *the more illustrious . . . the more*.

Ut . . . ita, with the superlative in both clauses = *the more . . . the more*.

24. **Hanc . . . noverunt**, *they are acquainted with this* (kind of) *influence and power only*.

27. CHAPTER 16. — **Religionibus**, *to religious rites*.

Page 156, line 4. **Eiusdem generis**, *i.e.* of human beings.

13. CHAPTER 17. **Mercurium**, *i.e.* a Gallic god whose general attributes resembled those of the Roman Mercury.

14. **Hunc**, *sc. esse*.

15. **Ferunt**, *they say*, report.

20. **Initia tradere**, *imparts the first principles*.

28. **Capta**, *the things taken* by him in war.

Page 157, line 1. CHAPTER 18. — **Ab . . . patre**, *from Dis as their father*.

NOTES on pages 157-160, LINES 3-26, 2-24, 327
1-17, 3-4.

3. *Spatia . . . temporis*, the lengths of every period of time.
5. *Ut . . . subsequatur*, that the day follows the night, i.e. they count their days from sunset to sunset.

7. *Ut possint*, so that they are able.

13. CHAPTER 19. *Cum . . . communicant*, add to the dowries.

14. *Ratio*, an account.

Fructus, the interest.

21. *Si . . . est*, if a discovery (of criminality) is made.

22. *Pro cultu*, for the mode of life, the degree of civilization.

23. *Vivis . . . fuisse* = were dear to them when living.

25. *Supra . . . memoriam*, before the present recollection.

26. *Iustis . . . confectis*, the funeral rites being (thus) made complete.

Page 158, line 2. CHAPTER 20. — *Habent sanctum* = have enacted; the part. agreeing with the clause *si . . . communicet*.

8. *Visa sunt*, have seemed proper.

10. *Nisi . . . concilium*, unless in council.

13. CHAPTER 21. *Student*, do they pay attention.

15. *Volcanum*, who represents the active agency of fire.

17. *Studiis*, occupations, pursuits.

24. *Renonum* = of deerskins.

Page 159, line 1. CHAPTER 22. — *Finis proprios*, limits as his own.

2. *Gentibus . . . que*, to the tribes and kinships.

3. *Quantum . . . agri*, as much land as seems proper and in what place.

5. *Alio*, an adv.

7. *Agri cultura*, for agriculture; abl. of price.

Commulent here is used like a verb of selling.

8. *Humiliores*, the weaker.

9. *Accuratius*, too carefully.

15. CHAPTER 23. *Hoc . . . virtutis*, this as a peculiar mark of valor.

17. *Neque . . . prope* = and that scarcely any one.

Page 160, line 3. *Omnium rerum fides*, confidence in all things.

4. *His*, from them; dative.

328 NOTES on pages 160-163, LINES 6-28, 4-25,
1-23, 2-6.

6. **Sanctos habent**, *they regard as inviolable*.

17. CHAPTER 24. — **Iustitiae opinionem**, *reputation for justice*.

18. **Eadem**, *the same, i.e. as in earlier times*.

19. **Cultu**, *clothing, dress*.

21. **Multa . . . largitur**, *bestow many things in abundance and for enjoyment*.

25. CHAPTER 25. **Novem . . . expedito**, *a journey of nine days for one unencumbered*.

Expedito, *sc. alicui*.

26. **Aliter**, *otherwise, i.e. than by days' journeys*.

28. **Recta regione**, *in the straight line*.

Page 161, line 4. **Huius** = *of this part*.

10. CHAPTER 26. — **Bos**, generally believed to be the reindeer.

Figurā, *abl. of quality, cervi being equivalent to an adjective*.

13. **Sicut palmae**, *as it were palms; i.e. palm-leaves*.

17. CHAPTER 27. **Mutilae sunt cornibus**, *lit., are mutilated in their horns = have their horns broken off*. **Mutilus** is used of horned animals that have lost one or both horns.

18. **Nodis . . . que**, *joints and articulations*.

22. **Paulum . . . reclinatae** = *reclining only a little*.

24. **Omnes** agrees with **arbores**.

25. **Summa**, *lit., the highest = every*.

Page 162, line 1. CHAPTER 28. — **Uri**, *wild oxen*. A Celtic word.

8. **Quae sint** = *ut eae sint, that they may be*.

13. **Ab labris**, *around the rims*.

17. CHAPTER 29. — **Minime student**, *pay the least attention*.

20. **Barbaris**, *from the barbarians; dat. of disadvantage*.

23. **Extremo**, *the end of*.

Page 163, line 2. **Milibus**, *sc. passuum = miles*.

3. **Si quid proficere possit**, *if he can accomplish anything; equivalent to ut, si quid possit, proficiat*. Subj. of indir. question. B. 300, 3; H. 649, II, 3; A. 576, a; G. 460, I, b.

6. **Sese subsequi**, *that he follows*, instead of *sese subsequiturum esse*: but the present gives an air of despatch to the expression.

NOTES on pages 163-167, LINES 12-27, 5-28, 329
6-26, 1-29, 6-21.

12. CHAPTER 30. — **Multum . . . fortuna**, *fortune exerts great influence not only in all things, but especially also in military affairs.*

15. **Videretur**, is subjunct. of result after **ut**, repeated, and **adferretur**, after **priusquam**.

16. **Magnae fortunae**, *a piece of great good fortune.*

22. **Propinquitatis**, *the neighborhoods.*

24. **Illum . . . equum**, *him on horseback.*

27. CHAPTER 31. — **Ambiorix**, etc., *it is doubtful whether (ne) Ambiorix did not draw his forces together from choice (iudicio, an act of judgment).*

Page 164, line 5. — **Oceāno**. Dat. of nearness with **proximi**.

8. **Alienissimis**, *to entire strangers.*

10. **Confectus** = *enfeebled.*

11. **Precibus**, prayers for evil = *curses, imprecations.*

13. **Taxo**, *i.e.* with the juice of its poisonous berries.

19. CHAPTER 32. — **Unam**, *a common one.*

28. **Cum . . . tum quod**, *both . . . and particularly because.*

Page 165, line 6. CHAPTER 33. — **Versus in**, *towards.*
Versus is often thus used with **ad** and **in**.

16. **Commodo** = *consistently with the interest.*

17. **Communicato** = *having concerted together.*

24. CHAPTER 34. — **Vicinitatibus**, *to those in the neighborhood*: the abstract for the concrete.

26. **Universis**, *sc. militibus, to them in a body.*

Page 166, line 1. **Ex parte** = *in some degree.*

8. **Instituta ratio**, *the established method.*

9. **Ex occulto**, *in concealment.*

15. **Noceretur**, *that injury should be inflicted.*

23. CHAPTER 35. — **Adpetebat**, *was approaching.*

27. **Modo**, *even.*

29. **Ultro**, *freely.*

Page 167, line 6. **Primos finīs** = *the nearest borders.*

11. **Profectum**, *sc. eum esse.*

13. **Quid vos**, etc. A speech in *oratio recta*.

18. **Cingi**, be encircled = *be manned.*

21. **Eodem duce**, *the same person as guide.*

330 NOTES on pages 167-170, LINES 23-26, 2-28,
6-21, 2.

23. CHAPTER 36. — **Qui continuisset**, *although he had kept*. The relative is here equivalent to **cum** is; hence the subjunctive. B. 283, 3, *b*; H. 593, 2; A. 535, *e*; G. 634. See also Crombie's *Gymnasium*, vol. i, pp. 376-377, where this passage is discussed.

26. **Numero dierum**, mentioned on page 165, line 13.

Page 168, line 2. Order: **quo** (= *ut eo, that by it*) **posset offendi** (*an error could be committed by him*) in **milibus passuum tribus** (*within three miles of his camp*), **legionibus oppositis** (*i.e. to the enemy*) **maximoque equitatu**, etc.

5. **Mittit**. Its subject is **Cicero**, at the beginning of the chapter.

Quas inter, instead of the usual order, **inter quas**.

7. **Hoc spatio**, *in this interval, i.e. since Cæsar's departure*.

14. CHAPTER 37. — **Ab . . . porta**, *by the decuman gate, in the rear of the camp*.

16. **Usque eo**, *to such a degree*.

Qui . . . tenderent = *who had their tents close to the ramparts*. With **tenderent** supply **tabernacula** for a full construction.

23. **Trepidatur**, *alarm prevails*.

28. **Novas religiones**, *strange superstitious notions*.

Page 169, line 6. CHAPTER 38. — **Apud Caesārem**, *with Cæsar, as commander*.

10. **In . . . discrimine**, *that matters were in the greatest danger*.

12. **In statione**, *on guard*.

13. **Relinquit . . . Sextium**, *consciousness leaves Sextius* = *Sextius faints*.

15. **Per manus**, *lit., through hands* = *from hand to hand*.

21. CHAPTER 39. — **Quae recipiat** = *ut ea recipiat, that can receive*.

Modo, *but recently*.

Page 170, line 2. CHAPTER 40. — **Manipulos**, *the maniples* = *companies*. "In legione sunt centuriae sexaginta, manipuli triginta, cohortes decem." Cincius, *De Re Militari*. The word (from **manus**) originally meant *a handful or wisp of hay, straw, fern, or the like*, and this, according to Roman tradition, affixed to the end of a pole, formed the primitive military standard.

3. Order: alii (*some*) censent ut cuneo facto perrumpant celeriter.

Cuneo. The *wedge* was employed when a concentration of force upon a given point of the enemy was desirable. The *cuneus* allowed the soldiers composing it to discharge their weapons at such a point.

6. **At**, *yet*.

Alii, *others, sc. censent*.

14. **Usu**, *experience*.

15. Order: potuerunt neque permanere in eo consilio, quod probaverant, ut defenderent se superiore loco, neque imitari eam vim celeritatemque, quam viderant prodesse (*were profitable*) aliis.

21. Order: traducti erant in superiores ordines huius legionis.

Page 171, line 3. CHAPTER 41.—**Fidem** . . . faceret, *could not secure belief*.

5. **Paene** . . . **mente** = *almost deprived of reason*.

7. **Incolumi exercitu**, *the army being safe* = si incolumis fuisset exercitus; the abl. absolute having the force of a conditional sentence.

8. **Oppugnaturos fuisse**. See note and references, line 19, page 25.

11. CHAPTER 42.—**Unum questus**, *complaining of one thing*.

Ex . . . **praesidio**, *off guard and out of the garrison*.

12. **Ne** . . . **debuisset**, *that room should not have been left to even the smallest chance*.

14. **Multo** . . . **amplius**. Repeat fortunam potuisse.

16. **Avertisset**, *she (fortune) had diverted*.

Page 172, line 1. CHAPTER 43.—**His pereundum** (esse) = *that these must perish*.

2. **In** . . . **est** = *matters reach such a point*. A translation of the mere words here would give neither the sense nor the spirit.

4. Order: ut captivi circumspicerent Ambiorigem modo visum (*but just now seen*) ab se in fuga.

5. **Plane**, *entirely*.

7. **Ab**, *with*.

8. *Studio, in their zeal.*

9. *Paulum, only a little.*

15. CHAPTER 44. — *Damno, with the loss;* may be taken as abl. of price or attendant circumstance.

Durocortorum, terminal accus.

19. *More maiorum, according to the custom of our ancestors* = in accordance with ancient rigor.

25. *Ad . . . agendos.* See note on line 13, page 41.

BOOK VII.

Events of the year 52 B.C. Consuls, Cn. Pompeius Magnus III. (alone until August 1st), Q. Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio. — THE WAR WITH VERCINGETÖRIX. The Gauls concert measures for renewing the war. Cæsar returns to Gaul. Siege and capture of Avaricum. Siege and capture of Alesia, and surrender of Vercingetörix.

Page 173, line 3. CHAPTER 1. — *Clodi, of Clodius*, a turbulent Roman and the implacable enemy of Cicero; slain in an encounter with Milo.

4. *Coniurarent = should take up arms:* should band together by an oath, under Pompey, to quell the disorders consequent upon the death of Clodius.

8. *Urbano = in the city, Rome.*

12. The position of *principes* between *indictis* and *conciliis* shows that *the leading men* were the actors in appointing the councils.

14. *Posse recidere, may happen in turn.*

16. *Deposcunt, sc. eos.*

18. *Rationem . . . habendam, that care should be taken;* regard should be had.

Page 174, line 9. CHAPTER 2. — *Principes, first.*

11. *Obsidibus, by means of hostages.*

12. *Fide, by a pledge of honor.*

14. *Continetur, is comprised.*

27. CHAPTER 3. — *Hunc, sc. clamorem.*

Excipiunt, take up.

Page 175, line 7. CHAPTER 4. — *Adpetebat, he was aiming at.*

19. In fide, in their allegiance.

23. Imperium, the (military) command.

26. Quaeque, from quisque.

Quod . . . tempus, and before what time.

Page 176, line 2. Singulis oculis, one eye, from each person: hence the use of the distributive.

9. CHAPTER 5. — Quorum . . . fide, under whose protection they were.

11. De . . . legatorum, in accordance with the advice of the lieutenants.

19. Altera, sc. ex parte.

Id, etc., whether they did that for that reason, etc., ne being interrogative.

25. CHAPTER 6. — Urbanas res, affairs in the city, Rome.

Virtute, by the energy.

28. Ratione, manner, way.

Page 177, line 2. Dimicaturas, i.e. legiones dimicaturas esse.

11. CHAPTER 7. — Omnibus consiliis, to all (other) designs.

13. Provincialibus, provincial, i.e. those of them within the limits of the Roman province.

20. CHAPTER 8. — Intra = within the line of.

23. Discussa . . . pedum, the snow six feet in depth having been cleared away.

27. Singulari homini, to a single person.

Page 178, line 9. In versus, towards.

12. CHAPTER 9. — Haec . . . praeceperat, he had, in thought, anticipated that these things would happen in the case of Ver-
cingetōrix.

13. Per causam, under the pretext.

16. Daturum (esse) . . . operam = that he will take care.

23. Quid consili, any design.

De = against.

Page 179, line 7. CHAPTER 10. — In eo, i.e. Caesare.

11. Suorum, sc. sociorum, his allies.

18. CHAPTER 11. — Altero die, on the second day.

20. Expeditiore, more readily; as an adv.

21. Circumvallavit, he invested, i.e. encompassed in a hostile manner.

334 *NOTES on pages 179-184, LINES 28-29, 2-27*
7-27, 9-26, 9-18, 8-12.

28. *Ductum iri, would be protracted.*

29. *Quod . . . mitterent = ut id eo mitterent.*

Page 180, line 2. *Posterum, sc. diem.*

4. *Contingebat oppidum = connected with the town.*

6. *Cenabenses, the people of Cenābum.*

11. *Quin, here, has the force of so that nearly.*

17. **CHAPTER 12.** — *Obviam Caesari = to meet Caesar.* B. 192, 1; A. 370, c.

21. *Consuleret, that he would take measures = that he would spare.*

27. *Agmen, the line of march.*

Page 181, line 7. **CHAPTER 13.** — *Laborantibus = hard pressed.*

12. *Comprehensos perduxerunt = they seized and brought.*

17. *Agri . . . regione, in a very fertile tract of land.*

23. **CHAPTER 14.** — *Atque = from what.*

Omnibus . . . studendum (esse), that attention must be given to this thing by all means.

27. *Dispersos = in scattered parties.*

Page 182, line 9. *Neque interesse, and that it makes no difference.*

Ne . . . an, whether . . . or. B. 162, 4; H. 380; A. 335; G. 458.

13. *Ne . . . neu, that . . . neither . . . nor.*

Neu (neve) is used as a continuative after ut and ne.

24. **CHAPTER 15.** — *Amissa, the things lost = their losses.*

26. *Incendi. Supply utrum.*

Page 183, line 9. **CHAPTER 16.** — *In . . . tempora = for each hour of the day: singula tempora diei has, however, the force of equal subdivisions of the day; not necessarily hours.*

15. *Occurrebatur, was met = was provided for.*

18. **CHAPTER 17.** — *Intermissa = unoccupied.*

Page 184, line 8. *Meruisse, had served. Supply stipendia for a full construction: had earned pay as soldiers.*

12. *Quam non parentarent, than that they should not avenge.*

Parentare, properly, to make an offering to the manes of the dead; here, by slaughtering their enemies.

NOTES on pages 184-187, LINES 18-28, 3-28, 335
3-32, 4-17.

18. CHAPTER 18. — Propius Avaricum. See note, line 2, page 36.

25. Artiores (= arctiores), *the denser*.

28. CHAPTER 19. — Ab infimo, *from its base*.

Page 185, line 3. In civitatīs, *according to their states*.

Saltus, *passes, passages*.

6. Ut qui, *so that one who*.

7. Aequo Marte = *on equal terms*; the idea being, Mars favoring one side no more than the other.

8. Condicionis, *of situation*.

13. Constare, *should cost*.

20. CHAPTER 20. — Proditionis. B. 208, 1; H. 456; A. 352; G. 378.

28. Quod, *as to the fact that*; serving merely to introduce the subject of remark.

Page 186, line 3. Equitum . . . debuisse, *that the assistance of the cavalry ought not to be missed in a marshy place*.

9. Fortunae. Supply habendam gratiam, *from the following line: that thanks were due to fortune*.

12. Qui = cum ii, *because they*: hence receperint, *betook*, subjunct. of cause.

16. Quin etiam (se) remittere, *moreover he would even submit (it)*. The object of remittere (represented by *it*) is the object clause si . . . videantur.

18. Haec . . . milites. Observe the change from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta*.

32. Victorem, *a victorious*.

Page 187, line 4. CHAPTER 21. — In eo, *in the case of one, or him*.

6. Maiore ratione, *with greater prudence*; on a more comprehensive plan.

10. In eo, *sc. oppido*.

11. Summam victoriae, *the whole (of the) victory, i.e. their final triumph*.

13. CHAPTER 22. — Consilia . . . Gallorum, *devices of every kind on the part of the Gauls*.

17. Falcīs, *i.e. falcīs muralis, used in pulling down the walls*.

18. **Subtrahebant.** Notice the force of the *sub*, *they pulled down from underneath.*

21. **Totum**, etc.; *lit.*, they had planked, *i.e.* *they had covered the whole wall with towers.*

25. Order : *et, malis (the beams) suarum turrium commissis (being joined together, i.e. to increase the height of their towers), adaequabant altitudinem nostrarum quantum turrium cotidianus (= the daily addition to) agger expresserat (= had raised) has.*

27. **Apertos**, etc., *they retarded our mines (when) opened, etc.*, that is, by countermining.

Page 188, line 4. CHAPTER 23. — **Perpetuae**, *continuous, i.e.* by being joined together at the ends.

6. **Introrsus**, *on the inside.*

10. **Inter se** = *one another.*

11. **Singulae** (*trabes*), *each row (of beams).*

Singulis . . . interiectis, *by a row of stones placed between.*

12. **Arte** = *arcte, tightly.*

19. **Trabibus**, *abl. of material (quality), limiting quae.*

Page 189, line 3. CHAPTER 24. — **Toto muro**, *sc. in, along the whole wall.* **In** is very often omitted with nouns qualified by **totus**.

7. **Occurreretur**, *resistance should be offered*, opposition should be made : used impersonally.

8. **Ratio**, *a plan.*

9. **Instituto**, *according to a regulation.*

10. **Partitis**, *having been portioned out.*

12. **Interscinderent**, *cut asunder, i.e. made a cut separating the part on fire from the rest.*

18. CHAPTER 25. — **Pluteos**, *that the parapets*, or breast-works ; made of boards and similar materials.

Apertos, *exposed.*

22. Order : *accidit nobis inspectantibus quod (what) visum (having appeared) dignum memoria non existimavimus praetereundum (esse).*

24. **Per manus** = *from hand to hand.*

25. **E . . . turris**, *opposite the tower.*

NOTES on pages 189-194, LINES 26-27, 4-26, 337
7-25, 12-22, 9-27, 5-6.

26. **Scorpione**, by a *scorpio*, a military engine of whose construction we have no reliable information.

27. **Iacentem** = *lying dead*.

Page 190, line 4. CHAPTER 26. — **Profugere**, instead of *ut profugerent* or *profugiendi*: the infinitive in such constructions is common in English and Greek, but unusual in Latin prose.

12. **Proiectae** = *falling*.

21. CHAPTER 27. — **Directis**, *having been arranged*.

26. **Versari**, *to be engaged*.

Page 191, line 7. CHAPTER 28. — **Si . . . veniretur** (a Romanis), *if an advance from any part in their direction should be made against them*. **Obviam** has reference to *direction*; **contra**, to *hostile intention*.

16. **Confectis**, *those enfeebled*.

21. **Multa nocte** = *late at night*.

23. **Procul . . . dispositis**, *having been stationed at a distance on the road*.

25. **Quae . . . obvenerat**, (according to) *whatever part of the camp had at the beginning fallen to each state*.

Page 192, line 12. CHAPTER 29. — **Orbis terrarum**, *the whole world*: lit., the circle of lands, because the ancients in the time of Homer conceived the earth to be a circular plain surrounded by the ocean.

22. CHAPTER 30. — **Re integra**, *the matter being as yet undecided*, whether to defend the town or not.

Page 193, line 9. CHAPTER 31. — **Quem . . . diem**, lit., *which (number) and before what day, i.e. which number he wished to be brought to camp, and to have it brought by a certain day*.

14. **Amicus**. The honor of being called "*friend*" was eagerly sought by petty princes and kings in alliance with Rome.

25. CHAPTER 32. — **Necessario**, *urgent*.

27. **Singuli**, *a single*. The plural distributive is used because the reference is to the usage of successive years: *one for each year*.

Page 194, line 5. **Cognitionis**, *i.e. his family connections* were numerous.

6. **Proximo**, *the preceding*.

338 NOTES on pages 194-197, LINES 8-27, 15-26,
9-25, 3-23.

8. **Suas . . . clientelas**, lit., that there are the adherents of each of them = *that each has his own adherents*.

10. **Positum** (esse), was placed = *depended*, has for subject accus. the clause **id . . . accidat**.

12. CHAPTER 33.—**Detrimentosum**. A word found only once.

15. **Coniuncta**, *closely allied*.

19. **Praeventendum** (esse sibi) = *that he ought to prevent*.

21. **De iure**, *from their prerogative*, peculiar right.

26. **Atque oportuerit**, *than was proper*.

27. **Renuntiatum** (esse), *had been* (officially) *reported* as having been elected.

Page 195, line 15. CHAPTER 34. — **Parte**, *side*.

17. CHAPTER 35. — **Utrimque**, *on both sides*, i.e. one on one side of the river, the other on the other side.

In . . . ponebant = *they pitched their camps in sight of and almost opposite to one another*, rendering **castris** (in the dat. depending upon the idea of *proximity*) *to one another*, to avoid harshness.

26. **In . . . restitit**, *he remained behind in concealment*.

Page 196, line 9. CHAPTER 36. — **Quintis castris**, *in five days' march*. The Romans made an encampment at the end of each day's march. Hence **castra**, when used as a measure of distance, means "*a day's march*." Cf. the exactly similar use of *σταθμός* in Greek.

17. **Eius iugi**, *of that height*.

24. Order: **periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis esset in quoque suorum**.

25. **Collis**. Like a true military genius, Cæsar quickly discerns the enemy's vulnerable point.

Sub ipsis, *at the very*.

Page 197, line 3. **Duodenum** = *duodenorum*.

4. **Tuto**, an adverb.

12. CHAPTER 37. — **Imperio natos**, *born for dominion*, "born to rule."

17. **Sic . . . obtinuerit**, *yet in such a way that he obtained from him (only) a very just decision*.

23. **Vel**, *even*.

NOTES on pages 197-200, LINES 27-29, 3-29, 339
1-27, 2-28.

27. **Ea**, *i.e.* decem milia.

29. Order: *constituunt qua ratione placeat* (*it would please them* = they wish) *reliqua agi*.

Page 198, line 3. CHAPTER 38. — **Quo proficiscimur**, *whither are we going*; introduces a speech in *oratio recta*.

6. **Indicta causa**, *lit.*, their cause being unpleaded = *without trial*; *abl. absol.*

16. **Ut . . . consulat**, *that he would consult their interests*.

17. **Consili . . . sit**, *it were a matter for deliberation, and it were not necessary*.

Consili, possessive predicate *gen.* after *sit*.

19. **Nosmet**. B. 84, 2; H. 175, 4; A. 143, *d*; G. 102, N. 2.

21. **Persequamur**, *let us avenge*: subjunct. in exhortation.

24. **Qui . . . erant**, *who were along* (with him) *through a reliance on his protection*.

29. **Atque ipse**, *as he himself*.

Page 199, line 1. CHAPTER 39. — **Summo loco**, *of the highest rank*: *abl. of source* after **natus**.

12. **Quod . . . provideat**, *which he foresees will happen*.

14. **Propinqui**, *their relations, i.e.* the relations of **tot hominum milia**: with **neglegere** supply *possint*.

20. CHAPTER 40. — **Contrahenda**, *contracting*; on account of the diminished forces within.

27. **Immisso**, *having been sent on*.

Page 200, line 2. **Versari**, *to move about*.

5. **Deprecari**, *to pray for the averting of, i.e.* to beg for their lives.

9. CHAPTER 41. — **Conservatos**, *sc. eos esse, that those had been preserved*.

13. **Fuerit**, *was*: subjunct. of indirect question.

15. **Quibus**, with **isdem** in the next line, *is, lit., by whom the same*, *dat. of the agent*; better rendered, *by whom also*. Translate thus: *who also, on account of the great size of the camp, had to remain continuously on the rampart*.

27. CHAPTER 42. — **Cognoscendum**, *becoming informed, of all the facts*.

28. **Quae** relates only to **temeritas**, the nearest noun.

Page 201, line 3. Rem proclinatam = *the perilous movement.*

6. Fide, *their word of honor.*

14. CHAPTER 43. — Publico consilio, *by public resolution or authority.*

18. Capti, *taken = charmed.*

24. Gravius, *too severe.*

30. Nata, *proceeding, arising.*

Page 202, line 1. CHAPTER 44. — Cogitanti, *sc. ei = Caesari.*

Facultas, *an opportunity.*

9. Dorsum, *that the top.*

19. CHAPTER 45. — Mulorum . . . stramenta. These words are omitted in some Mss.

20. Stramenta, *the coverings, perhaps = the pack-saddles.*

24. Easdem regiones, *the same quarter.*

Page 203, line 3. Insignibus, *the ornaments, particularly the decorations of the helmets.*

4. Raros milites, *soldiers in small parties.*

6. Singulis legionibus, *each legion, i.e. one lieutenant over each legion.*

9. Quid incommōdi, *what (of) disadvantage.*

11. Occasionis . . . proeli, *that the affair was (one) of opportunity, not of conflict.*

15. CHAPTER 46. — Recta regione, *in a straight line.*

16. Order: quicquid circuitus (*whatever of circuit*) accesserat huic (*sc. spatio*) ad molliendum (= *for easing*) clivum, id augebat spatium (*the length*) itineris.

17. A . . . colle, *nearly on the middle of the hill.*

18. In longitudinem, *lengthwise, i.e. of the hill.*

19. Ferebat = *allowed, permitted.*

20. Praeduxerant, *had constructed before them, i.e. between themselves and the Romans.*

22. Densissimis, *pitched very near together; opposed to raris, here and there.*

23. Munitionem, *i.e. the wall six feet high.*

24. Trinis castris, *three camps: the Gauls had encamped in tribes according to their states.*

NOTES on pages 204-208, LINES 2-28, 8-29, 341
5-20, 7-23, 6-10.

Page 204, line 2. CHAPTER 47.—**Receptui cani**, a retreat to be sounded, lit., to be sounded for a retreat; dative of purpose.

Order: *contionatus constituit signa* (*he halted the standards, i.e. preparatory to retreating*) *decimae legionis quacum erat*.

4. **Satis magna**, quite a large.

17. **Neu.** Supply **facerent**; and that they would not do; whose object is defined in the clause **ne . . . abstinerent** = *spare not even the women, etc.*

19. **Per manus**, here, by the hands.

22. **Avaricensibus praemiis**, by the rewards given at *Avaricum*.

Neque commissurum (esse), and that he would not allow.

23. **Prius** = *before him, i.e. prius quam ille murum ascendisset*.

Suos manipularis, men of his own company.

28. CHAPTER 48.—**Primo . . . inde**, at first . . . afterwards.

Page 205, line 8. **Cursu . . . pugnae**, by their running and the duration of the battle.

22. CHAPTER 50.—**Ab . . . aperto**, on our exposed flank.

23. **Manus**, the forces, of the enemy: genitive.

24. **Similitudine**, i.e. of their arms to those of the Gauls.

25. **Exsertis**, lit., thrust forth = *bare*.

29. **Quique** = *et ei qui*.

Page 206, line 5. **Quoniam me**, etc. A speech in *oratio recta*.

17. CHAPTER 51.—**Intolerantius**, too immoderately = *too eagerly*.

20. **Exceperunt**, supported.

Page 207, line 7. CHAPTER 52.—**Quanto opere . . . tanto opere**, as much as . . . so much; abl. of degree of difference.

11. **Plus se sentire**, that they knew better.

15. CHAPTER 53.—**Ad extremam**, at the close, conclusion.

21. **Nihilo magis**, in no respect the more = not at all.

23. **Satis . . . factum**, sc. esse.

Page 208, line 6. CHAPTER 54.—**Horum**, i.e. *Viridomārus* and *Eporedōrix*.

10. **Merita**, services.

342 NOTES on pages 208-214, LINES 16, 3-26,
15-18, 4-27, 3-29, 9-21, 10-11.

Quos = qualis, *what* (i.e. in what condition); further explained by the addition of *quam humilis*, *how powerless*.

16. Gratiam, *the influence*.

Page 209, line 3. CHAPTER 55. — *Tantum commōdum*, *that so great advantage*, as was centred in Noviodūnum.

8. Cui usui, *of any advantage*: dative of the purpose or object.

9. Frumenti quod = quantum frumenti.

20. CHAPTER 56. — *Si esset periclitandum*, *if any risk was to be run*: impersonally.

23. Ut . . . quidem, *as every one at that time indeed*. “Be careful to distinguish between *nemo non*, denoting *quisque*, and *non nemo*, signifying *aliquis* or *aliqui*.”

26. Labieno, *for Labienus*; dat. limiting timebat.

Page 210, line 15. CHAPTER 57. — *Singularem*, *his excellent*.

18. Impediret, *obstructed*, hindered access to.

Page 211, line 4. CHAPTER 58. — *Secundo flumine*, *down the river*; lit., the river favoring; while *adverso flumine* = *up the river*, lit., the river being adverse.

11. CHAPTER 59. — *Secundo motu*, *a successful commotion*.

13. Ligeri, i.e. from crossing it: ablative.

18. Longe aliud, *a far different*.

27. Virtute, *energy*, vigor.

Page 212, line 3. CHAPTER 60. — *Singulas*, *one apiece*.

4. Equitibus Romanis, *to the Roman knights*.

22. CHAPTER 61. — *Tumultuari* = *that a great disturbance prevails*: used impersonally.

29. Versus, *towards*; a prep. following its case.

Page 213, line 9. CHAPTER 62. — *Primo concursu*, *at the first charge*, onset.

11. Cum, *although*.

17. Post tergum = *in the rear*.

21. Tulit, bore = *met*, suffered.

Page 214, line 10. CHAPTER 63. — *Frequentes*, *in large numbers*.

11. Suffragiis, dative, *to the votes*.

NOTES on pages 214-218, LINES 13-19, 2-13, 343
2-26, 3-25, 2-3.

13. Illi, *the former*, the Remi and Lingōnes.

14. Sequebantur, *they sought*.

19. Requirunt, *they miss*.

Page 215, line 2. CHAPTER 64. — Aequo . . . corrumpant, *provided that, with a willing mind, they will themselves destroy their own grain*.

12. Allobrōgas, Greek form of the accusative.

13. Nondum resedissee (from resīdo), *had not yet calmed down*, i.e. that they still entertained resentment against the Romans.

Page 216, line 2. CHAPTER 65. — Evocatis, *the volunteer veterans*, soldiers who, having served out their full time, were afterwards persuaded to serve again.

15. CHAPTER 66. — Otium, *quiet*, tranquillity.

Parum profici, *that but little was effected*.

16. Reversuros (esse), *sc. Romanos*.

17. Adorianur, *they must attack them*; subjunctive of command, and the verb was accordingly subjunctive in *oratio recta*, i.e. in the speech of Vercingetōrix. B. 316; II. 642, 4; A. 588, a; G. 652.

18. In eo, *in that*, i.e. rendering assistance to one another on the march.

19. Id quod = *what*; magis futurum (esse), *would rather happen*.

21. Order: nam et (*even*) ipsos quidem debere non dubitare de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum audeat progrēdi modo (*even*) extra agmen.

26. Oportere, *it ought*: its subject is the clause ne . . . perequitarit.

Page 217, line 3. CHAPTER 67. — Ab . . . lateribus, *on the two flanks*.

Una, *at the same time*.

A . . . agmine, *in front*.

20. Proximis comitiis, *at the last election*: ablative of time when.

25. CHAPTER 68. — Ut, *in the same order as*.

Page 218, line 2. Est passum, *allowed*.

3. Altero die, *on the second day*.

344 *NOTES on pages 218–221, LINES 5–25, 4–29,
8–22, 1–5.*

5. *Equitatu* in respect to their cavalry: abl. of specification.

8. CHAPTER 69. — *In . . . summo*, on the top of a hill.

14. *Pari . . . fastigio*, with an equal rise in height, i.e. with a uniform slope, while the hill on which Alesia stood, rose precipitously.

17. *Maceriam*, a stone wall, built without cement.

22. *Haec eadem*, sc. castella.

25. CHAPTER 70. — *Intermissam* = unoccupied.

Page 219, line 4. *Angustioribus . . . relictis*, (only) the narrower gates having been left open.

10. *Veniri*. See note on line 22, page 142.

20. CHAPTER 71. — *Suae . . . rationem*, a regard for their own safety.

24. *Ratione inita*, a computation having been made.

29. *Capitis poenam*, the penalty of the head = capital punishment.

Page 220, line 8. CHAPTER 72. — *Pedum viginti*, sc. in latitudinem.

9. *Directis lateribus*, with perpendicular sides: abl. of quality.

Ut . . . pateret, so that the bottom of this trench extended as much (= was as wide).

10. *Summa labra*, the edges at the top.

12. *Reduxit*, he constructed back; i.e. in a direction from the city.

Id, sc. fecit.

13. *Totum opus*, the whole body, i.e. of fortifications.

14. *Corona militum*, by the circle of soldiers, around the besieged city.

21. *Loricam . . . que*, a parapet and battlements.

22. *Cervis*, stakes in the form of a stag's horns.

Eminentibus . . . aggeris, projecting out at the junctions of the parapet and rampart. The lorica and pinnae composed the plutei.

Page 221, line 1. CHAPTER 73. — *Addendum*, sc. esse sibi.

5. *Perpetuae fossae*, a continued trench: at first, probably, constructed in sections, which were afterwards united into one.

This will explain the use of **perpetuae** and the distributive **quinos**.

6. **Huc . . . revincti**, *those stakes having been sunk into it and fastened at the bottom*. By **stipites** are meant the trunks of trees and strong boughs before mentioned.

7. **Ab . . . eminebant**, *projected (above the ground) with the branches (only)*, lit., from the branches, *i.e.* from the part where the branches began.

8. **Quini . . . ordines**, *there were rows of five* = these stakes were arranged in rows of five.

9. **Se . . . induebant**, *were themselves impaled on very sharp stakes*, lit., put themselves upon: **ipsi**, *themselves*, *i.e.* by their own act.

10. **Vallis**, from **vallus**; dative.

Cippos = *bulwarks formed of sharpened stakes*.

11. **Obliquis . . . dispositis**, *in oblique rows arranged in quincunx* (like the five points on dice), thus:



and, extending the arrangement, thus:



in which the rows of three are arranged in an oblique direction.

12. **Paulatim . . . fastigio**, *with a gradually narrower slope to the bottom*.

14. **Ab summo**, *at the top*.

15. **Digitis quattuor**, *than four finger-breadths*. **Digitus** = the sixteenth part of a Roman foot.

16. **Singuli . . . exculcabantur**, *one foot (deep) from the bottom in each (pit) was trodden with earth*.

19. **Octoni ordines**, *rows of eight*.

22. **Totae**, *wholly*, leaving only the hooks projecting.

25. CHAPTER 74. — **Regiones . . . natura**, *following as level a district as he could, considering the nature of the place*.

27. *Diversas . . . his, opposite to these.* The main works of the Romans, therefore, consisting of the *agger* and *vallum*, with the towers, parapets, and battlements, occupied the centre of the combined fortifications ; the works on each side were of similar construction.

Page 222, line 21. CHAPTER 75. — *Universis civitatibus, to the states collectively.*

Page 223, line 3. CHAPTER 76. — *Immunem, exempt, from taxes, imposts, etc.*

9. *Incumberent, were applying themselves.*

11. *Inibatur = was taken down, i.e. entered officially.*

14. Order: (*ei*) *delecti ex his civitatibus attribuuntur (eis) quorum consilio (by whose judgment) bellum administraretur.*

19. *Ancipiti proelio, with a double front.*

26. CHAPTER 77. — *Deditionem censebat, decided for (voted for) a surrender.*

Page 224, line 1. *Habitus, regarded, considered.*

2. *Nihil de eorum, etc. A speech in oratio recta.*

4. *Loco, in the rank.*

14. *Respiciamus, let us regard; subjunct. of exhortation.*

16. Order: *octoginta milibus hominum interfectis uno loco, quid animi (what state of mind) existimatis fore nostris, etc.*

Octoginta, etc. The number of men in Alesia with Ver-
cingetōrix.

20. *Nec.* We may supply *velitis*, or render *or.* The negative seems attributable to the vehemence of expression, which desired to repeat the negative force of *nolite*.

23. *An, or.* The first member of the alternative question is to be mentally supplied: (Is there any other reason for your indecision?) *or, because they have not come, etc.?* B. 162, 4, *a*; H. 380, 3; A. 335, *b*; G. 457, 1.

24. *Quid ergo? What then?* Supply *censetis* for a full construction.

25. *Animi (ne interrogative) causa, for the sake of amusement.*

26. *Illorum, i.e. of the expected allies of the Gauls.*

Page 225, line 6. *Depopulata* is here used passively.

17. *Securibus, to the axes, borne by the lictors of Roman magistrates.*

NOTES on pages 225-230, LINES 22, 16-22, 347
4-25, 1-28, 8-18, 2-15.

22. CHAPTER 78.—**Utendum**, *sc. esse sibi, they must avail themselves of.*

Page 226, line 16. CHAPTER 80.—**Ad . . . partem**, *on both sides, within and without.*

22. **Raros** = *here and there.*

Page 227, line 4. **Factum**, *a thing done.*

10. Order: *item nostri insecuti (eos) cedentis ex reliquis partibus, etc.*

15. CHAPTER 81.—**Harpagonum**, *of grappling hooks, fastened to long poles and used in pulling down walls, etc.*

25. **Librilibus**, *sc. saxis, lit., with stones weighing a pound.*

Page 228, line 1. Order: *submittebant auxilio his (milites) deductos ex ulterioribus castellis.*

11. CHAPTER 82.—**Interiores**, *those within the city.*

12. **Priores**, *i.e. et priores, and those in advance.*

28. CHAPTER 83.—**Quid . . . pacto**, *what . . . and in what manner.*

Page 229, line 8. **Campestris munitiones**, *the fortifications on the plain.*

12. CHAPTER 84.—**Musculos**, *sheds, or mantelets*, “one of the smaller military machines, by which soldiers in besieging a town were protected while engaged in filling up the ditches round the besieged place, so that the movable towers of the besiegers might be made to approach the walls without obstacle.” Cæsar describes their form and construction in *De Bello Civili*, II. 10.

17. **Pluribus . . . occurrit**, *run to (defend) several places (at once).*

18. **Pugnantibus**, *sc. eis; dat. of reference with the additional idea of disadvantage.*

Page 230, line 2. CHAPTER 85.—**Iniquum . . . momentum**, *an elevation with (ad) a declivity, (although) unfavorable in position, has great importance.*

6. **Ea quae**, *etc.*, refers to **cippi, taleae**, *etc.*, previously mentioned.

15. CHAPTER 86.—**Praerupta . . . ascensu**, *steep in the ascent.*

Page 231, line 4. CHAPTER 88. — **Ex . . . vestitus.** The reference is more particularly to the **paludamentum**, a purple or crimson cloak, in which Roman commanders were arrayed.

7. **Haec**, *sc. loca.*

8. **Excipit . . . clamor**, *a shout from the rampart and from all the fortifications takes it (the shout just heard) up in turn.*

20. **Quod nisi** = *quod si non*, *and if . . . not.*

Crebris subsidiis, *by the frequent assistance* given to one another.

Page 232, line 5. CHAPTER 89. — **Vercingetorix deditur.** “According to Plutarch, the Gallic chieftain arrayed himself in his most splendid armor, and, having caparisoned his horse, sallied out from the gates of the town. After he had taken some circuits around Cæsar, as the latter was sitting in his tribunal, he dismounted, put off his armor, and seated himself at the feet of the Roman general. Here he remained in silence until Cæsar ordered him to be taken away and reserved for his triumph. Dio Cassius states that he relied on Cæsar’s former friendship for forgiveness. This reliance, however, proved unavailing, since, after having been led in triumph at Rome, he was put to death in prison.”

8. **Capita singula**, *a head apiece* = one to each soldier.

26. CHAPTER 90. — **His . . . Romae**, *these things having been learned at Rome by letter, i.e. by Cæsar’s reports.*

27. **Supplicatio.** See note on line 7, page 63.

NOTE. — The subject of the Gallic War is continued in an eighth book, written by Aulus Hirtius, the friend of Cæsar. This eighth book, together with an account of Cæsar’s wars in Africa, Spain, and Alexandria, by uncertain authors, is sometimes given in complete editions of Cæsar’s works.

MILITARY PHRASES AND IDIOMS.

ā dextrō cornū , on the right wing.	bellum dēfendēre , to ward off war.
ā fronte , in front.	cēdentēs et insequentēs , the pursued and the pursuing.
ā nōvissimō agmine , on the rear.	committēre proelium , to begin the engagement, join battle.
ā sinistrō cornū , on the left wing.	conficēre exercitum , to raise an army.
āb tergō , on the rear.	consīlium īnīre , to form a plan.
āciem convertēre , to face about, <i>by turning to the right or left, or entirely about.</i>	consistēre , to halt; take a stand or position.
āciem dīrīgēre , to align the front.	conversa signa inferre , to face about and advance.
āciem instruēre , to form the line of battle.	convertēre signa , to face about.
āciēs mēdia , the middle of the line (<i>of battle</i>).	dāre in fūgam , to put to flight.
ād ēquum rescrībēre , to enroll in the cavalry.	dāre mănūs , to yield.
ād spēciem , for show.	excursiōnem făcēre , to make a sally.
adversō colle , up the hill.	ex ēquō, ex ēquīs , on horse-back.
adversō flūmīne , up stream, up the river.	ex lōcō infēriōre , from a lower position.
āgēre cum , to arrange, treat, or confer with.	ex lōcō sūpēriōre , from a higher position.
agmen claudēre , to bring up the rear (<i>of the line of march</i>).	expēdīta lēgio , an unencumbered legion, <i>i.e.</i> without a baggage-train.
āversum hostem vīdēre , to see the enemy in flight.	ferre condiōnem or condiōnēs , to propose terms.

hostibus adversis occurrere,	nāvis subducere, to draw ships
to come face to face with	up on land.
the enemy.	opēram dare, to take pains.
in orbem consistere, to form a	opēram nāvare, to do one's best.
circle <i>or</i> a circular line of	ordinēs servare, to keep in line.
battle.	pēdem referre, to retreat.
in stātiōne, on guard.	prīmī ordinēs, <i>often</i> the centu-
incidit bellum, a war breaks	rions of the first rank.
out.	primum agmen, the van.
inferre bellum, to make war	proelia parvula, skirmishes.
on.	rōgare sacrāmentō, to enlist
iter facere, to march.	<i>under the military oath.</i>
iūs dicere, to administer jus-	sē recipere, to withdraw, retreat.
tice.	sēcundō flūmine, down the
lēgiōnem conscribere, to enroll	river, down stream.
a legion.	signa inferre, to advance.
mānīpūlōs laxare (to spread	sūb pellibus, in tents.
out the maniples), to open	summa bellī, the general con-
out the ranks, <i>in order to</i>	duct of the war.
<i>give more space to each</i>	summa exercitūs, the main
<i>soldier.</i>	body of the army.
mānus conducta, a band of	summa impēri, the chief com-
mercenaries.	mand.
naves longae, war-ships.	summā vī, with all <i>one's</i> might,
nāvigia spēcūlātōria, scouting-	with might and main.
ships, vessels of observation.	sustinere ēquōs, to check <i>or</i>
nāvis armare, to fit out ships.	rein in the horses.
nāvis dēducere, to launch ships.	vim facere, to use violence.
nāvis solvere, to set sail, weigh	volnēra adversa, wounds in
anchor.	front.

VOCABULARY.

VOCABULARY.

A

ā, *āb*, *abs*, *prep.* *with the abl.*, from, by ; of, after, at ; on account of, on, among ; at the distance of ; in, in the direction of, on the side of ; by means of ; against. *Ā* is used only before consonants ; *āb*, before vowels and consonants ; *abs*, before *q* and *t*.
ab-do, *ěre*, *dīdī*, *dītum*, *tr.*, to hide, conceal, remove.
ab-dūco, *ěre*, *ūxī*, *uctum*, *tr.*, to lead away, withdraw, take away.
āb-ěo, *īre*, *īvī* or *iī*, *ītum*, *intr.*, to go away, depart.
āb-esse. See *ab-sum*.
ab-fūtūrus. See *ab-sum*.
ab-īcio, *ěre*, *iēcī*, *iectum*, *tr.* (*ab* + *iacio*), to throw away, throw down, cast aside.
ābīēs, *ētis*, *f.*, the fir-tree.
āb-isse = *āb-iisse*, *from* *āb-ěo*.
ab-iungo, *ěre*, *nxī*, *nctum*, *tr.*, to separate, remove, detach.
ab-rīpio, *ěre*, *rīpuī*, *reptum*, *tr.* (*ab* + *rapio*), to carry off by force, wrest away, snatch or tear away.
abs-cīdo, *ěre*, *cīdī*, *cīsum*, *tr.* (*abs* + *caedo*), to cut off, cut away.

ACC

ab-scindo, *ěre*, *scīdī*, *scissum* *tr.*, to cut off, tear away, rend.
absens, *entis*, *adj.* (*absum*), absent, remote ; when absent, in one's absence.
ab-sīmīlis, *e*, *adj.*, unlike, dissimilar.
ab-sisto, *ěre*, *stītī*, —, *intr.*, to withdraw, depart ; to abstain, keep off from.
abs-tīneo, *ěre*, *uī*, *tentum*, *tr.* (*abs* + *tēneo*), to abstain from, refrain from, keep aloof from (= to spare).
abs-trāho, *ěre*, *xī*, *ctum*, *tr.*, to drag away, take or carry away by force.
ab-sum, *esse*, *fuī*, —, *intr.*, to be absent, distant, remote ; to stand aloof, take no part in.
āb-undo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *intr.* (*ab* + *unda*), to overflow, abound.
āc, *conj.*, and ; than ; as. *Ali-ter ac*, otherwise than.
ac-cēdo, *ěre*, *essī*, *essum*, *intr.* (*ad* + *cēdo*), to approach, arrive at, go near to ; to be added. *Accedebat quod*, there was added that.

ac-cēlĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
and *intr.* (ad + cēlĕro), to
hasten, make haste.

ac-ceptus, a, um, *partic. adj.*
(accipio), pleasant, welcome,
agreeable, acceptable.

ac-cīdo, ěre, idī, —, *intr.* (ad
+ cado), to fall, befall, hap-
pen, occur. Accīdit, *impers.*,
it happens.

ac-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.*
(ad + caedo), to cut off, cut
down, fell, lop.

ac-cīpio, ěre, ēpī, eptum, *tr.*
(ad + cāpio), to receive,
take, obtain, acquire; to
hear, learn; to approve.

ac-clīvis, e, *adj.* (ad + clīvus),
ascending, rising.

ac-clīvītās, ātis, *f.*, an ascent,
acclivity, rise.

ac-commōdātus, a, um, *partic.*
adj. (accommodo), suitable,
fitted, adapted.

ac-commōdo, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr. (ad + commodo), to ad-
just, fit, adapt.

ac-cūrātē, *adv.* (accūrātus),
carefully, exactly, attentively.
Comp. accūrātīus, *sup.* accū-
rātissimē.

ac-curro, ěre, currī and cū-
currī, cursum, *intr.* (ad +
curro), to run to, hasten
to.

ac-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
(ad + causa), to accuse, cen-
sure.

ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*, sharp, pun-
gent; severe, violent.

ācerbē, *adv.*, harshly, bitterly,

sharply, keenly. *Comp.*

ācerbius, *sup.* ācerbissimē.

ācerbītās, ātis, *f.*, harshness,
bitterness, sharpness, sever-
ity.

ācerbus, a, um, *adj.* (ācer),
sour, unripe; severe, harsh,
bitter.

ācerrīmē, *adv. sup. of* ācrīter.

ācervus, ī, *m.*, a heap, pile.

ācīēs, ēī, *f.*, a sharp edge; keen-
ness, look; a battle, an army
in line of battle. In ācie, in
line of battle.

ac-quīro, ěre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.*
(ad + quaero), to acquire,
procure, obtain.

ācrīter, *adv.* (ācer), sharply,
eagerly, vigorously, courage-
ously. *Comp.* ācrius, *sup.*
ācerrīmē.

actuārius, a, um, *adj.* (ago),
easily moved, swift.

actus, a, um. See āgo.

ācūtus, a, um, *adj.* (ācūo),
sharp; pointed.

ād, *prep. with the accus.*, to,
towards, in, at, among, near;
till; according to, against,
after; with, about (*with nu-*
merals), for.

ād-actus, a, um. See ād-īgo.

ād-aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to equal, make equal; to
level with.

ād-āmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
love greatly, take a liking
to.

ād-augēo, ēre, auxī, auctum,
tr., to increase, enlarge, aug-
ment.

ad-dīco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to assign, surrender ; to devote.

ad-do, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to add, join, give to.

ad-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring, conduct, convey to ; to induce, influence ; to draw towards, draw tight.

ād-emptus, a, um. *See* ād-īmo.

ād-ěo, *adv.* (ad + is), so, so far, so much, to such a degree.

ād-ěo, ěre, īvī *or* iī, ětum, *intr.*, to go to, approach ; to attack, encounter.

ād-eptus, a, um. *See* ād-īpiscor.

ād-ěquīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to ride up to *or* toward.

adf-. *See* aff-.

ad-fōre. *See* ad-sum.

adg-. *See* agg-.

ād-haereo, ěre, haesī, haesum, *intr.*, to adhere, stick to.

ād-hībeo, ěre, uī, ětum, *tr.* (ad + hāběo), to bring in, admit, call in, receive ; to use, apply, employ.

ād-hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to exhort, encourage, incite.

ād-huc, *adv.*, until now, hitherto, thus far, as yet, still.

ad-iāceo, ěre, cui, —, *intr.*, to lie adjacent, border upon.

adīcio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (ad + iācio), to cast, hurl, *or* throw to ; to add *or* join to.

ād-igo, ěre, ēgī, actum, *tr.* (ad + ago), to drive in, im-

pel ; to bring, conduct ; to force, compel.

ād-īmo, ěre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.* (ad + emo), to take away, remove, deprive of.

ād-īpiscor, cī, eptus, *tr. dep.* (ad + apiscor), to obtain, acquire, attain.

ād-ītus, ūs, *m.* (adeo), approach, access.

ad-iūdīco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to adjudge, award, assign.

ad-iungo, ěre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to join, add *or* unite to.

ad-iūtor, ōris, *m.* (adiuvo), a helper, aid, assistant.

ad-iūvo, āre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, to assist, help, aid.

adl-. *See* all-.

ad-mātūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to mature, ripen ; to hasten.

ad-mīnister, trī, *m.* (ad + manus), a servant, assistant, attendant.

ad-mīnistro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to serve, attend ; to conduct, direct, manage, guide.

ad-mīror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to admire ; wonder at.

ad-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to admit, allow ; to commit. **Equo admisso**, with horse at full speed.

ad-mōdum, *adv.* (ad + modus), quite, very, exceedingly ; *with numerals*, about, at least.

ad-mōneo, ěre, uī, ětum, *tr.*, to admonish, warn, advise ; to remind.

ād-ōlēsko, ěre, ōlēvī, ultum, *intr.*, to grow up, mature.
 ād-ōrīor, īrī, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to attack, assail; to attempt.
 adp-. *See* app-.
 adr-. *See* arr-.
 ads-. *See* in general ass-.
 ad-scisco, ěre, scīvī, scītum, *tr.*, to take, receive, admit, unite.
 ad-sisto, ěre, stītī, —, *intr.*, to stand by or near, be present, appear.
 ad-sum, esse, adfuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to be present or at hand; to aid, assist.
 ādūlēscēns, tis, *m. and f.*, a youth; a young man or woman.
 ādūlēscēntia, ae, *f.*, youth.
 ādūlēscēntūlus, ī, *m. dim.*, a young man, a youth.
 ad-ventus, ūs, *m.*, arrival, approach, coming.
 adversārius, a, um, *adj.*, hostile, contrary to. Adversārius, ī, *m.*, an opponent, enemy.
 ad-versus, a, um, *adj.* (adverto), opposite, facing, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; opposed, hostile. Flumine adverso, up stream. Res adversae, adversity.
 ad-versus, *prep. with the accus.*, against, toward, opposite to.
 ad-vertō, ěre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to turn to or toward. Animum advertere, to turn one's mind to = to observe, notice.

ad-vōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call to; to summon.
 ad-vōlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fly to, hasten to, rush to or upon.
 aedificium, ī, *n.*, a building, house, edifice.
 aedifico, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (aedes + faciō), to build, construct, erect.
 aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*, sick, feeble, faint, weary.
 aegrē, *adv.* (aeger), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.* aegrius, *sup.* aeger-rimē.
 aequālīter, *adv.* (aequalis), equally, uniformly.
 aequinoctium, ī, *n.* (aequus + nox), the equinox, *i.e.* when day and night are of equal length.
 aequītās, ātis, *f.*, equality, justice, equity; evenness; moderation.
 aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make equal; to level.
 aequus, a, um, *adj.*, even, level; just, right; favorable, advantageous; aequo Marte, in an equal contest. Aequiore animo, with the greater equanimity.
 aerārius, a, um, *adj.* (aes), of copper, brass or bronze.
 Aerāria, ae, *f.*, a copper mine.
 aes, aeris, *n.*, brass, copper; bronze; money. Aes alienum (another's money) = debt.

aestās, ātis, *f.*, summer.

aestimātio, ōnis, *f.*, valuation, estimate; value, worth.

aestīmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (aes), to estimate, value, esteem, regard, determine.

aestīvus, a, um, *adj.* (aestas), of summer, summer.

aestūārīum, ī, *n.* (aestus), an estuary, creek, inlet, marsh.

aestus, ūs, *m.*, heat, burning heat; the tide; the surge.

aetās, ātis, *f.*, age; life.

aeternus, a, um, *adj.*, eternal, everlasting, perpetual.

af-fēro, ferre, attŭlī, allātum, *irr. tr.* (ad + fēro), to bring to, offer, present; to afford, occasion, produce, cause.

af-ficio, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (ad + fācio), to affect, influence, move; to show, treat, visit, etc., *according to the connection, by which, in general, the meaning of this verb is to be determined.*

af-fīgo, ěre, xī, xum, *tr.* (ad + fīgo), to fix to, fasten to, attach to.

af-fingo, ěre, inxī, ictum, *tr.* (ad + fingo), to form, devise, invent; to add falsely.

af-fīnītās, ātis, *f.* (affinis), relationship by marriage, connection.

af-firmātio, ōnis, *f.* (affirmo), affirmation, declaration, assertion.

af-fixus, a, um. *See* af-fīgo.

afflicto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*

freq. (afflīgo), to agitate, toss, shatter, afflict, damage.

af-flictus, a, um. *See* af-flīgo.

af-flīgo, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.* (ad + flīgo), to strike, beat *or* dash against; to shatter, damage, overthrow, prostrate.

af-fōre, af-fūtūrus, af-fōrem, *See* ad-sum.

Afrīcus, ī, *m.* (*sc.* ventus), the southwest wind.

āger, grī, *m.*, a field, land, territory, country.

agger, ěris, *m.* (ad + gěro), a mound, rampart.

ag-grĕdior, ī, essus, *tr. dep.* (ad + grĕdior), to go to, go against; to attack; to attempt.

ag-grĕgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ad + grĕgo), to collect, to join, attach, ally.

āgīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (āgo), to drive, follow; to debate, discuss, deliberate.

agmen, īnis, *n.* (ago), an army on the march, a march, line of march, a troop, band.

Primum agmen, the van, front; novissimum agmen, the rear.

āgo, ěre, ěgī, actum, *tr.*, to drive, conduct, lead, carry off; to move, put in motion; to do, treat, live, act, manage, transact, pass, spend. **Gratias agere**, to thank, return thanks.

agrī-cultūra, ae, *f.* (ager + colo), agriculture.

ălăcer, *cris, cre, adj.*, lively, cheerful, spirited, animated, eager, joyous.

ălăcritās, *ātis, f.*, liveliness, alacrity, eagerness, ardor.

ălārīus, *a, um, adj.* (āla), of a wing, stationed on the wings.

Ālārīi, *ōrum, m. pl.*, the auxiliaries, *who were stationed on the wings.*

albus, *a, um, adj.*, white.

Plumbum album, *tin.*

alces, *is, f.*, the elk.

ălīās, *adv.* (ălīus), at another time, otherwise. *Alias . . . alias* = at one time . . . at another time ; *or*, sometimes . . . sometimes.

ălīēno, *āre, āvi, ātum, tr.* (alienus), to alienate, estrange ; to deprive of reason, drive mad.

ălīēnus, *a, am, adj.* (alius), of another, another's ; unfavorable ; foreign, irrelevant.

ălīō, *adv.* (alius), in another place, elsewhere, to another place.

ălīquamdīū, *adv.*, for some time.

ălīquandō, *adv.*, at some time, sometimes ; at length.

ălīquantō, *adv.*, somewhat, a little.

ălīquantus, *a, um, adj.* (alius), somewhat, a little, some.

ălī-quī, *qua, quod, indef. adj. pron.* (alius), some, any.

ălīquis, *qua, quid, indef. pron.* (alius + quis), some one, any one, some, any, something.

ălīquot, *indef. num. adj. indecl.* (alius + quot), some, several, a few.

ălīter, *adv.* (alius), otherwise, in a different manner. *Aliter ac*, otherwise than.

ălīus, *a, ud, gen. āliūs, adj.*, another, other. *Alius . . . alius*, one . . . another. *Alii . . . alii*, some . . . others.

al-lātus, *a, um. See af-fēro.*

al-līcio, *ēre, lexī, lectum, tr.* (ad + lacio), to allure, entice, attract.

ălo, *ēre, ălūi, ălītum or altum, tr.*, to nourish, support, sustain, maintain, foster.

Alpēs, *īum, f. pl.*, the Alps.

alter, *ēra, ērum, gen. altērīus, adj.*, one of two, the other, the second. *Alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other. *Altērī . . . altērī*, the one party . . . the other party.

alternus, *a, um, adj.*, one after another, mutual, alternate, by turns.

altītūdo, *īnis, f.*, height ; depth.

altus, *a, um, adj.* (alo), high, tall, lofty ; deep. *Altum, ī, n. (sc. mare)*, the deep, the sea, deep water.

ălūta, *ae, f.*, soft leather.

ambactus, *ī, m.*, a vassal.

ambo, *ae, o, num. adj.*, both.

āmentia, *ae, f.* (a + mens), madness, folly.

āmentum, *ī, n.*, a strap or thong, by means of which javelins and other missiles were thrown with greater force.

amfractus. *See* anfractus.

ămīcītia, ae, *f.*, friendship, alliance, league.

ămīcus, a, um, *adj.* (amo), friendly.

ămīcus, ī, *m.*, a friend.

ā-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* to send away, dismiss; to lose.

āmor, ōris, *m.*, love, affection.

amplē, *adv.* (amplus), amply, abundantly, largely. *Comp.*

amplius, more, further; *super.* amplissimē.

amplīfico, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (amplus + fācio), to enlarge, increase, extend.

amplītūdo, īnis, *f.*, greatness, extent, grandeur.

amplus, a, um, *adj.*, large, great, ample, extensive, splendid, illustrious, noble. *Comp.* amplius, more, farther.

an, *conj.*, or, or whether. *It is chiefly used in introducing the second member of an alternative question. An may sometimes be omitted in translation.*

anceps, ipītis, *adj.* (am + caput), double, twofold, doubtful.

ancōra, ae, *f.*, an anchor.

anfractus, ūs, *m.* (am + frango), a turning, bending, circuit, circuitous route.

angŭlus ī, *m.*, a corner, angle.

angustē, *adv.*, closely, narrowly; sparingly, scantily.

angustiae, ārum, *f. pl.*, narrowness, a narrow pass; difficulty, perplexity, strait.

angustus, a, um, *adj.* (ango), narrow, close, contracted; steep.

ănīma, ae, *f.*, air, breath; life, soul, spirit.

ănīm-ad-vertō, ěre, tī, sum, *tr.* (animus + ad + verto), to turn the mind to, *i.e.* to notice, observe, attend; to punish.

ănīmal, ālis, *n.* (anima), an animal.

ănīmus, ī, *m.*, the mind, soul, consciousness; will, design, intention; feeling, spirit, courage, heart.

annōtīnus, a, um, *adj.* (annus), of a year, a year old.

annus, ī, *m.*, a year.

annŭus, a, um, *adj.*, yearly, annual.

anser, ěris, *m.*, a goose.

antē, *prep.* with the accus., before, above, beyond.

antē, *adv.*, before, previously.

antēā, *adv.*, before, formerly.

antē-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum, *tr. and intr.*, to go before, precede; to surpass, excel.

antē-cursor, ōris, *m.*, a fore-runner, advanced guard, pioneer.

antē-fēro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *tr.*, to bear before, place before, prefer.

antemna, ae, *f.*, a sail-yard.

antē-pōno, ěre, pōsuī, pōsītum, *tr.*, to place before, prefer.

antē-vertō, ěre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to precede, anticipate; to prefer, place before.

antīquitus, *adv.*, anciently, in ancient times.

antīquus, *a, um, adj.* (ante), old, ancient.

Ap., for Appius.

ăpěrĭo, *ire, ěruī, ertum, tr.*, to open, uncover, disclose.

ăpertē, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

ăpertus, *a, um, adj.* (aperio), open, uncovered, unprotected, exposed.

Ăpollo, *īnis, m.*, son of Jupiter and Latōna, and god of prophecy, music, archery, poetry, and medicine.

ap-păro, *ăre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (ad + păro), to prepare, put in order; to procure, provide, furnish.

appello, *ăre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to call, name; to address, accost.

ap-pello, *ěre, pŭlī, pulsum, tr.* (ad + pello), to drive to; bring to; to make for, steer to; to land.

ap-pĕto, *ěre, ĭvī or iī, ĭtum, tr.* (ad + peto), to seek for, strive for, aim at; to approach, draw near.

ap-plĭco, *ăre, āvī, ātum (or plĭcuī, plĭcĭtum), tr.* (ad + plico), to join or attach to; to bring in contact with; se applicare ad, to lean against.

ap-porto, *ăre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (ad + porta), to carry, convey or conduct to.

ap-prōbo, *ăre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (ad + prōbo), to approve, commend.

ap-prōpinquo, *ăre, āvī, ātum, intr.*, to approach, draw near.

ap-pulsus, *a, um.* See **appello**.

Aprilis, *e, adj.* (ăpĕrio), of April.

Aprilis, *is, m. (sc. mensis)*, April.

aptus, *a, um, adj.*, suitable, adapted, fitted.

ăpud, *prep. with the accus.*, at, near, with, by, among, before, in the presence of.

ăqua, *ae, f.*, water.

ăquătio, *ōnis, f.*, watering, procuring water.

ăquĭla, *ae, f.*, an eagle; the principal standard of the Roman legion; while **signa** were the standards of cohorts.

ăquĭlifer, *ĕrī, m.* (ăquĭla + fĕro), a standard-bearer.

Ăquĭtānus, *a, um, adj.*, Aquitanian. **Ăquĭtānus**, *ī, m.*, an Aquitanian.

arbĭter, *trī, m.*, an arbitrator, umpire, judge.

arbĭtrĭum, *ī, n.*, the decision of an arbitrator; a decision, determination; will, pleasure.

arbĭtror, *ārī, ātus, tr. dep.* (arbĭter), to think, suppose, judge.

arbor and arbos, *ōris, f.*, a tree.

arcesso, *ěre, ĭvī, ĭtum, tr.*, to call, send for, summon, invite. *Inf. pass.*, **arcessĭrī**.

arctē or artē, *adv.* (arctus), closely, tightly, narrowly.

arctus *or artus*, a, um, *adj.*

(arceo), close, dense, narrow.

ardĕo, ěre, sĭ, sum, *intr.*, to burn, be on fire, blaze; to be eager, impatient; to be inflamed, excited.

ardŭus, a, um, *adj.*, high, lofty, steep; arduous.

argentum, ĭ, n., silver.

argilla, ae, *f.*, white clay, potter's clay.

āřidus, a, um, *adj.* (areo) dry, arid, parched. **Āřidum**, ĭ, n., dry land. **Ex arido** (*sc. loco*), on dry land.

āřiēs, ětis, *m.*, a ram; a battering ram; a buttress, prop.

arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons; implements; tackling.

armāmenta, ōrum, *n. pl.*, implements, utensils; the tackle of a ship, cables, rigging, etc.

armātūra, ae, *f.*, armor, equipment.

armātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (armo), armed, equipped.

Armātus, ĭ, *m.*, an armed man, soldier.

armo, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to arm, equip, rig.

ar-rĭpio, ěre, ĭpuĭ, eptum, *tr.* (ad + rĭpio), to seize, appropriate, lay hold of, catch.

ar-rŏganter, *adv.* (arrogans), arrogantly, haughtily, proudly.

ar-rŏgantia, ae, *f.*, arrogance, haughtiness, insolence.

ars, artis, *f.*, art, faculty, quality; skill, method, way; contrivance, stratagem.

artĕ, *adv.* See arctĕ.

artĭcŭlus, ĭ, *m.* (artus), a joint, knot.

artĭficiŭm, ĭ, *n.* (artifex), art, skill, ingenuity; craft, artifice.

artus, a, um. See arctus.

Arvernus, a, um, *adj.*, Arvernian. **Arvernus**, ĭ, *m.*, an Arvernian.

arx, arcis, *f.*, a height; a fortress, citadel, stronghold.

a-scendo, ěre, dĭ, sum, *intr.* (ad + scando), to ascend, go up, mount, climb.

a-scensus, ūs, *m.*, an ascent, acclivity.

a-spectus, ūs, *m.* (aspicio), a seeing, look; the sight; looks, aspect, appearance.

asper, ěra, ěrum, *adj.*, rough, uneven; harsh, severe; cruel, wild.

as-sĭdŭus, a, um, *adj.* (assĭdĕo), continual, incessant, unremitting; diligent.

as-suĕ-fācio, ěre, fĕci, factum, *tr.* (assuĕtus + fācio), to accustom.

as-suesco, ěre, ěvĭ, ětum, *intr.* (ad + suesco), to accustom one's self; to be accustomed.

at, *conj.*, but, yet.

at-que, *conj.*, and, than, as.

at-texo, ěre, xuĭ, xtum, *tr.* (ad + texo), to weave on, join, add.

at-tingo, ěre, tĭgĭ, tactum, *tr.* (ad + tango), to touch, border on; to reach, arrive at.

at-tribũo, ěre, uĩ, ũtum, *tr.*
(ad + tribuo), to assign, at-tribute, bestow.

at-tŭlĩ. *See* af-fěro.

auctor, ōris, *m.* (augeo), an author, originator, maker, adviser, voucher, promoter.

auctōritās, ātis, *f.*, authority, power, influence, reputation.

auctus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (augeo), increased, enlarged.

audācia, ae, *f.* (audax), boldness; audacity, impudence.

audacter *and* audācĭter, *adv.*, boldly, courageously; audaciously. *Comp.* audācĭus, *super.* audācissimē.

auděo, ěre, ausus, *intr. half dep.*, to dare, venture, attempt.

audio, ĭre, ĭvĩ, ĭtum, *tr.*, to hear. Dicto audiens = obedient.

audĭtio, ōnis, *f.*, hearing, hearsay, rumor, report.

augěo, ěre, auxĩ, auctum, *tr.*, to increase, enlarge; to improve, advance, promote.

Aulus, ĭ, *m.*, a praenōmen.

aurĩga, ae, *m.*, a charioteer.

auris, is, *f.*, the ear.

ausus, a, um. *See* auděo.

aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but; moreover.

autumnus, ĭ, *m.* (augeo), autumn.

auxĩ. *See* augěo.

auxĩlĩaris, e, *adj.*, auxiliary, aiding. Auxĩlĩares, ĭum,

m. pl., auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

auxĩlĩor, ārĩ, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to assist, help, aid, succor.

auxĩlĩum, ĭ, *n.* (augeo), assistance, help, aid; resource, remedy. Auxĩlĩa, ōrum, *n. pl.*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops.

Avārĩcensis, e, *adj.* (Avārĩcum), of Avarĩcum.

āvārĩtia, ae, *f.* (āvārus), avarice, covetousness.

ā-věho, ěre, vexĩ, vectum, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey away.

a-versus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (averto), turned away, routed.

ā-verto, ěre, tĩ, sum, *tr.*, to turn away, avert, remove, alienate.

āvis, is, *f.*, a bird.

āvus, ĭ, *m.*, a grandfather.

B

Bālěāris, e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic islands.

baltěus, ĭ, *m.*, a belt, sword-belt, girdle.

barbārus, a, um, *adj.*, barbarous, foreign. Barbārus, ĭ, *m.*, a barbarian, neither a Greek nor a Roman, a foreigner.

bellĩcōsus, a, um, *adj.*, warlike.

bellĩcus, a, um, *adj.*, of war, warlike.

bello, āre, āvĩ, ātum, *intr.*, to wage war, carry on war.

bellum, ĭ, *n.*, war.

běně, *adv.*, well, successfully,

happily, prosperously. *Comp.*

mēlius, *super. optimē*.

bēnē-fīcium, *ī, n.* (bene + fācio), a kindness, favor, benefit, service.

bēnē-vōlentia, *ae, f.* (bene + volo), benevolence, goodwill, kindness, friendly disposition.

bī-dūm, *ī, n.* (bis + dies), two days.

bī-ennīum, *ī, n.* (bis + annus), two years.

bīnī, *ae, a, distr. num. adj.* (bis), two by two, two each, two.

bī-partītō, *adv.* (bis + partio), in two divisions *or* lines.

bī-pēdālis, *e, adj.* (bis + pes), two feet long, wide *or* thick.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice.

bōnītās, *ātis, f.*, goodness, excellence.

bōnus, *a, um, adj.*, good, excellent; friendly. *Comp. mēlior, super. optimus.* **Bōnum**, *ī, n.*, a good, advantage, benefit. **Bōna**, *ōrum, n. pl.*, goods, property.

bōs, *bōvis, m. and f.*, an ox, cow.

brācchīum, *ī, n.*, the arm.

brēvis, *e, adj.*, short, brief. **Brevī** (*sc. tempore*), in a short time.

brēvītās, *ātis, f.*, shortness.

brēvīter, *adv.*, shortly, briefly.

Britannicus, *a, um, adj.* (Britannia), of Britain, British.

brūma, *ae, f.* (brevis), the winter solstice; winter.

C.

C = centum, a hundred.

C. for Gaius.

cācūmen, *īnis, n.*, the top, end, extremity, point.

cādāver, *ēris, n.* (cado), a dead body, corpse.

cādo, *ēre, cēcīdī, cāsum, intr.*, to fall, die, perish.

caedes, *is, f.* (caedo), a cutting; murder, slaughter.

caedo, *ēre, cēcīdī, caesum, tr.*, to cut, cut down, fell; to beat, kill, destroy.

caelestis, *e, adj.* (caelum), celestial, heavenly. **Caelestes**, *ium, m. pl.*, the gods.

caelum, *ī, n.*, heaven.

caerīmōnīa, *ae, f.*, a religious ceremony, a sacred rite.

caerūlēus, *a, um, adj.*, blue, dark blue, azure.

caespes, *ītis, m.*, a sod, turf.

caesus, *a, um.* *See caedo.*

cālāmītās, *ātis, f.*, calamity, disaster, damage.

callīdus, *a, um, adj.* (calleo), skilful, shrewd, cunning.

cālo, *ōnis, m.*, a soldier's servant.

campester, *tris, tre, adj.* (campus), of a plain; level, flat, plain, on the plain.

campus, *ī, m.*, a plain, field.

cāno, *ēre, cēcīnī, cantum, tr.*, to sing; to sound, give a signal.

cāper, *prī, m.*, a goat.

cāpillus, *ī, m.*, the hair.

cāpio, *ēre, cēpī, captum, tr.*,

to take, occupy, receive, obtain; to choose, select; to entrap, ensnare, captivate; to reach. **Consilium capere**, to adopt a plan, form a resolution.

căpră or **căprăa**, *ae, f.*, a she-goat, a roe.

captivus, *a, um, adj.* (**căpio**), captive, captured. **Captivus**, *ī, m.*, a prisoner.

captus, *ūs, m.*, capacity, understanding, notion, standard.

căput, *ītis, n.*, the head; a person, soul; life; mouth of a river; fountain, source.

căreo, *ēre, uī, itum, intr.*, to be without, want, lack; to be deprived of; to be free from.

cărăina, *ae, f.*, the keel of a ship.

căro, *carnis, f.*, flesh.

carpo, *ēre, psī, ptum, tr.*, to pull, pluck; to pluck at, carp at, revile, slander, upbraid.

carrus, *ī, m. and carrum, ī, n.*, a wagon, cart.

cărus, *a, um, adj.*, dear, beloved.

căsa, *ae, f.*, a hut, cottage.

căsăus, *ī, m.*, cheese.

Cassiānus, *a, um, adj.* (**Cassius**), with Cassius, Cassian.

cassis, *īdis, f.*, a helmet.

castellum, *ī, n. dim.* (**castrum**), a castle, fort, stronghold, fortress.

castigo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to punish, chastise, reprove.

castra, *ōrum, n. pl.* (**castrum**), a camp, encampment; a day's march.

căsus, *ūs, m.* (**cădo**), a fall; chance, accident, misfortune, calamity; an occurrence.

cătēna, *ae, f.*, a chain, fetter.

causa, *ae, f.*, a cause, reason; a case, suit at law; pretence, pretext; condition, situation.

Causă, for the sake, for the purpose; on account.

cautē, *adv.* (**căveo**), cautiously, prudently, warily.

cautus, *a, um, partic. adj.* (**căveo**), cautious, careful, wary.

căveo, *ēre, cāvī, cautum, intr.*, to be on one's guard; to beware, take care; to take security.

cēdo, *ēre, cessī, cessum, intr.*, to yield, retreat, withdraw, retire.

cēler, *ēris, ēre, adj.*, swift, speedy.

cēlērītās, *ātis, f.*, swiftness, rapidity, speed, celerity.

cēlērīter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly, rapidly. *Comp.* **cēlērīus**, *super.* **cēlerrīmē**.

cēlo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to conceal, hide.

cēnseo, *ēre, uī, sum, tr.*, to think, judge; to decree, ordain, determine.

census, *ūs, m.* (**censeo**), a census, enumeration.

centum, *num. adj.*, a hundred.

centūrīo, *ōnis, m.*, a centurion.

cēpī. *See* cāpio.

cerno, ěre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*,
to see, discern; to decree,
decide, determine.

certāmen, ĩnis, *n.* (certo), a
contest, strife, battle.

certē, *adv.* (certus), certainly,
assuredly; at least.

certo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to
contend, strive; to attempt.

certus, a, um, *adj.* (cerno), cer-
tain, sure, definite; trusty.

Certior fiērī, to be informed.

cervus, ī, *m.*, a stag; cervi,
forked stakes, *resembling a*
stag's horns.

cētērus, a, um, *adj.*, the rest, the
other, the remainder.

cībārius, a, um, *adj.* (cibus), of
or for food. Cībāria, ōrum,
n. pl., food, provisions.

cĭbus, ī, *m.*, food; provender.

cingo, ěre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to
gird, surround, encompass,
encircle.

cippus, ī, *m.*, a sharp stake, post,
palisade.

circā, *prep.* with the *accus.*,
around, about.

circĭnus, ī, *m.*, a pair of com-
passes.

circĭter, *prep.* with *accus.*, about,
near.

circĭter, *adv.*, about, near.

circŭěo, ĩre. *See* circuměo.

circŭĭtus, ūs, *m.*, a circuit, cir-
cumference; a way around.

circum, *prep.* with the *accus.*,
around, about.

circum, *adv.*, around, about.

circum-cĭdo, ěre, cĭdī, cĭsum,

tr. (circum + caedo), to cut
around, trim.

circum-cĭsus, a, um, *partic.*
adj. (circumcĭdo), cut around,
i.e. steep, precipitous.

circum-clŭdo, ěre, sĭ, sum, *tr.*,
to shut in, hem in, surround,
invest.

circum-do, dāre, dĕdī, dātum,
tr., to place around; to sur-
round, encircle.

circum-dŭco, ěre, xĭ, ctum, *tr.*,
to lead *or* draw around.

circum-ěo, ĩre, ĩvī *or* iĭ, ĭtum,
tr. and intr., to go around;
to encompass, surround.

circum-fundo, ěre, fŭdī, fŭsum,
tr., to pour around; to sur-
round, encompass; (*passive*)
to flock around, collect.

circum-ĭcĭo, ěre, iĕcĭ, iectum,
tr., to cast, throw *or* place
around.

circum-mitto, ěre, mĭsĭ, mis-
sum, *tr.*, to send around.

circum-mŭnĭo, ĩre, ĩvī, ĭtum
tr., to fortify all around.

circum-plector, ī, plexus, *tr.*
dep., to embrace, surround,
inclose.

circum-sisto, ěre, stĕtĭ, —, *tr.*
and intr., to stand around;
to surround, beset.

circum-spĭcĭo, ěre, exĭ, ectum,
tr. and intr., to look around;
to weigh, consider.

circum-sto, āre, stĕtĭ, —, *tr. and*
intr., to stand around; to sur-
round.

circum-vallo, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr., to surround with a ram-

- part, circumvallate; to blockade, invest.
- circum-věhor**, *ī*, **vectus**, *intr. dep.* (*to be carried around*=), to ride around, sail around.
- circum-věňio**, *īre*, **věňi**, **ventum**, *tr.*, to come around; to surround, encompass, invest; to deceive, circumvent.
- cis**, *prep. with the accus.*, on this side of.
- Cīs-alpīnus**, *a, am, adj.*, cisalpine, on this side of the Alps.
- Cis-rhēnānus**, *a, um, adj.* (*Rhēnus*), on this side of the Rhine.
- cītātus**, *a, um, partic. adj.* (*cīto*), urged, hurried; swift, rapid.
- cītěrīor**, *us, gen. ōris, adj. comp.* (*cis*), hither, nearer.
- cītŏ**, *adv.* (*cīeo*), quickly, rapidly. *Comp. cītīus, super. cītis-sīmē.*
- cīto**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to rouse, excite; to urge, summon.
- cītrā**, *prep. with the accus.* (*cis*), on this side of.
- cītrŏ**, *adv.* (*cis*), hither. **Ultro citroque**, hither and thither, to and fro.
- cīvis**, *is, m. and f.*, a citizen.
- cīvītās**, *ātis, f.*, a state; citizenship.
- clam**, *adv.*, secretly, privately.
- clāmīto**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr. freq.* (*clāmo*), to cry out, exclaim.
- clāmo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to cry out, exclaim.
- clāmor**, *ōris, m.*, a loud cry, a shout, clamor, noise.
- clandestīnus**, *a, um, adj.* (*clam*), secret, hidden, private.
- clārē**, *adv.*, clearly, distinctly.
- clārus**, *a, um, adj.*, clear, distinct, loud; distinguished, renowned, illustrious.
- classis**, *is, f.*, a fleet.
- claudio**, *ěre, sī, sum, tr.*, to shut, close, inclose, conclude. **Agmen claudere**, to close the line, bring up the rear.
- clāvus**, *ī, m.*, a nail.
- clēmenter**, *adv.*, gently, mildly.
- clēmentīa**, *ae, f.*, mildness, clemency, mercy.
- cliens**, *tis, m. and f.*, a client, retainer, dependent, vassal.
- clīentēla**, *ae, f.*, clientship, protection, alliance; a client.
- clīvus**, *ī, m.*, an ascent, hill, acclivity.
- Cn.** for *Gnæus, m.*, a *praenōmen*.
- cŏ-ăcervo**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (*con + acervo*), to heap up, pile up, accumulate, collect.
- cŏ-actus**, *ūs, m.* (*cogo*), constraint, compulsion.
- cŏ-actus**, *a, um.* *See cōgo.*
- cŏ-agmento**, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (*cogo*), to join together, connect.
- cŏēgī**. *See cōgo.*
- cŏ-ěmo**, *ěre, ēmī, emptum, tr.* (*con + emo*), to buy up, purchase.
- cŏ-ěo**, *īre, īvī or iī, ĭtum, intr.* (*con + eo*), to go or come together; to meet, assemble, collect.

coepī, coepisse, *defect. v.*, I began, commenced.

coeptus, a, um, *from coepī*.

cō-ercēo, ēre, uī, ītum, *tr.* (con + arceo), to embrace, confine; to restrain, repress, curb.

cōgītātio, ōnis, *f.*, a thinking; thought, reflection; design, project.

cōgīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + agīto), to think, reflect upon, meditate, design, intend.

co-gnātio, ōnis, *f.* (con + nascor), relationship (*by blood*), connection; kindred, relatives.

co-gnosco, ěre, ōvī, ītum, *tr.* (con + nosco), to ascertain, learn; to investigate, examine; to know.

cō-go, ěre, cōēgī, cōactum, *tr.* (con + ago), to drive together, collect, assemble; to force, compel.

cōhors, tis, *f.*, a cohort; *there were ten cohorts in a legion.*

cō-hortātio, ōnis, *f.*, exhortation, encouragement.

cō-hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (con + hortor), to exhort, encourage.

cō-īre. *See co-eo.*

col-lātus, a, um. *See con-fĕro.*

col-laudo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + laudo), to praise, commend, extol.

col-lĕga, ae, *m.*, a colleague.

col-līgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + līgo), to bind together, fasten, connect.

col-līgo, ěre, ēgī, ectum, *tr.* (con + lĕgo), to collect, assemble; to obtain, acquire.

collis, is, *m.*, a hill, ascent.

col-lōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + loco), to put, place, set up, erect; to station, arrange.

col-lōquīum, ī, *n.*, conference, interview, conversation.

col-lōquor, ī, cūtus, *intr. dep.* (con + loquor), to converse, confer, speak with.

cōlo, ěre, uī, cultum, *tr.*, to cultivate, till; to attend to; to worship, revere, honor.

cōlōnīa, ae, *f.* (cōlōnus), a colony, settlement.

cōlor, ōris, *m.*, color, complexion, tint.

combūro, ěre, bussī, bustum, *tr.* (con + ūro), to burn up.

cōm-es, ītis, *m. and f.* (con + eo), a companion, comrade, associate.

cōminus. *See comminus.*

cōm-ītīum, ī, *n.* (con + eo), a part of the Roman forum.

Cōmītīa, ōrum, *n. pl.*, the comitia, assembly of the Roman people in the Comitium for electing magistrates; election.

cōmītor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (comes), to accompany, attend, follow.

com-mĕātus, ūs, *m.* (commeo), a passage, trip; provisions, supplies; a furlough.

com-mĕmōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mĕmōro), to call

- to mind, remind ; to recount, relate.
- com-mendo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mando), to commit, commend, intrust.
- com-měo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (con + měo), to go, resort ; to come and go, frequent.
- com-mīnus**, *adv.* (con + manus), hand to hand, in close combat.
- com-missūra**, ae, *f.* (committo), a joining, juncture, joint.
- com-mitto**, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (con + mitto), to join together, unite ; to commit ; intrust ; to allow, permit, risk. **Committere proelium**, to join *or* commence battle.
- com-mōdē**, *adv.* (commōdus), fitly, conveniently, suitably, well, easily.
- com-mōdum**, ī, *n.* (commōdus), advantage, profit, utility, convenience.
- com-mōdus**, a, um, *adj.*, convenient, suitable, advantageous, commodious, easy, favorable, agreeable.
- com-mōně-fācio**, ěre, fēcī, factum, *tr.* (con + mōneo + fācio), to remind, admonish.
- com-mōror**, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (con + moror), to stop, linger, stay, delay.
- com-mōvēo**, ěre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.* (con + moveo), to move, affect, influence ; to excite, alarm.
- com-mūnīco**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (commūnis), to commu-
- nicate, impart, share with ; to concert.
- com-mūnio**, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.* (con + munio), to fortify, secure.
- com-mūnis**, e, *adj.* (con + munus), common, general, ordinary.
- com-mūtātīo**, ōnis, *f.*, a change.
- com-mūto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + mūto), to change, alter, exchange.
- com-pāro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (compar), to compare.
- com-pāro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + pāro), to prepare, provide, procure, acquire.
- com-pello**, ěre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.* (con + pello), to drive, together, collect ; to compel, force, constrain.
- com-pendīum**, ī, *n.* (con + pendo), gain, profit, advantage.
- com-pěrīo**, īre, pěrī, pertum, *tr.* (con + pěrīo), to learn, ascertain, discover.
- com-plector**, ī, exus, *tr. dep.* (con + plecto), to embrace, encircle, surround, enclose.
- com-plěo**, ěre, ěvī, ětum, *tr.* (con + pleo), to fill, complete, finish.
- com-plexus**, ūs, *m.*, an embrace, eucircling, compass.
- com-plūres**, a *or* ĩa, *gen. ĩum*, *adj.* (con + plus), several, many.
- com-pōno**, ěre, pōsuī, pōsītum, *tr.* (con + pono), to put *or* place together ; to compose,

- arrange, order; to build, construct.
- com-porto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + porto), to bring together, convey, collect.
- com-prēhendo**, ěre, di, sum, *tr.* (con + prēhendo), to seize, arrest; to take, lay hold of; to embrace, comprehend.
- com-prōbo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + prōbo), to approve, sanction, make good.
- com-pulsus**, a, um. *See* **compello**.
- cōnātum**, ī, *n.* (cōnor), an attempt, undertaking, effort.
- cōnātus**, ūs, *m.* (cōnor), an attempt, undertaking, endeavor.
- con-cēdo**, ěre, cessī, cessum, *tr. and intr.*, to retire, withdraw; to yield, grant; to permit, allow.
- con-certo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to contend, strive.
- con-cessus**, ūs, *m.* (concēdo), permission, leave.
- con-cīdo**, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.* (con + caedo), to cut to pieces, cut down, destroy; to cut up, divide.
- con-cīdo**, ěre, cīdī, —, *intr.* (con + cādo), to fall, perish.
- concīlio**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to gain *or* win over; to gain, procure, obtain.
- concīlium**, ī, *n.*, an assembly, council, meeting.
- con-cīpio**, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (con + cāpio), to take, receive, contract; to conceive, comprehend.
- con-cīsus**, a, um. *See* **concīdo**.
- con-cīto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to excite, arouse, incite, instigate, urge.
- con-clāmo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to cry out, call out, shout, exclaim.
- con-clūdo**, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to shut up, confine, inclose.
- con-crēpo**, āre, uī, itum, *intr.*, to make a noise, rattle, clash.
- con-curro**, ěre, currī *or* cūcurrī, cursum, *intr.*, to run *or* rush together, meet; engage in fight, charge; to run *or* hasten to; to concur.
- con-curso**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.*, to run to and fro, run up and down.
- con-cursus**, ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge; collision.
- con-demno**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + damno), to condemn, charge with, accuse.
- condīcio**, ōnis, *f.*, condition, state, quality; stipulation, terms.
- con-dōno**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to pardon, forgive, bestow.
- con-dūco**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring together; to conduct; to collect; to hire.
- con-fectus**, a, um. *See* **confīcio**.
- con-fercio**, ěre, fersī, fertum, *tr.* (con + farcio), to press together, cram, crowd.

con-fĕro, ferre, contŭlī, conlā-
tum, tr., to bring together,
 collect; to compare; to as-
 scribe, impute; to defer; **se**
conferre, to betake one's
 self.

con-fertus, a, um, partic. adj.
 (confercio), crowded, dense,
 thick, close.

confestim, adv., immediately.

con-fĭcio, ĕre, fĕcī, fectum, tr.

(con + fĕcio), to make, ac-
 complish, perform, compose,
 finish; to exhaust, weaken,
 enfeeble; to collect, furnish.

con-fĭdo, ĕre, fĭsus, intr. half
dep., to trust, rely on, confide
 in.

con-fĭgo, ĕre, fĭxī, fixum, tr.,
 to fasten *or* join together;
 to pierce.

con-fĭnis, e, adj., adjoining,
 bordering upon.

con-fĭnĭum, ī, n., common
 boundary, border, frontier.

con-fĭo, fiĕrī, irreg. pass. of
confĭcio, to be done, accom-
 plished.

con-firmātio, ōnis, f., confir-
 mation, assurance, proof.

con-firmo, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr., to confirm, establish,
 strengthen; to encourage;
 to assure.

con-fĭsus, a, um. See con-
fĭdo.

con-fĭtĕor, ĕrī, fessus, tr. dep.
 (con + fĕteor), to confess,
 acknowledge, admit, con-
 cede.

con-fixus, a, um. See con-fĭgo.

con-flāgro, āre, āvī, ātum,
intr., to burn, be burned.

con-flicto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.
freq. (conflĭgo), to strike *or*
 dash together; to struggle
 with; to distress, trouble,
 afflict.

con-flĭgo, ĕre, flixī, flictum, tr.
and intr., to strike *or* dash
 together; to fight, contend,
 engage.

con-flŭens, entis, m., the con-
 fluence.

con-flŭo, ĕre, xī, —, intr., to
 flow together, to flock to-
 gether.

con-fŭgio, ĕre, fŭgī, intr., to
 flee to for refuge, have re-
 course to.

con-fundo, ĕre, fūdī, fūsum,
tr., to pour together; to
 join, blend, unite; to con-
 fuse.

con-gĕro, ĕre, gessī, gestum,
tr., to carry together; to
 heap up, pile up, accumu-
 late.

con-grĕdĭor, ī, gressus, intr.
dep. (con + grĕdior), to
 meet, go *or* unite with; to
 fight, contend, engage.

con-gressus, ūs, m., a meeting,
 encounter.

con-ĭcio, ĕre, iĕcī, iectum, tr.
 (con + iĕcio), to throw *or*
 hurl together; to cast, dis-
 charge; to impute, ascribe;
 to conjecture, infer.

con-iectŭra, ae, f. (conĭcio),
 conjecture, conclusion.

con-iunctim, adv. (coniungo),

conjointly, together, in common.

con-iunctus, a, um, *partic. adj.*, connected, allied.

con-iungo, ěre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to join together, connect, unite, associate.

con-iunx, ůgis, *m. and f.* (con-iungo), husband; wife.

con-iūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, a conspiracy, combination, confederacy.

con-iūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to swear together; to conspire, combine, plot.

conl-. See coll-.

cōnor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to endeavor, attempt, undertake, try.

con-quiesco, ěre, ēvī, ētum, *intr.*, to rest, repose, be at rest.

con-quīro, ěre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (con + quaero), to seek after, search for; to procure, collect.

con-sanguīnēus, a, um, *adj.* (con + sanguis), related by blood, kindred. **Consanguīnēus**, ī, *m.*, a relative, relation.

con-scendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr. and intr.* (con + scando), to mount, ascend, embark.

con-scientĭa, ae, *f.* (con + scio), joint knowledge, consciousness, feeling, sense; conscience.

con-scisco, ěre, scīvī, scītum, *tr.*, to resolve on, decree, adjudge, inflict.

con-scius, a, um, *adj.* (con +

scio), conscious, privy to; conscious of guilt; accessory, accomplice.

con-scribo, ěre, scripsī, scriptum, *tr.*, to write together; to enroll, enlist, levy.

con-sēcro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + sēcro), to consecrate, hallow.

con-sector, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to follow after eagerly, pursue.

con-sēcūtus, a, um. See consequor.

con-sensĭo, ōnis, *f.*, agreement, unanimity; combination.

con-sensus, ūs, *m.*, unanimity, agreement, consent.

con-sentĭo, ĭre, sensī, sensum, *intr.*, to agree, accord; to combine, conspire.

con-sēquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue, overtake; to attain, obtain, acquire.

con-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to preserve, maintain, protect; to observe.

con-sĭdo, ěre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, to sit down; to settle, stop, encamp.

con-sĭlĭum, ī, *n.*, deliberation, counsel; design, plan, purpose, intention; judgment, prudence.

con-sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, very similar, quite like.

con-sisto, ěre, stītī, stītum, *intr.*, to stand, take a stand, take a position, halt, stop; to remain, stay; to consist, depend on.

con-sōbrĭnus, ī, *m.*, a cousin.

- con-sōlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to console, comfort, encourage, cheer.
- con-spectus, ūs, *m.*, look, sight, view, presence.
- con-spīcio, ěre, spexī, spectum, *tr.* (con + spēcio), to see, view, observe, perceive, look at.
- con-spīcor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to see, observe, descry.
- con-spīro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to agree, unite, conspire, combine.
- con-stanter, *adv.*, firmly, constantly; uniformly, consistently.
- con-stantīa, ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution, constancy.
- con-sterno, ěre, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, to strew, cover over, spread over.
- con-sterno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to alarm, terrify, dismay.
- con-stīpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to press *or* crowd together, pack, cram.
- con-stītūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (con + stātuo), to put, place, station; to establish, appoint, arrange, settle, constitute; to determine, resolve; to erect, build, construct.
- con-sto, āre, stītī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand, continue, remain, exist; to consist in, depend upon; to agree. **Constat**, *impers.*, it is evident, it appears.
- con-strātus, a, um. *See* con-sterno.
- con-suesco, ěre, suēvī, suētum, *intr.*, to be accustomed, be wont.
- con-suētūdo, ĩnis, *f.* (con-suesco), custom, habit, usage; intimacy.
- con-suētus, a, um. *See* con-suesco.
- consul, ūlis, *m.*, a consul.
- consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*, consulship.
- consŭlo, ěre, uī, ultum, *tr. and intr.*, to consult, deliberate, take counsel; to consult for, take measures for, provide for.
- consulto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to consult, deliberate, take counsel.
- consultō, *adv.* (consultum), designedly, on purpose.
- consultum, ī, *n.* (consŭlo), decree, decision, deliberation.
- con-sūmo, ěre, sumpsī, sump-tum, *tr.*, to consume, waste, destroy; to pass, spend.
- con-surgo, ěre, surrexī, sur-rectum, *intr.*, to rise together, rise.
- con-tābŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + tābŭla), to cover with boards *or* planks; to board, plank, floor.
- con-tāgiō, ōnis, *f.* (contingo), contact, touch; contagion, infection.
- con-tāmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (con + tango), to pollute, defile, contaminate.
- contĕgo, ěre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to cover, conceal.
- con-temno, ěre, mpsī, mptum,

tr., to despise, slight, contemn.

con-temptio, *ōnis, f.*, contempt, scorn, disdain.

con-temptus, *ūs, m.*, contempt, scorn, disdain.

con-tendo, *ēre, dī, tum, tr. and intr.*, to stretch, strain; strive for, endeavor, exert one's self; to maintain; to contend; to hasten.

con-tentio, *ōnis, f.*, straining, exertion, effort; contest, struggle, dispute.

contentus, *a, um, adj.* (*contīneo*), content, satisfied.

con-testor, *ārī, ātus, tr. dep.*, to call to witness, invoke.

con-texo, *ēre, xuī, xtum, tr.*, to weave, entwine, join together, connect, construct.

con-tigī. *See con-tingo.*

con-tīnens, *entis, partic. adj.* (*contīneo*), bordering upon, adjacent; uninterrupted, continual. **Contīnens**, *-entis, f.* (*sc. terra*), the mainland, continent.

con-tīnenter, *adv.* (*contīneo*), continually, uninterruptedly.

con-tīnentia, *ae, f.*, self-control, moderation, continence.

con-tīnēo, *ēre, tīnuī, tentum, tr.* (*con + teneo*), to hold together, contain, bound, confine, restrain; to occupy, embrace; to keep, hold.

con-tingo, *ēre, tīgī, tactum, tr. and intr.* (*con + tango*), to touch, border on; to happen, occur.

con-tīnūātiō, *ōnis, f.* (*contīnuo*), continuance, succession.

con-tīnuō, *adv.* (*contīnuus*), immediately, at once.

con-tīnūus, *a, um, adj.* (*contīneo*), successive, continuous.

contio, *ōnis, f.*, an assembly, meeting, harangue.

contionor, *arī, ātus, dep.*, to harangue, address.

contrā, *prep. with the accus.*, against, contrary to, opposite to.

contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand, in turn; otherwise.

con-trāho, *ēre, traxī, tractum, tr.*, to draw together, unite, collect; to contract.

contrārius, *a, um, adj.* (*contra*), opposite, contrary, facing; inimical, repugnant.

Ex contrāriō, on the contrary, on the other hand.

contrōversia, *ae, f.*, contention, dispute, controversy.

con-tūlī. *See con-fēro.*

con-tūmēlia, *ae, f.*, insult, disgrace, ignominy; rudeness, violence.

con-vālesco, *ēre, lui, —, intr.*, to gain strength, become strong, recover.

con-vallis, *is, f.*, a valley enclosed on all sides.

con-vēho, *ēre, vexī, vectum, tr.*, to carry or bring together, collect.

con-vēnīo, *īre, vēnī, ventum, tr. and intr.*, to come to-

gether, assemble; to meet; to be agreed upon. **Convēnit**, *impers.*, it is agreed upon; *also*, it is fit, proper, right.

con-ventus, *ūs, m.*, a meeting, assembly, court, assizes. **Conventūs agēre** (*peragēre*), to hold a court.

con-verto, *ēre, tī, sum, tr.*, to turn, direct, turn about; to change, alter.

con-vinco, *ēre, vīcī, victum, tr.*, to overcome; to prove, convince.

con-vōco, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to call together, summon.

cō-ōrior, *īrī, ortus, intr. dep.* (*con + ōrior*), to arise, break out.

cōpia, *ae, f.* (*con + ops*), plenty, abundance; means, resources, provisions; number, quantity. **Cōpiaē, ārum**, *f. pl.*, forces, troops.

cōpiōsus, *a, um, adj.*, well supplied, rich, copious.

cōpūla, *ae, f.*, a grapnel-hook.

cor, cordis, *n.*, the heart. **Cordi esse** = to be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, in person, before one's eyes.

cōriūm, *ī, n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, *ūs, n.*, a horn; trumpet; wing *of an army*.

cōrōna, *ae, f.*, a crown, chaplet, wreath; the (circular) line of besiegers.

corpus, *ōris, n.*, a body, person.

cor-rīpiō, *ēre, rīpuī, reptum, tr.* (*con + rāpiō*), to take,

seize, plunder, carry away; to attack.

cor-rumpo, *ēre, rūpī, ruptum, tr.* (*con + rumpo*), to waste, injure, damage, destroy, corrupt.

cortex, *tīcis, m. and f.*, bark.

cōrus, *ī, m.*, the northwest wind.

cōtēs, *is, f.*, a rock, reef.

cōtīdiānus, *a, um, adj.*, daily, usual, customary.

cōtīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

crassitūdo, *īnis, f.*, thickness.

crātēs, *is, f.*, a hurdle, wicker-work, fascine.

crēber, *bra, brum, adj.*, frequent, repeated, numerous, crowded.

crēbrō, *adv.*, frequently, often.

crēdo, *ēre, dīdī, dītum, tr. and intr.*, to believe, trust, suppose; to intrust, commit.

crēmo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to burn.

crēo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to create, make, produce; to appoint, elect.

Crēs, ētis, *adj.*, Cretan. *Greek accus. pl.*, Cretas.

cresco, *ēre, crēvī, crētum, intr.*, to grow, increase; to rise in influence.

crīmen, *īnis, n.*, a charge, accusation; a crime, offence.

crīnis, *is, m.*, the hair.

crūciātus, *ūs, m.*, torment, torture.

crūdēlis, *e, adj.*, cruel.

crūdēlītās, *ātis, f.*, cruelty.

crūdēlīter, *adv.*, cruelly.
 crūs, crūris, *n.*, the leg.
 cūbile, *is, n.*, a bed, couch.
 culmen, īnis, *n.*, the top, summit.
 culpa, *ae, f.*, a fault, offence.
 cultūra, *ae, f.*, tillage, cultivation.
 cultus, ūs, *m.* (cōlo), cultivation, culture, refinement; mode of living; dress.
 cum, *prep. with the abl.*, with, along with, among.
 cum, *adv.*, when, while, as, as soon as. **Cum primum** = as soon as.
 cum, *conj.*, as, since, because; although. **Cum ... tum**, both ... and in particular.
 cunctātiō, ōnis, *f.*, delay, lingering, hesitation.
 cunctor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to delay, linger, hesitate.
 cunctus, a, um, *adj.*, all, all together, the whole, entire.
 cūnēātīm, *adv.*, in the form of a wedge.
 cūnēus, ī, *m.*, a wedge.
 cūnīculus, ī, *m.*, a rabbit; burrow, mine.
 cūpīdē, *adv.*, eagerly.
 cūpīdītās, ātis, *f.*, desire, eagerness; cupidity, avarice.
 cūpīdus, a, um, *adj.*, desirous, eager, fond.
 cūpio, ěre, īvī, or iī, ītum, *tr.*, to desire, wish, long for; to favor, wish well to.
 cūr, *adv.*, why, wherefore.
 cūra, *ae, f.*, care, attention.
 cūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to

care for, attend to, take care; to regard.
 curro, ěre, cūcurrī, cursum, *intr.*, to run, flow.
 currus, ūs, *m.*, a chariot, car.
 cursus, ūs, *m.*, a running; speed, course, voyage.
 cuspis, īdis, *f.*, a point.
 custōdīa, *ae, f.*, custody, guard, watch, charge.
 custōdīo, ěre, īvī or iī, ītum, *tr.*, to guard, watch.
 custōs, ōdis, *m. and f.*, a guard, watch, keeper.

D.

D = five hundred.
 D., for Decimus.
 damno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to condemn, sentence.
 damnum, ī, *n.*, loss, damage.
 dē, *prep. with the abl.*, from, after; of, concerning, in regard to; for, on account of; in, during, by.
 dē-bēo, ěre, uī, ītum, *tr.* (de + hābeo), to owe; I, you, he, etc., ought. *Pass.*, to be due.
 dē-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to depart, retire, withdraw.
 dēcem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.
 dē-cerno, ěre, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, to determine, resolve, decide, decree; to contend, fight.
 dē-certo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to contend, strive, fight.
 dē-cessus, ūs, *m.* (decēdo), departure, withdrawal.
 dē-cīdo, ěre, īdī, —, *intr.* (de + cādo), to fall down, fall from.

dēcīmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the tenth.

dē-cīpio, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (de + cāpio), to catch, ensnare, entrap, deceive.

dē-clāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (de + clāro), to declare, proclaim.

dē-clīvis, e, *adj.* (de + clivus), sloping, descending.

dē-clīvītās, ātis, *f.*, a descent, declivity.

dē-crētum, ī, *n.* (decerno), a decree, resolution, decision.

dē-crētus, a, um. *See* dē-
cerno.

dēcūmānus, a, um, *adj.* (dēcem), of *or* belonging to the tenth (decūman). **Decumana porta**, the decuman gate, the main entrance of a Roman camp, so called because the tenth cohorts of the legions were encamped near it.

dēcūrīo, ōnis, *m.*, a decurion, the commander of a *dēcūrīa*, or ten horsemen.

dē-curro, ěre, cūcurrī *or* currī, cūsum, *intr.*, to run down, hasten.

dē-dēcus, ōris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor, infamy.

dēdī. *See* do.

dē-dīdī. *See* dē-do.

dē-dītīcius, a, um, *adj.* (dē-do), surrendered. **Dēdītīcius**, ī, *m.*, one who has surrendered, a prisoner.

dē-dītīo, ōnis, *f.* (dēdo), surrender, capitulation.

dē-dītus. *See* dē-do.

dē-do, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to give up, surrender, deliver; to devote.

dē-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead *or* bring down; to conduct, convey, withdraw, reduce, remove; to launch; to induce, influence; to accompany, conduct, e.g. *a bride to her husband*.

dē-est. *See* dē-sum.

dē-fātīgātīo, ōnis, *f.*, weariness, exhaustion.

dē-fātīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to weary, fatigue, exhaust.

dē-fectīo, ōnis, *f.* (dēfīcio), defection, revolt.

dē-fendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to ward off, repel; to defend, protect.

dē-fensīo, ōnis, *f.*, defence.

dē-fensor, ōris, *m.*, a defender, protector; defence.

dē-fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring away, convey; to inform, report; to offer, present, confer.

dē-fessus, a, um, *adj.* (dēfētīscor), wearied, fatigued.

dē-fīcio, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr. and intr.* (de + fācio), to fail, be wanting; to revolt, withdraw; to leave, forsake.

Animo deficere = to lose courage.

dē-fīgo, ěre, fixī, fixum, *tr.*, to fix, drive down, fasten, plant.

dē-fīnīo, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.*, to define, limit, determine, prescribe.

dē-fixus, a, um. *See* dē-fīgo.

dē-fōre = *dēfūtūrum esse*, to be about to be wanting.

dē-formis, *e*, *adj.* (de + forma), ugly, deformed, unsightly.

dē-fūgiō, *ěre*, *fūgī*, *tr.*, to flee, shun, avoid.

dē-fūī. See **dē-sum**.

dē-īciō, *ěre*, *iēcī*, *iectum*, *tr.* (de + iācio), to throw down, dislodge; to prostrate, overthrow; to disappoint.

dē-iectus, *ūs*, *m.* (dēicio), a depression, declivity, slope.

dēin-ceps, *adv.* (dein + cāpio), successively, in succession, next, then.

dē-inde, *adv.*, then, afterwards, next.

dē-lātus, *a*, *um*. See **dē-fěro**.

dē-lecto, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* (de + lācio), to delight, please, allure.

dē-lectus, *a*, *um*. See **dē-līgo**.

dē-lectus, *ūs*, *m.* (dē-līgo), choice, selection, levy.

dēlēo, *ěre*, *ěvī*, *ětum*, *tr.*, to destroy, efface, overthrow.

dē-liběro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* (de + libra), to consider, deliberate; to determine; to consult.

dē-lībro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* (de + līber), to take off the bark, to peel.

dē-lictum, *ī*, *n.* (dē-linquo), a fault, offence, crime.

dē-līgo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* (de + līgo), to bind, tie, fasten.

dē-līgo, *ěre*, *lēgī*, *lectum*, *tr.* (de + lěgo), to choose, pick, select, levy.

dē-lītesco, *ěre*, *lītūī*, —, *intr.* (de + lātesco), to lie hid, be concealed, to lurk.

dē-mentīa, *ae*, *f.* (demens), madness, folly.

dē-měto, *ěre*, *messuī*, *messum*, *tr.*, to reap, cut down.

dē-mīgro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *intr.*, to remove, depart, migrate.

dē-mīnūo, *ěre*, *uī*, *ūtum*, *tr.*, to diminish, lessen, to impair.

dē-missus, *a*, *um*, *partic. adj.* (de-mitto), dejected, drooping, low.

dē-mitto, *ěre*, *mīsī*, *missum*, *tr.*, to send *or* let down; to lower, sink.

dēmo, *ěre*, *dempsī*, *demptum*, *tr.* (dē + ěmo), to take away, remove.

dē-monstro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to point out, show, to declare, name.

dē-mōror, *ārī*, *ātus*, *tr. dep.*, to delay, detain, retard, hinder; to linger.

dē-mōvēo, *ěre*, *ōvī*, *ōtum*, *tr.*, to remove, dislodge, displace.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, finally.

dē-něgo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to refuse, deny.

dēnī, *ae*, *a*, *distr. num. adj.*, ten by ten, ten, ten each.

dēnīque, *adv.*, at last, finally, at length; at least.

densus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, thick, dense, close, crowded.

dē-nuntīo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to announce, declare; to threaten, denounce.

dē-pello, *ěre*, *pūlī*, *pulsum*,

tr., to drive out *or* away ; to expel, remove, dislodge ; to avert.
dē-pendo, ěre, **dī**, **sum**, *tr.*, to weigh ; to pay, spend.
dē-perdo, ěre, **dīdī**, **dītum**, *tr.*, to lose.
dē-pěřeo, ěre, **iī**, —, *intr.*, to perish, be lost, be undone.
dē-pōno, ěre, **pōsūī**, **pōsītum**, *tr.*, to lay down *or* aside ; to deposit, place, station.
dē-pōpŭlor, **ārī**, **ātus**, *tr. dep.*, to lay waste, ravage, plunder.
dē-porto, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey away.
dē-posco, ěre, **pōposcī**, —, *tr.*, to demand, require.
dē-pōsītus, **a**, **um**. See **dē-pōno**.
dē-prāvo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to pervert, corrupt, deprave.
dē-prēcātor, **ōris**, *m.*, an intercessor.
dē-prēcōr, **ārī**, **ātus**, *tr. dep.*, to avert by prayer ; to deprecate, beg off ; to implore, pray for.
dē-prěhendo, ěre, **dī**, **sum**, *tr.*, to catch, seize ; to discover, detect ; to surprise.
dē-prīmo, ěre, **pressī**, **pressum**, *tr.* (de + přmo), to depress, sink.
dē-pugno, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *intr.*, to fight it out, to contend.
dē-pulsus, **a**, **um**. See **dē-pello**.
dērěctě, *adv.*, straight, perpendicularly.

dērěctus, **a**, **um**, *partic. as adj.*, straight, perpendicular.
děrigō, ěre, **rexī**, **rectum**, *tr.* (de + rego), to direct, arrange.
dē-rīvo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.* (de + rīvus), to draw off, derive.
dē-rōgo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to take away, diminish, detract from.
dē-scendo, ěre, **dī**, **sum**, *intr.* (de + scando), to descend, come down.
dē-sěco, **āre**, **uī**, **tum**, *tr.*, to cut off.
dē-sěro, ěre, **uī**, **tum**, *tr.*, to leave, desert, abandon, forsake.
dē-sertor, **ōris**, *m.*, a deserter.
dē-sertus, **a**, **um**, *partic. adj.* (dē-sěro), desert, solitary, waste.
dē-sīděro, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to long for, desire ; to miss ; to lose.
dē-sīdīa, **ae**, *f.* (dē-sīděo), idleness, inactivity.
dē-signo, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to mark out, designate, signify, denote.
dē-sīlīo, ěre, **uī** *or* **iī**, **ultum**, *intr.* (de + sālīo), to leap down.
dē-sīno, ěre, **īvī** *or* **iī**, **ītum**, *intr.*, to cease, desist.
dē-sisto, ěre, **stītī**, **stītum**, *intr.*, to cease, desist.
dē-spectus, **ūs**, *m.* (de-spīcio), a view down, prospect.
dē-spectus, **a**, **um**. See **dē-spīcio**.

- dē-spērātiō, ōnis, *f.* (dē-spēro), despair, desperation.
- dē-spērātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (de-spēro), desperate.
- dē-spēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* and *intr.*, to despair.
- dē-spīcio, ěre, spexī, spectrum, *tr.* (de + spēcio), to look down upon, despise, disregard.
- dē-spōlio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to despoil, plunder, deprive of.
- dē-stīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to fasten, make fast; to design, destine.
- dē-stītī. See dē-sisto.
- dē-stītuo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (de + stātuo), to forsake, leave, abandon.
- dē-stringo, ěre, inxī, ictum, *tr.*, to strip off; to draw, unsheathe.
- dē-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*, to fail, be wanting.
- dē-sūper, *adv.*, from above, above.
- dētērior, us, *adj. comp.*, worse, inferior.
- dē-terrēo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to deter, prevent.
- dē-testor, āri, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to execrate, curse, imprecate.
- dē-tīneo, ěre, tīnuī, tentum, *tr.* (de + tēneo), to keep back, detain, hinder.
- dē-tracto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to refuse, decline, avoid.
- dē-trāho, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw or take off, remove, withdraw.
- dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *adj.*, detrimental, injurious.
- dētrīmentum, ī, *n.* (dētēro), loss, damage, detriment, injury.
- dē-trūdo, ěre, trūsī, trūsum, *tr.*, to thrust off, remove.
- dē-tŭlī. See dē-fēro.
- dē-turbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to beat, drive or cast down; to dislodge.
- dē-ūro, ěre, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, to burn up, consume.
- dēus, ī, *m.*, a god, deity.
- dē-ustus, a, um. See dē-ūro.
- dē-vēho, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to carry or bring down; to convey, remove.
- dē-vēnio, ĭre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to go or come down; to arrive at, reach.
- dē-vexus, a, um, *adj.* (dēvēho), inclining downward, sloping.
- dē-vincio, ĭre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to bind, attach, gain over.
- dē-vinco, ěre, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, to conquer completely, subdue.
- dē-vōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call away, call.
- dē-vōtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (dē-vōveo), devoted, attached.
- dē-vōvēo, ěre, vōvī, vōtum, *tr.*, to vow, devote.
- dexter, ěra, ěrum, and tra, trum, *adj.*, right, on the right. Dextra, ae, *f.* (*sc.* mānus), the right hand.
- dīcio, ōnis, *f.*, rule, dominion, authority, power, sway.
- dīco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to

dedicate, consecrate, devote, offer.
dīco, *ěre*, **dixī**, **dictum**, *tr.*, to say, speak; to appoint, name; to plead. **Jus dīcēre**, to pronounce judgment, administer justice.
dictiō, **ōnis**, *f.*, a pleading.
dictum, *ī*, *n.*, a word, saying, command.
dī-dūco, *ěre*, **xī**, **ctum**, *tr.*, to draw apart, separate, divide, disperse.
diēs, **ēī**, *m. and f.*, a day; time. In **dies**, from day to day, daily. **Diem ex die**, day after day.
dif-fēro, **ferre**, **distūlī**, **dīlātum**, *tr. and intr.*, to carry hither and thither; to scatter, disperse; to defer, delay, protract; to differ.
dif-fīcīlis, *e*, *adj.* (**dis** + **fācīlis**), difficult.
dif-fīcultās, **ātis**, *f.*, difficulty.
dif-fīcūter, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.* **dif-fīcīlius**, *super.* **dif-fīcillīmē**.
dif-fīdo, *ěre*, **fīsus sum**, *half dep.* (**dis** + **fīdo**), to distrust, mistrust, despair of.
dif-flūo, *ěre*, **xī**, **xum**, *intr.* (**dis** + **fluo**), to flow away.
dif-fundo, *ěre*, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, *tr.* (**dis** + **fundo**), to pour out; to spread out, scatter, extend.
dīgītus, *ī*, *m.*, a finger. **Dīgītus pollex**, the thumb.
dignītās, **ātis**, *f.*, dignity, merit, worth, standing.
dignus, *a, um, adj.*, worthy.

dīī. See **dēus**.
dī-iūdīco, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātum**, *tr.*, to judge, decide, determine.
dīlīgenter, *adv.*, diligently, attentively, accurately, carefully.
dīlīgentiā, *ae, f.*, diligence, attention, carefulness.
dī-līgo, *ěre*, **lexī**, **lectum**, *tr.* (**dis** + **lēgo**), to love.
dī-mētior, **īrī**, **mensus**, *tr. dep.*, to measure off.
dī-mīcātiō, **ōnis**, *f.*, a contest, combat, struggle.
dī-mīco, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātum**, *intr.* (**dis** + **mīco**), to fight, contend.
dī-mīdīum, *ī*, *n.*, the half.
dī-mīdīus, *a, um, adj.* (**dis** + **mēdius**), half.
dī-mitto, *ěre*, **mīsī**, **missum**, *tr.*, to send away, dismiss, discharge, let go, release; to abandon, leave, renounce.
dīr-īmo, *ěre*, **ēmī**, **emptum**, *tr.* (**dis** + **ěmo**), to take apart, separate; to interrupt, break off.
dī-rīpio, *ěre*, **rīpuī**, **reptum**, *tr.* (**dis** + **rāpio**), to tear asunder; to plunder, ravage, lay waste.
Dīs, **Dītis**, *m.*, Pluto, the god of the infernal regions.
dis-cēdo, *ěre*, **cessī**, **cessum**, *intr.*, to depart, withdraw, go away.
dis-ceptātor, **ōris**, *m.*, an arbitrator, umpire.
dis-cepto, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātum**, *intr.* (**dis** + **capto**), to decide; to discuss, debate.

dis-*cerno*, ěre, crĕvī, crĕtum, *tr.*, to distinguish, discern.

dis-*cessus*, ūs, *m.* (dis-*cĕdo*), departure; sepāration.

dis-*ciplīna*, ae. *f.* (disco), instruction, learning, discipline, system.

dis-*clūdo*, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to separate, divide, keep apart.

disco, ěre, didicī, —, *tr.*, to learn.

dis-*crīmen*, īnis, *n.* (discerno), separation, distinction; danger, hazard, crisis, peril.

dis-*curro*, ěre, cūcurrī and currī, cursum, *intr.*, to run to and fro, run about.

dis-*cūtio*, ěre, cussī, cussum, *tr.* (dis + quātio), to scatter, disperse, remove.

dis-*īcio*, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (dis + iācio), to disperse, scatter, rout.

dis-*pār*, āris, *adj.*, unequal, unlike, different.

dis-*pāro*, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to separate, divide.

dis-*spergo*, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.* (dis + spargo), to scatter, disperse, distribute.

dis-*pōno*, ěre, pōsuī, pōsitum, *tr.*, to distribute, arrange, station, dispose.

dis-*pūtātio*, ōnis, *f.*, discussion, dispute, debate.

dis-*pūto*, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to discuss, debate, argue.

dis-*sensio*, ōnis, *f.*, dissension, disagreement, discord.

dis-*sentio*, ěre, sensī, sensum,

intr., to differ in opinion, dissent, disagree.

dis-*sĕro*, ěre, sĕvī, sĭtum, *tr.*, to sow, plant.

dis-*sīmūlo*, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to dissemble, conceal, disguise.

dis-*sĭpo*, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to scatter, disperse, dissipate.

dis-*solvo*, ěre, olvī, ōlūtum, *intr.*, to dissolve, disjoin; to destroy.

dis-*suādĕo*, ěre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr.*, to dissuade.

dis-*tendo*, ěre, dī, tum, *tr.*, to stretch out, extend.

dis-*tĭnĕo*, ěre, tĭnuī, tentum, *tr.* (dis + tĕnco), to keep apart; to separate; to hinder, detain, prevent.

dis-*to*, āre, —, *intr.*, to be distant or apart; to stand apart.

dis-*trāho*, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw apart; to separate, divide.

dis-*tribūo*, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to distribute, divide.

dis-*tŭlī*. See dif-*fĕro*.

dītissīmus. See dīves.

dīū, *adv.*, long, for a long time. *Comp.* dīūtius, *super.* dīūtissimē.

dīurnus, a, um, *adj.* (dies), by day, daily.

dīūtīnus, a, um, *adj.* (diu), long, lasting.

dīūturnītās, ātis, *f.*, long continuance, long duration.

dīūturnus, a, um, *adj.* (diu), long, lasting, of long duration.

dī-versus, a, um, *adj.* (diverto), in different directions ; separate, opposite ; different, remote.

dī-ves, ītis, *adj.*, rich. *Comp.*

dīvītior or **dītior**, *super.* **dīvītissimus** or **dītissimus**.

dīvīdo, ěre, vīsī, vīsum, *tr.*, to separate, divide.

dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.* (dīvus), divine.

dī-vulgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to publish, divulge, make known.

do, dāre, dēdī, dātum, *tr.*, to give, afford ; to occasion.

Dāre mănūs = to yield.

dōcĕo, ěre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to teach, instruct, inform.

dōcŭmentum, ī, *n.* (dōceo), an example, lesson, warning, proof.

dōlēo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to grieve, regret, be pained, lament.

dōlor, ōris, *m.*, grief, pain ; vexation, resentment, mortification.

dōlus, ī, *m.*, deceit, fraud, deception, stratagem.

dōmestīcus, a, um, *adj.* (dōmus), domestic, private, of one's house or home.

dōmīcīlium, ī, *n.* (dōnius), a dwelling, abode, home.

dōmīnor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.* (dōmīnus), to have dominion, rule, govern.

dōmīnus, ī, *m.* (dōmus), a master, owner ; lord, ruler.

dōmus, ūs and ī, *f.*, a house,

home. **Dōmī**, at home.

Dōmum, home, homeward.

Dōmō, from home.

dōno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to give, present, confer.

dōnum, ī, *n.*, a gift, present.

dorsum, ī, *n.*, the back. **Jugi dorsum**, the slope or ridge of a hill.

dōs, dōtis, *f.* (do), a dowry.

Drūides, um, *m. pl.*, the Druids, the priests of the Gauls.

dŭbītātio, ōnis, *f.*, doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

dŭbīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to doubt, hesitate.

dŭbīus, a, um, *adj.* (dŭo), doubtful, uncertain, dubious.

Dŭbium, ī, *n.*, doubt.

dŭcentī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (duo + centum), two hundred.

dŭco, ěre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to lead, draw, conduct, convey ; to prolong, protract ; to consider, account ; to build, construct ; to marry.

ductus, ūs, *m.*, command, lead, conduct.

dum, *adv.*, while ; until.

duo, ae, o, *num. adj.*, two.

duō-dēcim, *num. adj.*, twelve.

duō-dēcīmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the twelfth.

duō-dēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, twelve by twelve, in twelves, twelve each, twelve.

duō-dē-vīgintī, *num. adj.*, eighteen.

dŭplex, ĭcis, *adj.* (duo + plīco), twofold, double.

dŭplico, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
(duplex), to double.

dūrītia, ae, *f.*, hardness, hardi-
ness, endurance.

dūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
harden; to render hardy;
to endure.

dūrus, a, um, *adj.*, hard;
harsh, severe; hardy.

dux, dūcis, *m. and f.*, a leader,
general, guide.

E.

ē or ex, *prep. with the abl.*,
from, of; out of, after, on
account of, among, accord-
ing to, in, on, at, from being.
E is used only before conso-
nants; ex before vowels and
consonants.

ē-dīco, ěre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*,
to declare, make known;
to order, command.

ē-dictum, ī, *n.*, an edict, proc-
lamation.

ē-disco, ěre, dīdīcī, —, *tr.*, to
learn by heart, commit to
memory.

ē-ditus, a, um, *part. adj.* (ēdo),
high, raised, elevated, lofty.

ē-do, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to
put forth, utter, make known,
publish; to show, exhibit.

ē-dōcēo, ěre, uī, ctum, *tr.*, to
teach, instruct, inform, relate.

ē-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to
lead forth, draw out, bring
out.

ef-farciō, ěre, sī, fertum, *tr.* (ex
+ farcio), to stuff, cram, fill.

ef-fēmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*

(ex + fēmīna), to enervate,
effeminate.

ef-fēro, ferre, extŭlī, ēlātum,
tr., to bring forth, produce;
to raise, lift up, elate; to
publish, proclaim, divulge.

ef-ficiō, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.*
(ex + fācio), to effect, ac-
complish, bring to pass, oc-
casion; to make, construct,
produce, render.

ef-fōdīo, ěre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*
(ex + fōdio), to dig out or
up; to tear out.

ef-fŭgīo, ěre, fŭgī, fŭgītum,
tr. and intr. (ex + fŭgio),
to escape, flee away; to
shun, avoid.

ēgens, entis, *partic. adj.*
(ēgeo), needy, in want, des-
titute.

ēgēo, ěre, uī, —, *intr.*, to need,
be without, be destitute,
lack.

ēgestās, ātis, *f.*, want, poverty,
need.

ēgī. See ago.

ēgo, meī, *pers. pro.*, I.

ē-grēdīor, ī, gressus, *tr. and*
intr. dep. (e + grādior), to
go out, depart from; to
leave, go beyond; to dis-
embark.

ē-grēgiē, *adv.* (ē-grēgius), ad-
mirably, eminently, excel-
lently.

ē-grēgius, a, um, *adj.* (e +
grex), excellent, remarkable,
eminent, admirable.

ē-gressus, ūs, *m.* (ē-grēdior),
egress, departure, landing.

ē-īcio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (e + iācio), to cast *or* drive out; to banish; expel. **Se eicĕre** = to rush out.

ēius-mōdī, *adv.* (is + mōdus), of that nature, such, of such a kind.

ē-lābor, ī, lapsus, *intr. dep.*, to slip away, escape.

ē-lātus, a, um. *See ef-fĕro.*

ē-lectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ē-lĭgo), picked, selected, chosen.

ĕlēphantus, ī, *m.*; an elephant.

ē-lĭcio, ěre, lĭcuī, lĭcĭtum, *tr.* (e + lācio), to elicit, lure forth, entice, draw out.

ē-lĭgo, ěre, lĕgī, lectum, *tr.* (e + lĕgo), to pick out, select, choose.

ē-lōquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to declare, express.

ēmĭgro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove, depart, emigrate.

ē-mĭnĕo, ěre, uī, —, *intr.*, to stand out, project; to be eminent.

ē-mĭnus, *adv.* (e + mānus), from a distance, at a distance.

ē-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send out, let go; to throw, hurl, discharge.

ēmo, ěre, ēmī, emptum, *tr.*, to buy, purchase.

ē-nascor, ī, nātus, *intr. dep.*, to grow out, sprout out, spring from.

ēnim, *conj.*, for; indeed, now.

ē-nītor, ī, nīsus *or* nixus, *intr.*

dep., to struggle, strive, exert one's self.

ē-nūmĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to count over, enumerate, recount.

ē-nuntĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to disclose, divulge, reveal, declare.

eo, ĭre, ĭvī *or* iī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to go, proceed, pass.

eō, *adv.* (is), thither, to that place, there; to such an extent, degree, *or* pitch; on that account, therefore.

eōdem, *adv.* (idem), to the same place, purpose, end, *or* thing.

ĕhippiātus, a, um, *adj.*, using saddles, saddled.

ĕhippĭum, ī, *n.*, a saddle, housing, horsecloth.

ĕpistŭla, ae, *f.*, a letter, epistle.

ĕpŭlae, ārum, *f. pl.*, banquets, feasts.

ĕques, ĭtis, *m.* (equus), a horseman; cavalry; a knight, member of the equestrian order, in rank between the patricians and plebeians.

ĕquester, tris, tre, *adj.* (eques), of the cavalry, cavalry; equestrian.

ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*, cavalry.

ĕquus, ī, *m.*, a horse.

ē-rectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ē-rĭgo), erect, high, elevated.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.

ergō, *conj.*, therefore, then.

ē-rĭgo, ěre, rexī, rectum, *tr.*

(e + rego), to raise, erect, elevate.
ē-rīpiō, ěre, rīpuī, reptum, tr.
 (e + rāpio), to snatch away, tear *or* take away; to rescue, wrest, liberate.
erro, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., to wander; to err, be mistaken.
ē-rumpo, ěre, rūpī, ruptum, intr., to burst *or* break forth, rush forth.
ē-ruptiō, ōnis, f. (erumpo), a breaking *or* bursting forth; a sally, sortie.
essēdārius, ī, m., one who fought from a war-chariot.
essēdum, ī, n., or essēda, ae, f., a war-chariot of the Gauls and Britons.
et, conj., and; also; even. **Et . . . et,** both . . . and.
ētiam, conj., also, likewise; even, yet, still.
et-si, conj., even if, although.
ē-vādo, ěre, sī, sum, intr., to escape, go out, come out.
ē-vello, ěre, vellī, vulsum, tr., to pull *or* pluck out.
ē-vēniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, intr., to come out; to result, happen.
ē-ventus, ūs, m. (ēvēnio), an event, occurrence, result, issue.
ē-vōcātus, a, um, part. (ēvōco), called out. **Ēvōcāti, ōrum, m. pl.,** veteran volunteers, soldiers who, after having served out their time, were called upon to serve as volunteers.

ē-vōco, āre, āvī, ātum, tr., to call out, challenge; to summon, invite, entice.
ē-vōlo, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., to fly out, rush forth, sally out.
ex. See E.
ex-actus, a, um. See ex-igo.
ex-aequo, āre, āvī, ātum, tr., to make equal, smooth, level.
ex-āgīto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr., to drive out; to harass, disturb, agitate.
exāmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, tr. (examen), to weigh; to examine.
ex-ānīmo, āre, āvī, ātum, tr., to exhaust, weaken; to kill, destroy.
ex-ardesco, ěre, arsī, arsum, intr., to kindle, blaze out; to be inflamed, excited; to break out.
ex-audio, īre, īvī, or iī, itum, tr., to hear, listen to, regard.
ex-cēdō, ěre, cessī, cessum, intr., to go out, depart, withdraw, retire.
ex-cello, ěre, uī, —, intr., to be eminent, excel, surpass.
ex-celsus, a, um, adj. (excello), high, lofty, elevated.
ex-cepto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr. freq. (excīpio), to take *or* pick up.
ex-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, tr. (ex + caedo), to cut out, hew down; to destroy, demolish.
ex-cīpiō, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, tr. (ex + cāpio), to take out; to receive, incur; to meet, sus-

- tain, undergo; to surprise, catch; to succeed, follow.
- ex-cīto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.**, to call forth, arouse, excite; to stimulate, incite, impel; to raise, erect, construct, build.
- ex-clūdo, ěre, sī, sum, tr.**, to shut out, exclude; to prevent, cut off, hinder.
- ex-cōgīto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.**, to contrive, devise; to consider.
- ex-crūcio, āre, āvī, atum, tr.**, to torture, torment.
- ex-cūbītor, ōris, m.**, a guard, sentinel, watch.
- ex-cūbo, āre, cūbuī, cūbītum, intr.**, to lie out of doors; to guard, watch, be on guard.
- ex-culco, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.** (ex + calco), to tread down.
- ex-cursio, ōnis, f.**, an excursion, sally, attack, incursion.
- ex-cūsatio, ōnis, f.**, an excuse, defence, apology.
- ex-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.** (ex + causa), to excuse, defend, plead in excuse.
- exemplum, ī, n.** (exīmo), an example, instance; manner, way, kind.
- ex-ĕo, ěre, īvī or iī, ĭtum, intr.**, to go out *or* away; to depart, withdraw, escape.
- ex-ercĕo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, tr.** (ex + arceo), to exercise, occupy, employ; to practise, train.
- ex-ercitatio, ōnis, f.**, exercise, practice.
- ex-ercitatus, a, um, partic. adj.** (exercito), exercised, practised, trained, versed.
- ex-ercito, āre, āvī, ātum, tr. freq.** (exerceo), to exercise, practise.
- ex-ercitus, ūs, m.**, an army.
- ex-haurio, ěre, hausī, haustum, tr.**, to draw out, drain; to remove.
- ex-ĭgo, ěre, ěgī, actum, tr.** (ex + ago), to drive out; to finish, complete; to demand, exact; to pass, spend.
- ex-ĭguē, adv.**, hardly, scarcely.
- exĭguitās, ātis, f.**, scantiness, smallness, scarcity, paucity.
- ex-ĭgūus, a, um, adj.** (exĭgo), scanty, small, slight, meagre.
- ex-ĭmīus, a, um, adj.** (exīmo), excellent, select, remarkable.
- ex-istimatio, ōnis, f.**, opinion, estimation; reputation.
- ex-istimo, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.** (ex + aestimo), to think, suppose, judge, esteem.
- ex-ĭtus, ūs, m.** (exeo), departure; issue, result, end, conclusion.
- ex-ōrior, irī, ortus, intr. dep.**, to arise, spring up, appear.
- ex-pĕdio, ěre, īvī or iī, ĭtum, tr.** (ex + pes), to free, extricate, liberate; to expedite, facilitate; to prepare, arrange, make ready; to have ready, procure.
- ex-pĕditio, ōnis, f.**, an expedition.
- ex-pĕditus, a, um, partic. adj.** (expĕdio), free, unencumbered, expeditious, ready; light-armed, without baggage.

ex-pello, ěre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*,
to drive out, expel, banish.

ex-pĕrior, ĭrī, pertus, *tr. dep.*,
to try, make trial of; to
prove, experience.

ex-pĭo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to expiate, atone for; to
make amends for, make
good.

ex-plĕo, ěre, ěvī, ětum, *tr.*, to
fill up; to complete, supply,
satisfy.

ex-plōrātor, ōris, *m.*, a scout,
spy.

ex-plōrātus, a, um, *partic. adj.*
(exploro), ascertained, cer-
tain, sure. **Pro explorato**,
as certain.

ex-plōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to search out, examine; to
reconnoitre, spy out.

ex-pōno, ěre, pŏsuī, pŏsitum,
tr., to put *or* place out; to
disembark; to display, ex-
pose; to explain, propose.

ex-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to carry out, export, convey
away.

ex-posco, ěre, pŏposcī, —, *tr.*,
to ask earnestly, entreat, re-
quest, implore.

ex-prĭmo, ěre, pressī, pressum,
tr. (ex + prĕmo), to press
out; to extort, wrest; to
express, declare, represent;
to raise up, elevate.

ex-pugnātio, ōnis, *f.*, an as-
sault, storming.

ex-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to take by assault; to storm,
reduce, subdue.

ex-quĭro, ěre, sĭvī, sĭtum, *tr.*
(ex + quaero), to search out,
inquire into, ask, investigate,
examine.

ex-sĕquor, ĭ, cŭtus, *tr. dep.*, to
follow, pursue; to execute,
accomplish, perform.

ex-sĕro, ěre, sĕruī, sertum, *tr.*,
to thrust out; to uncover,
bare.

ex-sisto, ěre, stĭtī, stĭtum,
intr., to stand out, step forth,
arise, appear, proceed; to
exist.

ex-specto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to look for, await, expect.

ex-spŏlio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
spoil, strip, deprive, plunder.

ex-stinguo, ěre, nxī, nctum,
tr., to put out, extinguish; to
destroy, extirpate.

ex-sto, āre, stĭtī, —, *intr.*, to
stand out *or* above; to pro-
ject, appear, exist.

ex-strŭo, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to
pile *or* heap up; to raise,
build, construct, erect.

ex-sul, ŭlis, *m. and f.*, an exile.

ex-tendo, ěre, dī, tum *or* sum,
tr., to stretch out, extend.

exter or extĕrus, a, um, *adj.*,
outward, external, outer, for-
eign. *Comp.* **extĕrior**, outer,
exterior; *super.* **extrĕmus**
and **extĭmus**, extreme, outer-
most, last, most remote, end
of, farthest. **Agmen extrĕ-**
mmum, the end of the line of
march, the rear.

ex-terrĕo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to
terrify, dismay.

ex-timesco, ěre, tĭmuĭ, —, *intr.*, to dread, fear greatly.
 ex-torquĕo, ěre, torsi, tortum, *tr.*, to wrest, extort.
 extrā, *prep.* with the accus., out of, without, outside of; contrary to; besides, except, beyond.
 extrā, *adv.*, without, beyond.
 ex-trāho, ěre, traxĭ, tractum, *tr.*, to draw out; to protract, prolong; to consume, waste.
 extrĕmum, ĭ, *n.*, the end.
 extrĕmus, a, um. *See* exter.
 ex-trūdo, ěre, trūsĭ, trūsum, *tr.*, to thrust out, exclude, keep back.
 ex-tŭlĭ. *See* ef-fĕro.
 exŭo, ěre, uĭ, ūtum, *tr.*, to strip off, divest, deprive, despoil.
 ex-ŭro, ěre, ussĭ, ustum, *tr.*, to burn up.
 exŭtus, a, um. *See* exŭo.

F.

fāber, brĭ, *m.*, a workman, artisan, artificer, smith.
 fācilĕ, *adv.*, easily, readily.
Comp. fācĭlius, *super.* fācĭlĭmĕ.
 fācĭlis, e, *adj.* (fācio), easy, ready; affable, courteous.
 fācĭnus, ōris, *n.* (fācio), an action, deed, exploit; a daring deed, crime.
 fācio, ěre, fĕcĭ, factum, *tr.*, to do, make, perform, act; to cause, render; to constitute, appoint; to commit; to furnish, give. *Potestatem fa-*

cĕre, to give an opportunity, chance. *Castra facĕre*, to pitch a camp.
 factĭo, ōnis, *f.* (fācio), a party, side, faction.
 factum, ĭ, *n.*, a deed, act, exploit.
 factus, a, um. *See* fĭo.
 fācultās, ātis, *f.* (fācĭlis), ability, power; means, opportunity; abundance, number, stock, resources.
 fāgus, ĭ, *f.*, a beech-tree.
 fallo, ěre, fĕfellĭ, falsum, *tr.*, to deceive, mislead; to escape notice, elude observation.
 falsus, a, um, *adj.* (fallo), false, unfounded, deceitful.
 falx, falcis, *f.*, a sickle; a hook, *used in pulling down an enemy's walls.*
 fāma, ae, *f.*, fame, report, rumor; reputation, renown, character.
 fāmĕs, is, *f.*, hunger, famine.
 fāmĭliā, ae, *f.*, a household, family; the slaves of a family.
 fāmĭliāris, e, *adj.*, of a family, private; intimate. *Res fāmĭliāris*, family, estate, private property. *Fāmĭliāris*, is, *m.*, a friend, acquaintance.
 fāmĭliārītās, ātis, *f.*, intimacy, acquaintance, familiarity.
 fās, *indecl. n.*, divine law, the will of heaven, justice, right, duty.
 fastīgātĕ, *adv.*, sloping.

fastīgātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (fastīgo), sloping to a point ; sloping, descending.

fastīgūm, ī, *n.*, the top, summit, height, eminence ; slope, descent, declivity.

fastīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to make pointed, raise to a point.

fātum, ī, *n.* (fari), fate, destiny ; an oracle.

faux, faucis, *f.*, the throat, jaws ; **fauces**, ūm, a defile, pass.

fāvĕo, ĕre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, to favor, countenance.

fax, fācis, *f.*, a torch, firebrand. **fēlīcītās**, ātis, *f.*, good luck ; success, good fortune.

fēlīcīter, *adv.*, fortunately, successfully, auspiciously.

fēlix, īcis, *adj.*, lucky, auspicious, favorable.

fēmīna, ae, *f.*, a woman, female.

fēmur, ōris or īnis, *n.*, the thigh.

fĕra, ae, *f.*, a wild beast.

fĕrax, ācis, *adj.* (fĕro), fruitful, fertile, productive.

fĕrĕ, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about ; for the most part, generally.

fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear, carry, bring ; to suffer, endure, allow ; to offer, present ; to produce, yield ; to say, declare, report ; to receive, obtain ; to lead, conduct ; to propose. **Signa ferre**, to advance the stand-

ards = to march. **Mōleste ferre** = to take it ill, be displeased.

ferrāmentum, ī, *n.* (ferrum), a tool, implement.

ferrāria, ae, *f.* (ferrum), an iron mine.

ferrĕus, a, um, *adj.*, of iron, iron.

ferrum, ī, *n.*, iron ; a sword.

fertīlis, e, *adj.* (fĕro), fertile, fruitful, productive.

fertīlītās, ātis, *f.*, fertility, fruitfulness.

fĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, wild, rude, barbarous, cruel.

fervĕ-fācio, ĕre, fĕcī, factum, *tr.* (ferveo + fācio), to melt, heat, fuse.

fervĕo, ĕre, buī, —, *intr.*, to be boiling or red-hot ; to glow with heat.

fībŭla, ae, *f.*, a clasp, brace.

fictus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (fingo), feigned, fictitious, false.

Ficta, inventions, fictions.

fīdĕlis, e, *adj.* (fides), faithful, trusty, sure.

fīdēs, ĕī, *f.*, faith, trust, confidence, belief ; security, protection ; pledge, word, fidelity, honor, credit.

fīdŭcia, ae, *f.* (fīdo), confidence, reliance, assurance, courage.

fīgŭra, ae, *f.* (fingo), form, figure, shape ; kind, quality.

fīlia, ae, *f.*, a daughter.

fīlius, ī, *m.*, a son.

fingo, ĕre, finxī, fictum, *tr.*, to form, fashion, mould, make ; to devise, contrive, feign.

fīnio, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.* (fīnis), to limit, bound ; to determine, reckon ; to finish, terminate.
fīnis, is, *m. and f.*, an end, conclusion ; limit, boundary, territory.
fīnītīmus, a, um, *adj.* (fīnis), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring. **Fīnītīmī**, ōrum, *m. pl.*, neighbors.
fīo, fīērī, factus, *irreg. pass. of* fācio, to be made, done ; to become, occur, happen. **Certior** fīērī = to be informed. **Fit**, it happens.
firmīter, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.
firmītūdo, īnis, *f.*, firmness, strength, durability.
firmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to strengthen, secure, establish ; to confirm, encourage.
firmus, a, um, *adj.*, firm, strong, steadfast, resolute ; durable.
fistūca, ae, *f.*, a rammer, pile-driver.
flāgīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to demand, ask.
flamma, ae, *f.*, flame, blaze, glow.
flecto, ěre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to bend, turn, guide, move, persuade.
fleo, ěre, ēvī, ētum, *intr.*, to weep, lament.
flētus, ūs, *m.* (fleo), weeping, lamentation, tears.
flo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to blow.
flōrens, entis, *partic. adj.* (flō-

reo), flourishing, prosperous ; prominent, in repute.
flōs, flōris, *m.*, a flower.
fluctus, ūs, *m.* (flūo), a wave.
flūmen, īnis, *n.* (flūo), a river, stream. **Flumine secundo**, down stream ; **flumine adverso**, up stream.
flūo, ěre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow.
fōdio, ěre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to dig, dig out, dig up.
foedus, ěris, *n.*, a league, treaty, alliance, compact.
fons, tis, *m.*, a fountain, source.
fōrem = essem ; **fōre** = fūtūrus esse.
fōrīs, *adv.*, without, out of doors, abroad, outside.
forma, ae, *f.*, form, shape.
fors, fortis, *f.* (fĕro), chance, fortune. **Forte**, *abl.*, by chance, accidentally.
fortis, e, *adj.*, brave ; strong.
fortīter, *adv.*, bravely, firmly.
fortītūdo, īnis, *f.* (fortis), bravery, courage, fortitude.
fortūitō, *adv.* (fors), by chance, accidentally.
fortūna, ae, *f.* (fors), chance, fortune, fate, lot.
fortūnātus, a, um, *adj.*, fortunate, prosperous, rich.
fōrum, ī, *n.* (fōris), a market place, public place, forum.
fossa, ae, *f.* (fōdio), a trench, ditch, fosse.
fōvēa, ae, *f.*, a pitfall, pit.
frango, ěre, frēgī, fractum, *tr.*, to break, shatter ; to dishearten, discourage, to weaken, subdue.

frāter, tris, *m.*, a brother.
 frāternus, a, um, *adj.*, brotherly, fraternal, of a brother.
 fraus, fraudis, *f.*, fraud, deceit, treachery.
 frēmītus, ūs, *m.* (frēmo), a roaring, murmuring, noise, clamor.
 frēquens, tis, *adj.*, frequent, repeated; numerous, crowded.
 frētus, a, um, *adj.*, relying on, trusting to, depending on.
 frīgīdus, a, um, *adj.*, cold.
 frīgus, ōris, *n.*, cold; coolness.
 frons, frontis, *f.*, the forehead, brow, front. **A** fronte, in front.
 fructūōsus, a, um, *adj.*, fruitful, fertile, productive.
 fructus, ūs, *m.* (frūor), fruit, produce, profit, income; use.
 frūgēs, um, *f. pl.*, crops.
 frūmentārius, a, um, *adj.*, of corn, fertile in corn. **Res frumentaria**, corn, a supply of corn, provisions.
 frūmentātiō, ōnis, *f.*, a procuring of corn, foraging.
 frūmentor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to procure corn; to forage.
 frūmentum, ī, *n.* (frūor), corn, grain.
 frūor, ī, frūītus *and* fructus, *tr. dep.*, to enjoy.
 frustrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without reason.
 fūga, ae, *f.*, flight.
 fūgiō, ēre, fūgī, fūgītum, *tr. and intr.*, to fly, flee; to escape, avoid, shun.

fūgītīvus, a, um, *adj.*, fugitive.
 Fūgītīvus, ī, *m.*, a deserter.
 fūgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to rout, put to flight.
 fūmo, āre, —, —, *intr.*, to smoke.
 fūmus, ī, *m.*, smoke.
 funda, ae, *f.*, a sling.
 fundītor, ōris, *m.*, a slinger.
 fundo, ēre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour out; to melt, fuse; to scatter, throw; to rout, prostrate.
 fungor, ī, functus, *tr. dep.*, to perform, discharge, execute.
 fūnis, is, *m.*, a rope, cable.
 fūnus, ēris, *n.*, a funeral; funeral rites.
 fūror, ōris, *m.*, madness, rage.
 furtum, ī, *n.* (fur), theft.
 fūsīlis, e, *adj.* (fundo), molten, melted, liquid, pliant.
 fūtūrus, a, um, *future partic. from* sum.

G.

gaesum, ī, *n.*, a long, heavy javelin of the Gauls.
 gālĕa, ae, *f.*, a helmet.
 Gallia, ae, *f.*, Gaul.
 Gallīcus, a, um, *adj.*, Gallic.
 gallīna, ae, *f.*, a hen.
 Gallus, a, um, *adj.*, Gallic.
 Gallus, ī, *m.*, a Gaul.
 gaudĕo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *intr. half dep.*, to rejoice, be glad.
 gāvīsus, a, um. *See* gaudeo.
 gēner, ērī, *m.*, a son-in-law.
 gēnerātīm, *adv.* (gēnus), by nations, by tribes.

gens, gentis, *f.*, a tribe, nation, race; kind, class; a clan.
 gēnus, ěris, *n.*, birth, lineage, family, descent; race, stock; kind, nature, manner.
 Germānĭa, ae, *f.*, Germany.
 Germānicus, a, um, *adj.*, German, Germanic.
 Germānus, a, um, *adj.*, German, of Germany.
 gēro, ěre, gessĭ, gestum, *tr.*, to bear, carry; to conduct, carry on, manage, wage, perform.
 glādius, ĭ, *m.*, a sword.
 glans, glandis, *f.*, an acorn; a ball, bullet.
 glēba, ae, *f.*, a clod, lump, piece.
 glōrĭa, ae, *f.*, glory, renown, fame.
 glōrĭor, ārĭ, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to glory, boast, pride one's self.
 Graecus, a, um, *adj.*, Greek.
 Graecus, ĭ, *m.*, a Greek.
 grandis, e, *adj.*, great, large.
 grātĭa, ae, *f.*, favor, influence, esteem, popularity; service, kindness; gratitude; thanks; a return, requital. Grātĭā, *with the gen.*, for the sake, for the purpose, on account.
 Gratias agēre, to thank.
 Gratiam referre, to return a favor, make requital.
 grātŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing, joy.
 grātŭlor, ārĭ, ātus, *intr. dep.* (grātus), to congratulate, wish one joy, rejoice; to thank.
 grātus, a, um, *adj.*, pleasing,

agreeable; grateful, thankful.
 grāvis, e, *adj.*, heavy, weighty; important, grave, dignified; severe, grievous, oppressive.
 grāvĭtās, ātis, *f.*, heaviness, weight; importance, influence.
 grāvĭter, *adv.*, heavily, strongly; severely, grievously; ill, with displeasure.
 grāvo, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.* (grāvis), to burden, weigh down, oppress. *Pass.*, to be burdened, *i.e.* to feel vexed, reluctant.
 gŭbernātor, ōris, *m.*, a pilot.
 gusto, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to taste, partake of.

H.

hābēo, ěre, uĭ, ĭtum, *tr.*, to have, hold, possess, keep; to consider, regard. Gratiam habēre, to feel grateful.
 hābĭto, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr. and intr.* (hābeo), to inhabit, dwell.
 Haeduus, a, um, *adj.*, Haeduan, belonging to the Haedui. As noun, a Haeduan, the Haedui.
 haesĭto, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *intr. freq.* (haereo), to stick fast, remain fixed, be rooted.
 hāmus, ĭ, *m.*, a hook.
 harpāgo, ōnis, *m.*, a grappling-hook, grapple, drag.
 haud, *adv.*, not.
 Helvēticus, a, um, *adj.*, Helvetian.

Helvētius, a, um, *adj.*, Helvetian.

Hercynius, a, um, *adj.*, Hercynian. **Hercynia silva**, the Hercynian forest, in ancient Germany.

hērēditās, ātis *f.* (heres), inheritance, heirship.

hīberna. See **hibernus**.

hībernācula, ōrum, *n.*, winter tents; winter-quarters.

Hībernā, ae, *f.*, Ireland.

hībernus, a, um, *adj.* (hiems), of winter; winter. **Hīberna**, ōrum, *n. pl.* (*sc.* castra), winter-quarters.

hīc, haec, hōc, *dem. adj. pron.*, this, this one, this man; the latter; that; such. *Pers. pron.*, he, she, it. **Hōc**, abl., on this account, therefore. **Hāc**, abl. (*sc.* parte or via), here, this way, on this side.

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place.

hiēmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (hiems), to winter, pass the winter.

hiems, ēmis, *f.*, winter.

hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this place.

Hispania, ae, *f.*, Spain.

Hispanus, a, um, *adj.*, Spanish.

hōdīē, *adv.* (hic + dies), to-day.

hōmo, īnis, *m. and f.*, a man; woman; human being.

hōnestus, a, um, *adj.* (honor), respectable, honorable; respected, worthy.

hōnor, ōris, *m.*, honor, respect;

office, preferment. **Honōris causā**, out of respect.

hōnōrī-fīcus, a, um, *adj.* (honor + fācio), honorable.

hōra, ae, *f.*, an hour.

horreo, ēre, uī, —, *tr.*, to dread, tremble at.

horribilis, e, *adj.*, dreadful, terrible, horrible.

horridus, a, um, *adj.*, rough, shaggy; horrid, frightful.

hortor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to encourage, exhort, animate, incite.

hospes, ītis, *m. and f.*, a guest, stranger; a host.

hospitium, ī, *n.*, hospitality; guest-friendship.

hostis, is, *m. and f.*, an enemy.

hūc, *adv.* (hic), hither, to this place; thus far, to this.

hūius-mōdī, *adv.* (hic + mōdus), of this kind, of such a nature, such.

hūmānītās, ātis, *f.*, humanity; refinement, culture.

hūmānus, a, um, *adj.* (hōmo), human; humane, refined.

hūmīlis, e, *adj.* (humus), low; humble, poor, weak, slender.

hūmīlītās, ātis, *f.*, lowness; weakness, insignificance.

I.

iāceo, ēre, uī, ītum, *intr.*, to lie; to lie dead; to lie outstretched, extend.

iācio, ěre, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, to throw, cast, hurl, discharge; to throw up, erect; construct.

iacto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (iācio), to throw, toss, cast ; to discuss.

iactūra, ae, *f.* (iācio), a throwing away ; loss, damage.

iaculum, ī, *n.*, a javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, already, by this time, soon.

ibī, *adv.*, there, in that place.

ictus, ūs, *m.* (īco), a blow, stroke.

id-circo, *conj.* (id + circa), therefore, for this reason, on that account.

īdem, eādem, īdem, *dem. adj. pron.* (is + dem), the same ; also, at once.

identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly ; often, now and then.

idēō, *conj.* (id + eo), therefore, on that account.

īdōnēus, a, um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, proper, worthy, capable.

īdūs, ūum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, the 13th day of the month ; but the 15th of March, May, July, and October.

īgītur, *conj.*, therefore, then.

ignis, is, *m.*, fire.

ignōbīlis, e, *adj.* (in + nōbīlis), unknown ; obscure, ignoble.

ignōmīnīa, ae, *f.* (in + nōmen), disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.

ignōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to be ignorant of, not to know.

ignosco, ěre, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.* (in + nosco), to pardon, forgive, excuse.

ignōtus, a, um, *adj.* (in + nōtus), unknown.

ille, illa, illud, *dem. adj. pron.*,

that ; this ; the former. *Pers. pron.*, he, she, it.

illīc, *adv.*, there, in that place.

illō, *adv.*, thither, to that place, thing *or* end.

imbēcillītās, ātis, *f.* (imbēcillus), weakness, feebleness.

imber, bris, *m.*, a shower, rain.

īmītor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to imitate, copy.

immānis, e, *adj.*, immense, enormous, vast, wild.

im-mīnēō, ěre, —, —, *intr.* (in + mīneo), to project, overhang ; to be near.

im-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (in + mitto), to send on *or* into ; to put *or* let in ; to introduce.

im-mōlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in + mōla), to sacrifice, immolate.

im-mortālis, e, *adj.*, immortal.

im-mūnis, e, *adj.* (in + mūnus), exempt from public service *or* taxation ; free from.

im-mūnītās, ātis, *f.*, immunity, exemption from public service.

im-pār, āris, *adj.*, uneven, unequal.

im-pārātus, a, um, *adj.*, unprepared, unprovided, not ready.

im-pēdīmentum, ī, *n.* (impēdio), hindrance, obstacle, impediment. **Impēdīmenta**, ōrum, *n. pl.*, baggage of an army.

im-pēdīō, ěre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.* (in + pes), to entangle,

- embarrass, impede, hinder, obstruct, engage.
- im-pēdītus, a, um, *partic. adj.*** (im-pēdio), obstructed, difficult, troublesome.
- im-pello, ěre, pŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*** (in + pello), to drive, urge, impel; to incite, induce.
- im-pendĕo, ěre, —, —, *intr.*** (in + pendeo), to overhang; to impend, threaten.
- im-pendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*** (in + pendo), to expend, employ.
- im-pensus, a, um, *partic. adj.*** (impendo), expensive, high, great.
- im-pērātor, ōris, *m.*** (impĕro), a commander-in-chief, general.
- im-pērātum, ī, *n.***, command, order.
- im-per-fectus, a, um, *adj.***, unfinished, imperfect, incomplete.
- im-pērītus, a, um, *adj.*** (in + perītus), unskilled, unacquainted, ignorant, inexperienced.
- im-pĕrīum, ī, *n.***, command, direction; power, government, empire.
- im-pĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*** (in + pĕro), to command, order; to assign.
- im-pĕtro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*** (in + pĕtro), to accomplish, effect; to obtain, procure.
- im-pĕtus, ūs, *m.*** (impĕto), attack, charge, assault, onset; force, impetuosity.
- im-pīus, a, um, *adj.*** (in + pīus), impious, irreverent, ungodly.
- im-plīco, āre, āvī, atum, *or* uī ĭtum, *tr.*** (in + plīco), to entangle, involve, entwine, interlace.
- im-plōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*** (in + plōro), to entreat, implore.
- im-pōno, ěre, pōsŭī, pōsitum, *tr.*** (in + pōno), to place *or* lay on; to impose upon, set over; to embark.
- im-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*** (in + porto), to import.
- im-prīmīs, *adv.*** (in + primus), especially, particularly.
- im-prōbus, a, um, *adj.***, wicked, shameless, unprincipled.
- im-prōvīso, *adv.*** (imprōvīsus), unexpectedly, suddenly.
- im-prōvīsus, a, um, *adj.***, unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.
- dē imprōvīsō, suddenly, unexpectedly.**
- im-prūdēns, tis, *adj.***, not foreseeing, unaware, imprudent, ignorant, off one's guard.
- im-prūdentīa, ae, *f.***, imprudence, want of foresight, inadvertence.
- im-pūbēs, ěris, *adj.*** (in + pūbes), youthful; chaste, continent.
- im-pugno, āre, āvī, atum, *tr.***, to attack, assail; to impugn, oppose.
- im-pulsus, a, um. See im-pello.**
- im-pulsus, ūs, *m.*** (impello), impulse; instigation.
- im-pūnē, *adv.*** (in + poena), without punishment, with impunity.

im-pūnītās, ātis, *f.*, impunity.
īmus, a, um. See **infērus**.

in, *prep.* with the accus. or abl.,
in, into, to, at, within, dur-
ing; with, among; on, about,
concerning, over, for; against,
towards; in the case of.

inānis, e, *adj.*, empty; vain,
useless, idle.

in-cautē, *adv.*, incautiously, un-
warily, inconsiderately.

in-cautus, a, um, *adj.* (in +
cāveo), incautious, unwary,
heedless.

in-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum,
intr., to go on, advance;
to approach, attack, seize.

in-cendium, ī, *n.* (incendo), a
fire, conflagration.

in-cendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.* (in
+ candeo), to set on fire,
kindle, burn; to inflame, ex-
cite.

in-certus, a, um, *adj.*, uncer-
tain; unreliable, untrust-
worthy.

in-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cāsum, *intr.*
(in + cādo), to fall into or
upon; to come upon, meet
with; to happen, occur.

in-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.*
(in + caedo), to cut into.

in-cīpio, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.*
(in + cāpio), to begin, com-
mence; to attempt, under-
take.

in-cīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
urge on, incite, encourage,
rouse.

in-clūdo, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to
include, enclose, shut in.

in-cognītus, a, um, *adj.*, un-
known.

in-cōlo, ěre, cōlūī, cultum, *tr.*
and *intr.*, to dwell; to in-
habit.

in-cōlūmis, e, *adj.*, safe, unin-
jured, unimpaired.

in-commōdē, *adv.*, unfortu-
nately.

in-commōdum, ī, *n.*, disadvan-
tage, loss, disaster, injury.

in-commōdus, a, um, *adj.*, in-
convenient, unfortunate, dis-
advantageous.

in-consultē, *adv.*, inconsider-
ately, unadvisedly, indis-
creetly.

in-crēdībīlis, *adj.*, incredible.

in-crēpīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
freq. (in-crēpo), to rebuke,
reprove, blame, taunt.

in-crēpo, āre, āvī, ātum, and
uī, ītum, *intr.* and *tr.*, to
sound, rattle; to censure, re-
prove, rebuke.

in-cumbo, ěre, cūbūī, cūbītum,
intr., to lean or recline up-
on; to apply or exert one's
self, attend to.

in-cursio, ōnis, *f.*, an inroad,
incursion, invasion; attack.

in-cursus, ūs, *m.*, an attack,
onset, assault.

in-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in
+ causa), to accuse, blame,
complain of.

inde, *adv.*, thence, from that
place; after that, then, next.

in-dīcium, ī, *n.* (index), discov-
ery, information, disclosure,
evidence, proof, indication.

- in-dīco**, ěre, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, to declare, proclaim; to appoint.
- in-dictus**, a, um, *adj.* (in + dīco) unsaid, unpleaded. **In-dictā causā** = without a hearing.
- indīgeo**, ěre, uī, —, *intr.* (in + ěgeo), to need, want, lack.
- in-dignē**, *adv.*, unworthily, undeservedly; shamefully.
- in-dignītās**, ātis, *f.*, unworthiness; indignity, insult.
- in-dignor**, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to deem unworthy; to be indignant, displeased; to disdain.
- in-dignus**, a, um, *adj.*, unworthy; shameful, dishonorable.
- in-dīlīgens**, tis, *adj.*, careless, negligent.
- in-dīlīgenter**, *adv.*, carelessly, negligently.
- in-dīlīgentīa**, ae, *f.*, carelessness, negligence.
- in-dūco**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to bring or lead in, conduct, introduce; to induce, influence; to draw on, cover.
- in-dulgentīa**, ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor.
- indulgēo**, ěrē, sī, tum, *intr.*, to indulge, favor, gratify.
- indūo**, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to put on; se induere, to fall into or upon, to be entangled in.
- industriē**, *adv.* (industrius), industriously, diligently.
- indūtiae**, ārum, *f. pl.* (induo), a truce, armistice.
- īn-ěo**, ěre, īvī or iī, ĭtum, *tr.* and *intr.*, to go into, enter; to enter upon, begin, commence, form.
- īn-ermis**, e, or **īn-ermus**, a, um, *adj.* (in + arma), unarmed, defenceless.
- īn-ers**, tis, *adj.* (in + ars), indolent, sluggish, inactive, lazy, spiritless.
- in-fāmīa**, ae, *f.* (in + fāma), disgrace, dishonor, infamy.
- in-fans**, tis, *adj.* (in + fāri), that cannot speak. **Infans**, tis, *m. and f.*, an infant, child.
- in-fectus**, a, um, *adj.* (in + fācio), unfinished, unaccomplished.
- in-fĕro**, ferre, intŭlī, inlātum, *tr.*, to bring or carry into or on; to introduce, place on; to inflict, produce, cause; to advance, assign. **Signa in-ferre**, to advance the standards, to attack.
- infĕrus**, a, um, *adj.*, below, beneath, low. *Comp.* infĕrior, lower, inferior; *super.* infīmus or īmus, the lowest, last, deepest, lowest part of, bottom of.
- in-festus**, a, um, *adj.*, insecure, unsafe; hostile, embittered, dangerous.
- in-fīcio**, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (in + fācio), to stain, dye, color.
- in-fīdēlis**, e, *adj.*, unfaithful, faithless, treacherous.
- in-fīgo**, ěre, fixī, fixum, *tr.*, to fix in, fasten in.
- in-fīmus**, a, um. See infĕrus.

in-fīnītus, a, um, *adj.*, infinite, immense, unlimited, boundless.
in-firmītās, ātis, *f.*, weakness, infirmity, feebleness; fickleness.
in-firmus, a, um, *adj.*, weak, feeble, infirm.
in-flecto, ěre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to bend, curve, crook.
in-flūo, ěre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow into, empty into.
in-fōdīo, ěre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to dig in; to bury.
infra, *adv.*, below, beneath.
infra, *prep.* with the accus., below, under, less than.
ingens, tis, *adj.*, huge, enormous, vast.
in-grātus, a, um, *adj.*, unpleasant, disagreeable; ungrateful.
in-grēdior, ī, gressus, *tr. and intr.* (in + grādior), to go into, enter, advance; to enter upon, begin, commence.
in-īcio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (in + iācio), to throw or cast into; to put or lay on; to infuse, inspire, occasion.
in-īmīcītīa, ae, *f.* (inimīcus), enmity, hostility.
in-īmīcus, a, um, *adj.* (in + amīcus), unfriendly, hostile, inimical.
in-īmīcus, ī, *m.*, an enemy.
in-īquītās, ātis, *f.*, unevenness, inequality; unfavorableness; injustice.
in-īquus, a, um, *adj.* (in + aequus), unequal, un-

even; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unjust.
in-ītium, ī, *n.* (in-eo), beginning, element.
in-iungo, ěre, iunxī, iunctum, *tr.*, to join or attach to, fasten on; to lay or impose on, enjoin; to inflict, impose.
iniūria, ae, *f.* (in + ius), injury, injustice, damage, wrong;
in-iūriā, *as adv.*, unjustly.
in-iussū, *abl.*, without command.
in-lātus, a, um. See in-fēro.
in-līgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (in + līgo), to bind on, fasten, connect.
in-lustris, e, *adj.*, bright, clear; illustrious; remarkable.
in-nascor, ī, nātus, *intr. dep.*, to be born in; to grow or spring up in.
in-nātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (innascor), inborn, innate, natural.
in-nītor, ī, nixus, *intr. dep.*, to lean upon, rest upon.
in-nōcens, tis, *adj.*, innocent; harmless.
in-nōcentīa, ae, *f.*, innocence; integrity, uprightness.
in-ōpīa, ae, *f.* (inops), want, scarcity, poverty.
in-ōpīnans, tis, *adj.* (in + opīnor), not expecting, unawares.
inquam, *def. v.*, I say.
in-rīdeo, ěre, rīsī, rīsum, *tr. and intr.* (in + rīdeo), to laugh at, jeer, ridicule.
in-rīdīcūlē, *adv.*, unwittingly.

in-rumpo, ěre, rūpī, ruptum, *intr.*, to break *or* burst into, rush into.

in-ruptio, ōnis, *f.*, an irruption, inroad ; attack.

in-sciens, tis, *adj.* (in + scio), not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

in-sciētia, ae, *f.* (in-sciens), ignorance, inexperience.

in-scius, a, um, *adj.* (in + scio), ignorant, unaware, not knowing.

in-sēquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue, harass.

in-sēro, ěre, uī, tum, *tr.*, to put in, insert, ingraft.

in-sīdīae, ārum, *f. pl.* (in-sīdeo), an ambush, ambuscade ; artifice, stratagem, snares.

in-sīdior, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to lie in wait, lie in ambush, lay snares for.

in-signe, is, *n.* (insignis), a distinctive mark, badge, decoration ; a sign, signal.

in-signis, e, *adj.* (in + signum), remarkable, eminent, distinguished, marked.

in-sīlio, īre, uī *or* iī, sultum, *intr.* (in + sālio), to leap upon, spring upon.

in-simūlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to accuse, charge, blame.

in-sinūo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to insinuate, work in, creep (*se*).

in-sisto, ěre, stītī, —, *intr.*, to stand upon ; to begin ; to adopt, pursue, exert one's self.

in-sōlenter, *adv.* (in-sōlens), excessively, haughtily, insolently.

in-sōlītus, a, um, *adj.* (in + soleo), unusual, unwonted.

in-specto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to look at, observe, view.

in-stābīlis, e, *adj.* (in + sto), unsteady, variable, uncertain.

instar, *indecl. n.*, image, likeness ; like.

in-stīgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to instigate, incite, stimulate.

in-stītūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (in + stātuo), to put *or* place in ; to build, erect, construct ; to prepare, procure ; to begin, commence, undertake ; to arrange, institute, establish, determine, resolve ; to train up, educate.

in-stītūtum, ī, *n.* (instituo), a purpose, design, plan ; custom, institution, habit.

in-sto, āre, stītī, stātum, *intr.*, to stand upon ; to approach, be at hand ; to press on, pursue, threaten.

in-strūmentum, ī, *n.* (instrūo), an instrument, implement, tool, utensil, equipment.

in-strūo, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to arrange, draw up ; to prepare, erect, furnish, equip.

in-suē-factus, a, um, *adj.* (in + suesco + fācio), accustomed, habituated, trained.

in-suētus, a, um, *adj.* (in + suesco), unaccustomed, unused ; unwonted.

insŭla, *ae, f.*, an island.
in-sŭper, *adv.*, above, upon; moreover, besides.
in-tęger, *gra, grum, adj.*, entire, whole, untouched, unimpaired, fresh.
in-tęgo, *ęre, xī, ctum, tr.*, to cover.
intel-lęgo, *ęre, lexī, lectum, tr.* (inter + lęgo), to understand, know, observe, perceive.
in-tendo, *ęre, di, tum and sum, tr.*, to stretch out, direct towards; to strive, endeavor.
in-tentus, *a, um, partic. adj.* (intendo), intent upon, attentive, fixed upon, on the alert.
inter, *prep. with the accus.*, between, among, amid, with, during.
inter-cędo, *ęre, cessī, cessum, intr.*, to come between, intervene; to be interposed, exist between.
inter-cīpio, *ęre, cępī, ceptum, tr.* (inter + cāpio), to intercept, seize, capture.
inter-clŭdo, *ęre, sī, sum, tr.*, to shut *or* cut off; to hinder, prevent, debar.
inter-dīco, *ęre, xī, ctum, tr.*, to forbid, interdict, prohibit, exclude.
inter-diŭ, *adv.*, in the daytime, by day.
inter-dum, *adv.*, sometimes.
intęr-ęā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.

intęr-ęo, *īre, iī, itum, intr.*, to perish, be lost, undone.
inter-esse. *See* inter-sum.
inter-ficio, *ęre, fęcī, fectum, tr.* (inter + fācio), to kill, slay, destroy.
inter-icio, *ęre, ięcī, iectum, tr.* (inter + iācio), to put *or* throw between. *Pass.* to intervene.
intęrim, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
intęrior, *us, comp. adj.*, inner, interior; **intęriōres**, those in the interior. *Super.* **intīmus**.
intęr-itus, *ūs, m.* (intęr-ęo), death, destruction, ruin.
inter-mitto, *ęre, mīsī, missum, tr. and intr.*, to place *or* leave between; to interpose; to discontinue, interrupt, neglect, break off; to cease.
inter-nęcio, *ōnis, f.* (inter + nęco), a massacre, slaughter, destruction.
inter-pello, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to interrupt, disturb, hinder, prevent.
inter-pōno, *ęre, pōsŭī, pōsītum, tr.*, to place between, interpose; to adduce, allege; to pledge (*fidem*); to apply, propose.
interpres, *ętis, m. and f.*, an interpreter, mediator, agent.
interprętor, *ārī, ātus, tr. dep.*, to interpret, expound, explain.
inter-ręgo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to ask, inquire; to accuse.
inter-rumpo, *ęre, rūpī, ruptum,*

- tr.*, to break off, interrupt ; to break down.
- inter-scindo**, ěre, scĭdĭ, scis-sum, *tr.*, to cut asunder, tear down, destroy.
- inter-sum**, esse, fuĭ, —, *irr.* *intr.*, to be between ; to be present ; to be occupied with. **Interest**, *impers.*, it concerns, is important.
- inter-vallum**, ĭ, *n.* (inter + vallus), interval, distance.
- inter-vĕnio**, ĭre, vĕnĭ, ventum, *intr.*, to come between ; to arrive, intervene, happen, occur.
- inter-ventus**, ūs, *m.*, intervention, interposition.
- in-texo**, ěre, xŭĭ, xtum, *tr.*, to weave into ; to interweave, interlace, cover.
- in-tŏlĕranter**, *adv.* (in + tŏlĕro), excessively, immoderately.
- intrā**, *prep.* with the accus., within, in, during.
- in-trĭtus**, a, um, *adj.* (in + tĕro), not worn out, not exhausted.
- intrŏ**, *adv.*, within.
- intro**, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to enter, go into, penetrate.
- intrŏ-dŭco**, ěre, xĭ, ctum, *tr.*, to lead in, introduce.
- intrŏ-ĕo**, ĭre, ĭvĭ, or ĭĭ, ĭtum, *intr.*, to go into, enter.
- intrŏ-ĭtus**, ūs, *m.*, entrance, access.
- intrŏ-mitto**, ěre, mĭsĭ, mis-sum, *tr.*, to send or let in ; to introduce.
- introrsus**, *adv.* (for intro-versus), on the inside, inward, within, inland.
- intrŏ-rumpo**, ěre, rūpĭ, ruptum, *intr.*, to break or burst into.
- intŭĕor**, ĕrĭ, tŭĭtus, *tr. dep.*, to look at, regard, behold.
- intus**, *adv.*, within, on the inside.
- ĭn-ŭsĭtātus**, a, um, *adj.*, unusual, uncommon, strange.
- ĭn-ŭtĭlis**, e, *adj.*, useless, unprofitable, unserviceable.
- in-vādo**, ěre, āsĭ, āsum, *tr. and intr.*, to go into, enter ; to attack, invade.
- in-vĕnio**, ĭre, vĕnĭ, ventum, *tr.*, to come upon, find, find out, discover, invent.
- in-ventor**, ōris, *m.*, an inventor, author, originator.
- in-vetĕrasco**, ěre, rāvĭ, —, *intr.*, to grow old ; to become fixed, settled, or established.
- in-vĭcem**, *adv.* (in + vĭcis), by turns, one after another, one another, mutually, alternately.
- in-victus**, a, um, *adj.*, unconquered ; unconquerable, invincible.
- in-vĭdeo**, ĕre, vĭdĭ, vĭsum, *tr.*, to envy, grudge.
- in-vĭdia**, ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy ; hatred, odium, unpopularity.
- in-vĭŏlātus**, a, um, *adj.* (in + vĭŏlo), inviolable, inviolate.
- in-vĭsus**, a, um, *partic. adj.* (in-vĭdeo), hated, hateful, odious.

invīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to invite; to entice, allure.
invītus, a, um, *adj.*, unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.
ipse, a, um, *intens. pers. pron.*, himself, herself, itself. *Dem. mon. adj. pron.*, very, exactly.
īra, ae, *f.*, anger, wrath.
īrācundia, ae, *f.*, anger, rage, passion.
īrācundus, a, um, *adj.*, irascible, passionate, angry.
īs, ēa, īd, *dem. adj. pron.*, that, this, such. **Eō**, *abl.*, on that account, for this reason. **Eā**, *abl.*, in that way, there. *Also, pers. pron.*, he, she, it.
iste, a, ud, *dem. adj. pron.*, that, that of yours, this, such. *Also, pers. pron.*, he, she, it.
itā, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a manner. **Ita ut**, just as.
itā-que, *conj.*, and so, therefore.
item, *adv.*, likewise, also.
īter, ītīnēris, *n.* (eo), a journey, march, road, way.
itērum, *adv.*, again.
ītūrus, a, um. *See* ēo.
iūba, ae, *f.*, a mane.
iūbeo, ēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, to command, order.
iūdīcium, ī, *n.*, a judgment; trial; sentence, decision; discernment.
iūdīco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ius + dīco), to judge; to pronounce, declare; to decide, determine.

iūgum, ī, *n.*, a yoke; a yoke, two spears set upright with one across their top; a ridge, height, summit.
iūmentum, ī, *n.*, a beast of burden; ox, horse, etc.
iunctūra, ae, *f.* (iungo), a joining, junction, joint, union.
iungo, ēre, iunxī, iunctum, *tr.*, to join, unite, bind, fasten, connect.
iūnior. *See* iūvēnis.
Iuppīter, Iōvis, *m.*, son of Saturn and king of the gods.
iūro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to swear.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law, justice; power, authority. **Ius dicere**, to administer justice, pronounce judicial decisions.
Iūre, with justice, justly.
iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.* (ius + iūro), an oath.
iussū, *abl.*, by order, by command.
iustītia, ae, *f.*, justice, equity.
iustus, a, um, *adj.* (iūs), just, right, fair; complete, full, proper.
iūvēnis, e, *adj.*, young. **Iūvēnis**, is, *m.*, a youth. *Comp.*
iūnior.
iūventūs, ūtis, *f.*, youth; young persons, young men.
iūvo, āre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, to help, aid, assist.
iuxtā, *adv.*, near, near by, by the side of.
iuxtā, *prep. with the accus.*, near to, by, next to.

K.

Kal., for Kālendae, and its cases.

Kālendae, ārum, *f. pl.*, the first day of month, the Calends.

L.

L., for Lucius.

L = 50.

lābor, ī, lapsus, *intr. dep.*, to fall, glide, slip down; to fall away, fail, err.

lābor, ōris, *m.*, labor, toil, hardship.

lābōro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to labor, strive, toil; to be in distress, be hard pressed.

lābrum, ī, *n.*, a lip; rim, edge, margin, brink.

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.

lācesso, ěre, īvī or iī, itum, *tr.* (lācio), to provoke, irritate, challenge; to attack, assail.

lācrīma, ae, *f.*, a tear.

lācrīmo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to weep.

lācus, ūs, *m.*, a lake.

laedo, ěre, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, to strike; to injure, violate, harm.

laetātio, ōnis, *f.*, joy, rejoicing.

laetitia, ae, *f.*, joy, gladness, delight, exultation.

laetus, a, um, *adj.*, joyful, glad.

languīdē, *adv.*, languidly, feebly, faintly. *Comp.* languīdīus.

languīdus, a, um, *adj.*, languid, feeble, faint, sluggish.

languor, ōris, *m.*, languor, faintness, weariness, listlessness.

lāpis, īdis, *m.*, a stone.

lāquēus, ī, *m.*, a noose, snare.

largior, irī, itus, *tr. dep.*, to give liberally; to bestow, impart, supply.

largiter, *adv.*, largely, liberally.

Largiter posse, to have great influence.

largitio, ōnis, *f.*, liberal giving; liberality; bribery.

lassitūdo, īnis, *f.* (lassus), weariness, fatigue, lassitude.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively.

lātēbra, ae, *f.*, a hiding-place, lurking-place, covert, retreat.

lāteo, ěre, uī, —, *intr.*, to lurk, skulk, lie hidden, concealed, or unnoticed.

lātītūdo, īnis, *f.*, breadth, width; extent.

lātro, ōnis, *m.*, a robber, bandit.

lātrōcīnīum, ī, *n.*, robbery.

lātus, a, um, *adj.*, broad, wide; extensive, spacious.

lātus, a, um. *See* fēro.

lātus, ěris, *n.*, the side, flank.

laudo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (laus), to praise, commend.

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, fame, renown, merit.

lāvo, āre and ěre, lāvāvī and lāvī, lāvātum, lautum, and lōtum, *tr.*, to wash, bathe.

laxo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to loosen, widen, open, extend.

lectus, a, um. *See* lēgo.

lēgātio, ōnis, *f.*, an embassy, deputation, legation.

lĕgātus, *ī, m.* (*lĕgo*), an ambassador; deputy, lieutenant. **Legatus pro praetore** = a lieutenant with praetorian power.
lĕgio, *ōnis, f.* (*lĕgo*), a legion.
lĕgĭōnārius, *a, um, adj.*, of a legion, legionary.
lĕgo, *ĕre, lĕgĭ, lectum, tr.*, to gather, collect; to choose, select; to read.
Lĕmannus, *ī, m.*, the lake of Geneva.
lĕnis, *e, adj.*, gentle, mild; smooth, soft.
lĕnĭtās, *ātis, f.*, mildness, gentleness, smoothness.
lĕnĭter, *adv.*, gently, mildly.
lentē, *adv.*, slowly.
lĕpus, *ōris, m.*, a hare.
lĕvis, *e, adj.*, light; trivial, trifling, slight, fickle.
lĕvĭtās, *ātis, f.*, lightness; fickleness, levity, inconstancy.
lĕvo, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.* (*levis*), to lighten; to alleviate, relieve, aid.
lex, *lĕgis, f.*, a law.
lĭbenter, *adv.* (*lĭbens*), willingly, cheerfully, gladly.
lĭber, *ĕra, ĕrum, adj.*, free, unrestrained.
lĭbĕrālĭtās, *ātis, f.* (*lĭbĕrālis*), generosity, liberality.
lĭbĕrālĭter, *adv.*, generously, liberally, kindly, graciously.
lĭbĕrē, *adv.* (*lĭber*), freely, frankly, boldly.
lĭbĕrī, *ōrum, m. pl.*, children.

lĭbĕro, *āre, āvī, ātum, tr.*, to free, liberate, release.
lĭbertās, *ātis, f.* (*lĭber*), freedom, liberty.
lĭbrĭlis, *e, adj.* (*lĭbra*), weighing a pound.
lĭcentia, *ae, f.* (*lĭcet*), freedom, license, presumption, boldness.
lĭcĕor, *ĕrī, lĭcĭtus, intr. dep.*, to bid *at auction*.
lĭcet, *ĕre, lĭcĭt or lĭcĭtum est, impers.*, it is permitted, allowed. **Licet mihi** = I may, can.
lignātio, *ōnis, f.*, procuring wood.
lignātor, *ōris, m.*, a woodman, wood-cutter.
lĭlĭum, *ī, n.*, a lily; a military work in the form of a lily.
lĭnĕa, *ae, f.*, a line; string.
lingua, *ae, f.*, the tongue; language, speech.
lingŭla, *ae, f.*, a tongue of land.
linter, *tris, f.*, a boat, skiff.
lĭnum, *ī, n.*, flax, linen.
lĭs, *lĭtis, f.*, strife, dispute; lawsuit; damages.
littĕra, *ae, f.*, a letter of the alphabet. **Littĕrae**, *ārum*, letters; a letter, epistle, documents, writings.
lĭtus, *ōris, n.*, the shore, coast, strand.
lŏcus, *ī, m.* (*plur. lŏcī and lŏca*), a place, spot, position; occasion, opportunity; rank, condition.
longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance; widely, by far.

longinquus, a, um, *adj.*, long ; remote, distant.

longitudo, inis, *f.*, length.

longūrius, ī, *m.*, a long pole.

longus, a, um, *adj.*, long, distant.

lōquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. and intr. dep.*, to speak, say, declare.

lōrica, ae, *f.*, a coat of mail, cuirass ; a parapet, breast-work.

lūna, ae, *f.*, the moon.

lūtum, ī, *n.*, mud, mire.

lux, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight.

luxūria, ae, *f.* (luxus), luxury ; excess, extravagance.

M.

M., for **Marcus**.

M = 1000.

mācēria, ae, *f.*, a wall, inclosure.

māchīnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a machine.

maestus, a, um, *adj.*, sad, mournful, dejected, sorrowful.

māgis, *comp. adv.*, more, rather. *Super. maxīmē*.

māgistrātus, ūs, *m.*, a magistracy ; a magistrate, officer.

magnī-ficus, a, um, *adj.* (magnus + fācio), splendid, magnificent.

magnitudo, inis, *f.*, greatness, size, magnitude, extent.

magn-ōpēre, *adv.* (magnus + ōpus), very much, greatly, exceedingly, strongly.

magnus, a, um, *adj.*, great, large, much, important. *Comp. māior, super. maxīmus*.

māiestās, ātis, *f.* (māius), greatness, majesty, dignity.

māior, *comp. of magnus*.

māiōrēs, um, *m. pl.* (māior), forefathers, ancestors.

mālācia, ae, *f.*, a calm at sea.

mālē, *adv.*, badly, ill, unfortunately, unsuccessfully. *Comp.*

pēius, *super. pessīmē*.

mālē-fīcium, ī, *n.* (male + fācio), harm, damage, injury, mischief.

mālo, malle, māluī, —, *irr. tr.* (māgis + vōlo), to choose rather, prefer, be more willing.

mālum, ī, *n.*, an evil ; misfortune, hardship, calamity.

mālus, ī, *m.*, a mast ; pole, beam.

mālus, a, um, *adj.*, bad, evil, mischievous, injurious. *Comp. pēior, super. pessīmus*.

mandātum, ī, *n.*, a charge, commission, order, command.

mando, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (mānus + do), to commit, commission ; to command, order, charge.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.

māneo, ēre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, stay, continue.

mānīpūlāris, e, *adj.*, of a manipule or company, manipular. **Mānīpūlārīs** suos, soldiers of his company.

mānīpūlus, ī, *m.* (mānus + plēnus), a handful, bundle ; a manipule or company of soldiers.

man-suē-fīo, *fīērī*, *factus*, *irr. pass.* (*mānus* + *suētus* + *fīo*), to be tamed.

man-suētūdo, *īnis*, *f.*, mildness, clemency, gentleness.

mānus, *ūs*, *f.*, a hand; art; a body, force, band. **Dāre manūs** = to yield, give up.

māre, *is*, *n.*, the sea.

mārītīmus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, maritime, of or on the sea.

Mars, **Martis**, *m.*, the god of war; war, battle, strife.

mās, **māris**, *m.*, a male.

matāra, *ae*, *f.*, a javelin, pike.

māter, *tris*, *f.*, a mother.

māteria, *ae*, *f.* and **māteriēs**, *ēī*, *f.* (*māter*), material, timber.

māterior, *ārī*, *ātus*, *intr.*, to sell or procure timber.

mātrīmōnīum, *ī*, *n.*, marriage.

mātūrē, *adv.*, early, seasonably; quickly, speedily, soon. *Comp.* **mātūrius**, *super.* **mā-turrīmē**.

mātūresco, *ēre*, *ūruī*, —, *intr.*, to ripen, become ripe.

mātūro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* and *intr.*, to hasten, make haste.

mātūrus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, ripe; early; seasonable, timely.

maxīmē, *adv.* (*super.* of **māgis**), very, most; most of all, above all, particularly, especially.

maxīmus, *a*, *um*. *Super.* of **magnus**.

mēdeor, *ērī*, —, *intr. dep.*, to heal, cure, remedy, provide against.

mēdiōcris, *e*, *adj.* (*mēdius*), middling, ordinary, moderate.

mēdiōcritēr, *adv.*, ordinarily, moderately, in an ordinary degree.

mēditerrānēus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* (*mēdius* + *terra*), inland.

mēdius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, in the middle, mid, in the midst of, middle, intermediate.

mēlior, *us*. *Comp.* of **bōnus**.

mēlius. *Comp.* of **bēnē**.

membrum, *ī*, *n.*, a member, limb.

mēmīnī, *isse*, *defect. tr.*, to remember, recollect.

mēmōr, *ōris*, *adj.*, mindful.

inēmōria, *ae*, *f.*, memory, recollection.

mendācium, *ī*, *n.*, a falsehood.

mens, **mentis**, *f.*, the mind, soul; heart, disposition; intellect, judgment, reason.

mensis, *is*, *m.*, a month.

mensūra, *ae*, *f.* (*mētiōr*), measure, measurement.

mentio, *ōnis*, *f.*, mention.

mercātor, *ōris*, *m.* (*mercor*), a merchant, trader.

mercātūra, *ae*, *f.* (*mercor*), trade, traffic, commerce.

mercēs, *ēdis*, *f.*, hire, pay, wages, reward.

Mercūrius, *ī*, *m.*, Mercury, son of Jupiter and Maia, and messenger of the gods.

mēreor, *ēre*, *uī*, *ītum*, *tr.* and **mēreor ērī ītus**, *tr. dep.*, to deserve, merit; to earn, gain, acquire.

mēridiānus, a, um, *adj.*, of mid-day, midday, noon.

mēridiēs, ēī, *m.* (mēdius + dies), midday, noon; the south.

mēritō, *adv.*, deservedly, justly, with reason.

mēritum, ī, *n.*, merit, desert; service, favor, kindness.

mētior, īrī, mensus, *tr. dep.*, to measure, measure out.

mēto, ěre, messuī, messum, *tr.*, to reap; mow; to gather.

mētus, ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.

mēus, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, my, mine, my own.

mīles, ītis, *m and f.*, a soldier.

mīlia. *See mille.*

mīlitāris, e, *adj.*, military, warlike, of war.

mīlitia, ae, *f.*, warfare, war; military service.

mille, *num. adj. and subs.*, a thousand. *Plur.* mīlia, ĩum.

mīnimē, *adv.* (*super. of parum*), least, least of all, by no means.

mīnimus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of parvus*), the least, smallest.

mīnor, us, *adj.* (*comp. of parvus*), smaller, less, inferior.

mīnor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to threaten, menace.

mīnūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to lessen, diminish, impair.

mīnus, *adv.* (*comp. of parum*), less; not.

mīror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to wonder, admire, wonder at.

mīrus, a, um, *adj.*, wonderful.

mīser, ěra, ěrum, *adj.*, wretched, unfortunate, pitiable.

mīsērī-cordia, ae, *f.*, mercy, compassion, pity.

mīsēror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to commiserate, pity, deplore.

missus, ūs, *m.*, a sending, despatching.

mīte, *adv.*, gently, mildly.

mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send; to throw, discharge, hurl; to dismiss, let go.

mōbīlis, e, *adj.* (moveo), movable; changeable, fickle.

mōbilitās, ātis, *f.*, fickleness, changeableness; rapidity, speed.

mōbīliter, *adv.*, rapidly, quickly, easily, readily.

mōdēror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (mōdus), to manage, govern, regulate.

mōdestia, ae, *f.*, moderation, modesty, discretion.

mōdō, *adv.* (mōdus), only, but, merely; just, just now, lately.

Non modo, not only. **Modo**

. . . modo, sometimes . . .

sometimes; now . . . now.

mōdus, ī, *m.*, measure, quantity, manner, way, mode.

moenia, ĩum, *n. pl.* (mūnio), defensive walls, city walls, ramparts.

mōlēs, is, *f.*, a huge mass; a dike, dam, mole.

mōlestē, *adv.*, with trouble, vexatiously. **Molestē fero**, I take it ill, am displeased.

mōlimentum, ī, *n.*, exertion, effort.

mōlītus, a, um. *See mōlo.*

mollio, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.*, to soften ; to lighten, ease.
mollis, e, *adj.*, soft, mild, gentle ; effeminate, weak.
mollitiēs, ēī, *f.*, effeminacy, irresolution, weakness.
mōlo, ěre, uī, ītum, *tr.*, to grind.
mōmentum, ī, *n.*, weight, importance, influence, moment.
mōneo, ěre, uī, ītum, *tr.*, to advise, warn, admonish.
mons, tis, *m.*, a mountain.
mōra, ae, *f.*, delay, hindrance.
morbus, ī, *m.*, disease, sickness.
mōrior, ī, **mortūus**, *intr. dep.*, to die.
mōror, ārī, ātus, *tr. and intr.*, to delay, remain, linger ; to retard, detain.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, usage, practice, character.
mōtus, ūs, *m.*, motion, movement ; commotion, tumult, disturbance.
mōveo, ěre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move ; to excite, affect, influence.
mūlier, ěris, *f.*, a woman, wife.
mūlio, ōnis, *m.*, a muleteer.
multitūdo, īnis, *f.*, a multitude, great number.
multo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to punish, fine, deprive of.
multō, *adv.*, much, by far.
multum, *adv.*, much, greatly, far, long.
multus, a, um, *adj.*, much, many. *Comp.* plūs, *super.* plūrīmus.
mūlus, ī, *m.*, a mule.

mundus, ī, *m.*, the world ; the universe.
mūnimentum, ī, *n.*, a fortification, rampart, defence.
mūnio, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *tr.*, to fortify, secure, protect.
mūnitio, ōnis, *f.*, a fortification, defence, rampart.
mūnītus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (mūnio), fortified, secured.
mūnus, ěris, *n.*, a gift, present ; a service, favor ; an office, function, duty.
mūrālis, e, *adj.*, mural.
mūrus, ī, *m.*, a wall.
musculus, ī, *m. dim.* (mus), a little mouse ; a shed, man-telet.
mūtilus, a, um, *adj.*, maimed, mutilated.
mūto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to change, alter ; to improve, to avoid.

N.

nactus, **nactus**. *See* nanciscor.
nam *or* **namque**, *conj.*, for.
nanciscor, ī, **nactus** *or* **nactus**, *tr. dep.*, to find, meet with, obtain, acquire.
nascor, ī, **nātus**, *intr. dep.*, to be born, arise, proceed, be produced.
nātālis, e, *adj.*, of birth, natal.
nātio, ōnis, *f.* (nascor), a nation, race, people.
nātīvus, a, um, *adj.*, natural.
nātū, *m.*, *abl.*, by birth, in age. **Maiōres natu** = the older persons, the elders.

nātūra, ae, *f.* (nascor), nature; disposition, character, quality.

nātus, a, um. *See* nascor.

nauta, ae, *m.*, a sailor.

nauticus, a, um, *adj.* (nauta), nautical, naval.

nāvālis, e, *adj.*, naval.

nāvicūla, ae, *f. dim.* (navis), a little boat, a skiff.

nāvigātio, ōnis, *f.* (navīgo), sailing, navigation; a voyage.

nāvigium, ī, *n.*, a ship, vessel.

nāvigo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (nāvis + āgo), to sail, navigate.

nāvis, is, *f.*, a ship, vessel.

Nāvis longa = a ship of war.

nāvo, āre, avī, ātum, *tr.*, to perform vigorously, do with zeal.

nē, *adv.*, not; ne . . . quidem, not even.

nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that not.

nē, *enclit. conj.*, whether. Ne . . . ne, whether . . . or. *In direct questions it is not translated.*

nec, *conj.*, neither, nor; and not, but not. Nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, by necessity, of necessity.

necessārius, a, um, *adj.*, necessary; pressing. Necessārius, ī, *m.*, a relative, friend, kinsman.

nēcesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.

necessitās, ātis, *f.*, necessity.

necessitūdo, īnis, *f.*, relationship, intimacy, friendship.

nec-nē, *conj.* (nec + ne), or not.

nēco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to kill, slay, destroy.

nēc-ūbī, *adv.*, that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nēfārius, a, um, *adj.*, impious, abominable, execrable.

nē-fās, *indecl. n.*, wrong, impious; a crime, disgrace.

neg-lēgo, ēre, lexī, lectum, *tr.* (nec + lēgo), to neglect, slight, disregard.

nēgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to deny, refuse, say no.

nēgōtior, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to trade, traffic, carry on a business.

nēg-ōtium, ī, *n.* (nec + otium), business, occupation; affair, matter; trouble, difficulty.

nēmo, *gen. and abl. wanting; dat.*, nemini, *m. and f.* (nē + homo), no one, nobody, no man.

nē-quāquam, *adv.*, by no means, not at all, in no wise.

nē-que, *conj.* (ne + que). *See* nec.

ne-quīquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without reason.

nē-quis is more properly written nē quis. *See* quis.

Nervicus, a, um, *adj.*, Nervian. nervus, ī, *m.*, a sinew, nerve; force, power, strength.

neu or nēve, *conj.*, and not, nor, neither.

neuter, tra, trum, *adj.* (nē + ūter), neither of two.

nex, nēcīs, *f.*, death; slaughter.

nīhil, *indecl. n.*, nothing; not at all, no, in no respect.

nīhīlum, *ī, n.*, nothing. Nihilo secius = nevertheless. Nihilo minus = nevertheless.

nīl, *indecl. n.*, nothing, no.

nīmis, *adv.*, too much, very, too, exceedingly.

nīmīus, *a, um, adj.*, too much, too great, immoderate, excessive.

nī-sī, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nītor, *ī, nīsus or nīxus, intr. dep.*, to strive, endeavor, exert one's self; to lean upon, rely upon.

nīx, nīvis, *f.*, snow.

nōbīlis, *e, adj.* (nosco), known, noted, renowned; noble, of noble birth.

nōbīlītās, ātis, *f.*, renown; noble birth, nobility.

nōcens, tis, *adj.*, hurtful, injurious; guilty, criminal.

nōceo, ēre, uī, ītum, *intr.*, to hurt, harm, injure.

noctū, *adv.*, by night, in the night.

nocturnus, *a, um, adj.*, by night, in the night, nocturnal.

nōdus, *ī, m.*, a knot, joint.

nōlo, nolle, nōluī, —, *irr. tr. and intr.* (non + vōlo), to be unwilling, not to wish.

nōmen, īnis, *n.* (nosco), a name; account, reason; pretence.

nōmīnātīm, *adv.* (nōmino), by name; expressly.

nōmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to name, call by name.

nōn, *adv.*, not, no.

Nōnae, ārum, *f. pl.* (nōnus), the Nones of a month, the ninth day before the Ides.

nōnāgintā, *num. adj.*, ninety.

non-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

non-nīhil, *adv.*, somewhat, something.

non-nullus, *a, um, adj.*, some.

non-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes.

nōnus, *a, um, num. adj.*, the ninth.

Nōricus, *a, um, adj.*, Norican.

nosco, ēre, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.*, to know, become acquainted with, learn.

noster, tra, trum, *poss. adj. pron.*, our, ours, of ours.

nōtītia, ae, *f.*, knowledge, acquaintance.

nōtus, *a, um, partic. adj.* (nosco), well-known, noted.

nōvem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine.

nōvītās, ātis, *f.*, newness, novelty, strangeness.

nōvus, *a, um, adj.*, new, strange; fresh, recent. Super. nōvissīmus, the newest, latest, last; agmen novissīmum, the rear; novissīmī, the rear men, the rear.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

noxia, ae, *f.* (nōceo), fault, offence, crime.

nūbo, ēre, nupsī, nūptum, *tr.*,

to marry, be married (*of the woman*).

nūdo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bare, uncover, expose; to strip, deprive.

nūdus, a, um, *adj.*, naked, bare, uncovered, unprotected.

nullus, a, um, *adj.* (nē + ulus), not any, no, none.

num, *interrog. adv.*, whether, in indirect questions. In direct questions, it is not translated.

nūmen, īnis, *n.* (nūo), the divine will; command; deity.

nūmērus, ī, *m.*, number; rank, place, position; account, estimation.

Nūmīda, ae, *m.*, a Numidian.

Nūmīda, ae, *adj.*, Numidian.

nummus, ī, *m.*, a piece of money, a coin; money.

numquam, *adv.* (ne + umquam), never.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present.

nuncūpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call, name.

nuntio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bring news, announce, report, inform.

nuntius, ī, *m.*, news, tidings, message; a messenger, courier.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently.

nūsquam, *adv.*, nowhere.

nūtus, ūs, *m.* (nuo), a nod, beck, command, will.

O.

ōb, *prep.* with the accus., for, on account of, for the sake of.

ōb-aerātus, a, um, *adj.* (ob +

aes), involved in debt. **Ob-aerātus**, ī, *m.*, a debtor.

ob-dūco, ěre, duxī, ductum, *tr.*, to draw over or forward, draw out, construct.

ōb-ěo, ěre, īvī or iī, ětum, *tr. and intr.*, to go through, traverse; to perform, accomplish, execute.

ob-īcio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (ob + iācio), to throw before, throw up, oppose, expose; to offer, present.

ob-iectus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (ob-īcio), lying before or opposite, exposed, lying; intervening.

ōb-ītus, ūs, *m.* (obeo), death.

ob-lātus, a, um. See of-fěro.

oblīquē, *adv.*, obliquely.

oblīquus, a, um, *adj.*, oblique, slanting.

oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus, *tr. dep.*, to forget.

ob-sĕcro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ob + sācro), to entreat, implore, beseech.

ob-sĕquentīa, ae, *f.* (obsĕquens), compliance, obsequiousness.

ob-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to watch, observe, notice, regard.

obses, ědis, *m. and f.* (ob + sĕdeo), a hostage, pledge, security.

ob-sessio, ōnis, *f.* (obsĕdeo), a siege.

ob-sĕdeo, ěre, sĕdī, sessum, *tr.* (ob + sĕdeo), to besiege, blockade.

ob-sīdio, ōnis, *f.* (obsīdeo),
a siege, blockade; imminent
danger.
ob-signo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to seal, to sign and seal.
ob-sisto, ěre, stītī, —, *intr.*, to
oppose, resist, withstand.
obstīnātē, *adv.*, resolutely,
firmly.
ob-stringo, ěre, inxī, ictum,
tr., to bind, tie; to oblige,
put under obligation.
ob-strūo, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*,
to block up, barricade, stop
up.
ob-tempĕro, āre, āvī, ātum,
intr., to comply with, sub-
mit to, obey.
ob-testor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*,
to call solemnly to witness;
to beseech, implore, conjure,
entreat.
ob-tīněo, ěre, tīnuī, tentum,
tr. (ob + tĕneo), to hold,
possess; to preserve, main-
tain; to acquire, obtain.
ob-tŭlī. *See* of-fĕro.
ob-vĕnio, ĭre, vĕnī, ventum,
intr., to meet; to happen,
occur.
ob-vīam, *adv.* (obvius), in the
way, towards, against, to
meet.
oc-cāsio, ōnis, *f.* (occīdo), an
occasion, opportunity.
oc-cāsus, ūs, *m.* (occīdo), a go-
ing down, setting, the west;
downfall, ruin, destruction.
oc-cīdens, tis, *partic. adj.* (oc-
cīdo), setting, going down.
oc-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cāsum, *intr.*

(ob + cādo), to fall, perish;
to set, go down.
oc-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.*
(ob + caedo), to cut down,
kill, slay.
occultātio, ōnis, *f.*, conceal-
ment.
occultē, *adv.*, secretly, pri-
vately.
occulto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
freq. (occŭlo), to hide, con-
ceal, secrete.
occultus, a, um, *partic. adj.*
(occŭlo), hidden, secret, con-
cealed. In occulto, in secret;
in concealment.
oc-cŭpātio, ōnis, *f.* (occŭpo),
employment, occupation.
oc-cŭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
(ob + cāpio), to seize upon,
occupy; to invade, attack;
to engage.
oc-curro, ěre, currī *or* cŭcurrī,
cursum, *intr.* (ob + curro),
to go *or* come up to; to
meet, encounter, attack; to
oppose; to occur.
oc-curso, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*
freq. (occurro), to rush on,
attack.
Ōcĕānus, ĭ, *m.*, the ocean.
ōcīus, *comp. adv.*, quickly.
octāvus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the
eighth.
octingentī, ae, a, *num. adj.*
(octo + centum), eight hun-
dred.
octŏ, *num. adj.*, eight.
octŏ-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, eigh-
teen.
octŏgintā, *num. adj.*, eighty.

octōnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, eight each, eight by eight, eight.

očūlus, ī, *m.*, the eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, *defect. v.*, I hate, detest.

ōdium, ī, *n.*, hatred, enmity.

of-fendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to strike against, come upon; to offend, displease.

of-fensio, ōnis, *f.*, an offence, harm, wounding; displeasure, aversion, dislike.

of-fĕro, ferre, obtŭlī, oblātum, *irr. tr.*, to bring before, present, offer, confer; to expose.

of-fīcium, ī, *n.* (offīcio), a service, kindness, favor; duty, allegiance; office, charge, employment.

ō-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.* (ob + mitto), to let go, omit; to lay aside, cease; to neglect, disregard.

omnīno, *adv.*, altogether, in all, only; at all, wholly.

omnīs, e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole.

ōnĕrārīus, a, um, *adj.* (onus), for burden *or* freight, transport. Nāvis oneraria, a transport ship.

ōnĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to load, burden, freight.

ōnus, ěris, *n.*, a burden, load; weight; trouble.

ōnustus, a, um, *adj.*, laden, loaded, burdened.

ōpĕra, ae, *f.*, work, labor, pains; care, attention; aid, assist-

ance. Operam dare, to take pains, give attention.

ōpīnio, ōnis, *f.*, opinion, belief, impression, reputation.

ōportet, ěre, uit, *impers.*, it behooves, is proper, becoming.

Oportet me = I ought.

oppīdānus, a, um, *adj.*, of a town. Oppīdānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, townsmen, citizens.

oppīdum, ī, *n.*, a town.

op-pōno, ěre, pōsuī, pōsītum, *tr.* (ob + pōno), to set *or* place against, to oppose, place opposite.

op-portūnē, *adv.*, fitly, seasonably, opportunely.

op-portūnītās, ātis, *f.*, fitness, convenience; opportunity, advantage, favorableness.

op-portūnus, a, um, *adj.* (ob + portus), convenient, suitable; advantageous, favorable.

op-pōsītus, a, um. *See* op-pōno.

op-prīmo, ěre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (ob + prĕmo), to press down; to express, overpower, crush; to surprise.

op-pugnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a storming, assault, attack, siege.

op-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (ob + pugno), to assail, attack, assault, storm.

ops, ōpis, *f.*, power, strength; aid, assistance; means, resources.

optātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (opto), wished for, longed for.

optīmē, *adv.* (*super. of* bĕnĕ), best, most excellently, admirably.

optĭmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of* bŏnus), best, most excellent, very good, admirable.
 ōpus, ěris, *n.*, work, labor; a deed, action. **Tanto opere**, so greatly. **Quanto opere**, how greatly, how much.
 ōpus, *n. indecl. and adj.*, need, necessity; necessary.
 ōra, ae, *f.*, the edge, border, coast, margin; region.
 ōrātio, ōnis, *f.* (ōro), speech, language, talking, words.
 ōrātor, ōris, *m.* (ōro), a speaker, orator; ambassador.
 orbis, is, *m.*, a circle; circular line of battle. **Orbis terrarum**, the earth, world.
 ordo, ĩnis, *m.*, a row, line, order, rank; arrangement.
 ōrior, ĩrĭ, ortus, *intr. dep.*, to rise, arise, begin, spring, be descended.
 ornāmentum, ĭ, *n.*, an ornament, decoration, distinction, honor.
 ornātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (orno), equipped, furnished.
 orno, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to furnish, equip; to adorn, honor.
 ōro, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.*, to implore, entreat, beg, beseech.
 ortus, ūs, *m.* (ōrior), a rising.
 ōs, ōris, *n.*, the mouth; face; - countenance.
 os-tendo, ěre, dĭ, tum, *tr.* (ob + tendo), to show, display; to disclose, manifest.
 os-tentātio, ōnis, *f.*, show, display, ostentation; pretence.

os-tento, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr. freq.* (ostendo), to show, display, exhibit.
 ōtĭum, ĭ, *n.*, leisure, ease, quiet, rest, repose.
 ōvum, ĭ, *n.*, an egg.

P.

P., for Publius.
 pābŭlātio, ōnis, *f.*, a foraging.
 pābŭlātor, ōris, *m.*, a forager.
 pābŭlŏr, ārĭ, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to forage.
 pābŭlum, ĭ, *n.*, fodder, forage.
 pācātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (pāco), pacified, peaceful, quiet.
 pāco, āre, āvĭ, ātum, *tr.* (pax), to pacify; to subdue.
 pactum, ĭ, *n.* (paciscor), an agreement, compact; manner, way.
 paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
 paenĭtet, ěre, uit, *impers.*, it repents. **Me paenitet** = I repent, regret.
 pāgus, ĭ, *m.*, a district, canton.
 pālam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.
 palma, ae, *f.*, the palm of the hand; a palm-tree.
 pālŭs, ūdis, *f.*, a marsh, swamp.
 pāluster, tris, tre, *adj.* (palus), marshy, swampy.
 pando, ěre, dĭ, passum or pansum, *tr.*, to spread out, stretch out, extend.
 pār, pāris, *adj.*, equal, like, similar, matched, a match for.
 pārātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (pāro), ready, prepared.
 parcē, *adv.*, sparingly, frugally.

parco, ēre, pēpercī *and* parsī,
parcītum *and* parsum, *intr.*,
to spare, abstain, forbear.

pārens, tis, *m. and f.* (pārio),
a parent, father *or* mother.

pārento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*
(pārens), to offer sacrifice in
honor of the dead; to
avenge, appease.

pāreo, ēre, uī, itum, *intr.*, to
obey, comply with, submit to.

pāriēs, ētis, *m.*, a wall.

pārio, ēre, pēpērī, partum, *tr.*,
to bear, bring forth; to ac-
quire, gain; to produce.

pārīter, *adv.* (pār), equally.

pāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
prepare, provide, furnish, pro-
cure, acquire, obtain.

pars, tis, *f.*, a part, portion,
share; direction; party, side.

Ex parte, in part, partly.

Multis partibus, in many re-
spects.

partim, *adv.*, partly, in part.

partio, ire, ivī *or* iī, itum, *tr.*,
and partior, irī, itus, *tr.*
dep., to share, divide, dis-
tribute.

partus, a, um. *See* pārio.

pārum, *adv.*, little, too little,
not enough. *Comp.* mīnus,
super. mīnīmē.

parvulus, a, um, *adj. dim.*
(parvus), very small; young;
trifling, slight.

parvus, a, um, *adj.*, little,
small, slight. *Comp.* mīnor,
super. mīnimus.

passim, *adv.* (pando), here
and there, everywhere.

passus, ūs, *m.* (pando), a pace,
a measure of five Roman
feet. **Mille passus** = a Ro-
man mile.

passus, a, um. *See* pando.

passus, a, um. *See* pātior.

pātē-fācĭo, ēre, fēcī, factum,
tr. (pāteo + fācĭo), to open,
throw open; to disclose,
discover.

pātē-fĭo, fĭērī, factus, *irreg.*
pass. of pātēfācĭo.

pātens, tis, *partic. adj.* (pā-
teo), open, unobstructed, ac-
cessible.

pāteo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be
open, be exposed; to ex-
tend.

pāter, tris, *m.*, a father.

pātĭenter, *adv.* (pātior), pa-
tiently, tamely.

pātĭentia, ae, *f.*, patience, en-
durance, tameness.

pātĭor, ī, passus, *tr. dep.*, to
suffer, endure, bear; to allow,
permit.

pātrĭus, a, um, *adj.* (pater),
fatherly, paternal, ancestral;
of one's country, national.

pātrōnus, ī, *m.* (pater), a pa-
tron, protector; champion,
advocate.

pātrūs, ī, *m.* (pater), an uncle,
father's brother.

paucī, ae, a, *adj.*, few, a few.

paucītās, ātis, *f.*, fewness, small
number, scarcity.

paulātĭm, *adv.*, gradually, by
degrees.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a little
while, a short time.

paulō. *See* paulus.
 paulūlum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
 paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.
 paulus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small. Paulō, *abl.*, a little, somewhat.
 pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.
 pecco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to err, offend, transgress, injure.
 pectus, ōris, *n.*, the breast.
 pēcūnia, ae, *f.* (pēcus), money; property, riches.
 pēcus, ōris, *n.*, cattle; a herd.
 pēdālis, e, *adj.* (pes), a foot long, wide, *or* thick.
 pēdes, itis, *m.* (pes), a foot-soldier; infantry.
 pēdester, tris, tre, *adj.* (pes), on foot; infantry; on land.
 pēditātus, ūs, *m.*, infantry.
 pēior, us, *adj.* (*comp.* of mālus), worse; a worse thing.
 pēius, *adv.* (*comp.* of mālē), worse.
 pellis, is, *f.*, a skin, hide; tent.
 pello, ěre, pēpūlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive away, expel; to rout, conquer, defeat.
 pendo, ěre, pēpendī, pensum, *tr.*, to weigh out; to pay; to suffer (poenas); to consider.
 pēnēs, *prep.* with the accus., with, in the power of, in the hands of.
 pēnītus, *adv.*, within, inwardly.
 per, *prep.* with the accus., through, over, during, along; by, by means of, with, un-

der; for, for the sake of, on account of.
 pēr-āgo, ěre, ēgī, actum, *tr.*, to carry through, accomplish, complete, finish, end.
 per-angustus, a, um, *adj.*, very narrow.
 per-cīpio, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (+ cāpio), to receive, acquire, obtain; to perceive, learn, hear.
 percontātio, ōnis, *f.*, inquiry.
 percunctātiō. *See* percontātiō.
 per-curro, ěre, cūcurrī *or* currī, cursum, *tr.*, and *intr.*, to run through *or* over; to traverse.
 per-cūtio, ěre, cussī, cussum, *tr.* (per + quātio), to strike through, smite, kill, slay.
 per-disco, ěre, didicī, —, *tr.*, to learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
 perdītus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (perdo), abandoned, profligate, desperate.
 per-do, ěre, didī, dītum, *tr.*, to ruin, destroy, lose.
 per-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead, bring, *or* convey through; to bring over, persuade; to draw out, construct; to prolong, protract.
 pērendīnus, a, um, *adj.*, after to-morrow.
 pēr-ēo, ěre, īvī *or* iī, ětum, *intr.*, to perish, die, be lost.
 pēr-ēquīto. āre. āvī. ātum, *intr.*, to ride through, ride around.

për-exīguūs, a, um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

per-fācīlis, e, *adj.*, very easy.

per-fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear *or* carry through; to bring, convey; to suffer, endure, undergo; to report.

per-ficio, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (per + fācio), to finish, complete, accomplish, perform; to effect, cause.

per-fīdia, ae, *f.*, perfidy, treachery.

per-fringo, ěre, frēgī, fractum, *tr.* (per + frango), to break through, burst through; to shatter, rout.

per-fūga, ae, *n.*, a deserter.

per-fūgio, ěre, fūgī, fūgītum, *intr.*, to flee to for refuge; to desert.

per-fūgīum, ī, *n.*, a refuge, shelter.

per-go, ěre, perrexī, perrectum, *intr.* (per + rēgo), to go on, continue, proceed, advance.

përīclītor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (perīcūlum), to try, attempt; to hazard, jeopardize, endanger, to incur danger.

përīcūlōsus, a, um, *adj.*, dangerous, perilous, hazardous.

përīcūlum, ī, *n.*, a trial, experiment; danger, hazard, peril, risk.

përītus, a, um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled, acquainted with.

per-lātus, a, um. *See* per-fēro.

per-lēgo, ěre, lēgī, lectum, *tr.*, to read through.

per-lūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to wash, bathe.

per-magnus, a, um, *adj.*, very great.

për-māneo, ěre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, continue, persevere, endure.

per-miscēo, ěre, cūī, istum *or* ixtum, *tr.*, to mix together, mingle, blend; to confuse.

per-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send through; to commit, intrust, surrender; to allow, permit.

per-mixtus, a, um. *See* permiscēo.

per-mōveo, ěre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to move deeply, affect; to induce, influence; to excite, arouse.

per-mulcēo, ěre, sī, sum *or* ctum, *tr.*, to soothe, appease, allay.

per-nīciēs, ēī, *f.* (per-nēco), destruction, ruin, disaster.

per-paucī, ae, a, *adj.*, very few.

per-pendīcūlum, ī, *n.* (per + pendo), a plummet, plumb-line.

per-pētīor, ī, pessus, *tr. dep.* (per + pătior), to suffer patiently; to endure, bear.

per-pētūō, *adv.*, continuously, perpetually, always.

per-pētūus, a, um, *adj.* (per + pēto), continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual. In perpetuum (*sc.* tempus), forever.

per-quīro, ěre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.*
(per + quaero), to search
for; to inquire after.

per-rumpo, ěre, rūpī, ruptum,
tr., to break through, burst
through.

per-scribo, ěre, psī, ptum, *tr.*,
to write out, describe, record.

per-sēquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to
pursue, press upon; to pun-
ish, avenge; to perform, ac-
complish, execute.

per-sēvēro, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr., to persist, continue, per-
severe.

per-solvo, ěre, solvī, sōlūtum,
tr., to release, discharge; to
pay, pay off; to suffer (*poe-
nas*).

per-spīcīo, ěre, spexī, spec-
tum, *tr.* (per + spēcio), to
see through, see clearly; to
perceive, observe; to view,
examine.

per-sto, āre, stītī, stātum,
intr., to stand fast, persist,
remain firm.

per-suādēo, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.*,
to persuade, convince.

per-terrēo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*,
to frighten greatly; to terrify.

per-tīmesco, ěre, muī, *tr. and
intr.*, to fear greatly; to
dread.

per-tīnācia, ae, *f.*, obstinacy,
stubbornness, pertinacity.

per-tīneo, ěre, uī, —, *intr.* (per
+ tēneo), to stretch out, ex-
tend; to tend; to pertain,
belong.

per-tūlī. See per-fēro.

per-turbātio, ōnis, *f.*, disturb-
ance, confusion, disorder.

per-turbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to throw into confusion; to
confuse, disturb, confound,
embarrass.

per-vāgor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*,
to wander through, roam or
rove about.

per-vēnio, ĭre, vēnī, ventum,
intr., to come to, arrive at,
reach.

pēs, pēdis, *m.*, a foot; step.
Pedem referre = to retreat.

pēto, ěre, ĭvī or ĭī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to
seek, request; to attack, as-
sail; to make for, repair to,
aim at.

phālanx, gis, *f.*, a phalanx.

piētās, ātis, *f.*, dutiful con-
duct; piety, duty, affection;
loyalty, patriotism.

pignus, ōris, *n.*, a pledge, se-
curity.

pīlum, ī, *n.*, a javelin, dart.

pīlus, ī, *m.*, a division of the
triariī, a company, manipule.

pinna, ae, *f.*, a feather; a
battlement, parapet, pin-
nacle.

piscis, is, *m.*, a fish.

pix, pīcis, *f.*, pitch.

plāceo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to
please, be agreeable, satisfy.

plācīdē, *adv.*, calmly, quietly,
gently, mildly.

plāco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
appease, calm, reconcile.

plānē, *adv.*, plainly, clearly, dis-
tinctly; entirely, quite.

plānītiēs, ēī, *f.*, a plain.

plānus, a, um, *adj.*, plain, level, flat, even, smooth.

plēbes, ēī, *f.*, and plebs, plēbis, *f.*, the plebs, plebeians, commons; the populace.

plēnē, *adv.*, fully, entirely.

plēnus, a, um, *adj.*, full, complete, entire.

plērumque, *adv.*, for the most part, commonly, generally.

plērusque, āque, umque, *adj.*, most, the most. *Plural*, most, very many.

plumbum, ī, *n.*, lead. Plumbum album, tin.

plūrimum, *adv.* (*super. of multum*), most, most of all, very much; especially, exceedingly.

plūrimus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of multus*), very much, most. *Plural*, most, very many.

plūs, *adv.* (*comp. of multum*), more.

plūs, plūris, *adj.* (*comp. of multus*), more. Plūrēs, several, more, a good many.

plūtēus, ī, *m.*, a breastwork, parapet.

pōcūlum, ī, *n.*, a cup, goblet.

poena, ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty, fine.

pollex, īcis, *m.*, the thumb.

pollicēor, ērī, ītus, *tr. dep.*, to promise.

pollicitātiō, ōnis, *f.*, a promise.

pondus, ēris, *n.*, a weight, burden.

pōno, ěre, pōsūī, pōsitum, *tr.*, to put, place, set, pitch; to erect, build; to lay down, lay

aside; to set down, regard; to post, station.

pons, tis, *m.*, a bridge.

pōposcī. *See* posco.

pōpūlātiō, ōnis, *f.* (pōpūlor), a laying waste, ravaging, pillaging.

pōpūlor, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.* (pōpūlus), to lay waste, ravage, pillage, plunder.

pōpūlus, ī, *m.*, a people, nation.

porrectus, a, um. *See* porrigo.

por-rīgo, ěre, rexī, rectum, *tr.* (pro + rego), to stretch out, extend; to offer.

porrō, *adv.*, forward, farther on; moreover, besides.

porta, ae, *f.*, a gate.

porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry, convey, bear.

portōriūm, ī, *n.* (porto), a tax, duty, impost, customs.

portus, ūs, *m.*, a port, harbor.

posco, ěre, pōposcī, —, *tr.*, to demand, importune, ask for.

pōsītus, a, um. *See* pōno.

possessīō, ōnis, *f.*, a possession, property, estate.

possīdeo, ěre, sēdī, sessum, *tr.*, to possess, hold, occupy.

possum, posse, pōtuī, *irr. intr.* (pōtis + sum), to be able.

Largiter posse, to have great influence. Plurimum posse, to be very powerful.

post, *adv.*, after, afterwards.

post, *prep.* with the accus., after, behind, since, in, within.

post-ěā, *adv.*, afterwards.

post-ěā-quam, *adv.*, after.

postērus, a, um, *adj.*, follow-

ing, next. **Postĕrī, ōrum, m.**
pl., posterity, descendants.
Comp. **postĕrior, super. post-**
trēmus and postūmus.
post-pōno, ěre, pōsūi, pōsītum,
tr., to place after; to esteem
 less, disregard, neglect.
post-quam, adv., after, as soon
 as, when.
postrēmō, adv., at last, finally.
postrēmus, a, um, adj. (super.
of postĕrus), the last, latest;
 rear, hindermost.
postrī-diē, adv., on the follow-
 ing day, the day after.
postŭlātum, ī, n. (postŭlo), a
 demand, request.
postŭlo, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.,
 to demand, require, ask, re-
 quest.
pōtens, tis, adj. (possum), able,
 powerful, influential.
pōtentātus, ūs, m., power, do-
 minion, rule.
pōtentīa, ae, f., power.
pōtestās, ātis, f., power; au-
 thority; opportunity; per-
 mission.
pōtior, īrī, ītus, tr. dep. (pōtis),
 to become master of; to gain,
 acquire, possess, obtain.
pōtius, comp. adv., rather,
 sooner. *Super.* **pōtissimē**
and pōtissimum.
prae, prep. with the abl., be-
 fore; in comparison with;
 for, on account of, by reason
 of.
prae-ācūtus, a, um, adj., sharp-
 ened at the end, pointed.
prae-bĕo, ěre, uī, ītum, tr.

(*prae + habeo*), to afford,
 offer, present, furnish; to
 show, exhibit.
prae-cāvĕo, ěre, cāvī, cautum,
intr., to be on one's guard
 against, take precaution.
prae-cĕdo, ěre, cessī, cĕssum,
intr., to go before, precede;
 to excel, surpass.
prae-ceps, cīpītis, adj. (prae
+ caput), headlong, rapid,
 hasty; precipitous, steep.
prae-ceptum, ī, n., an order,
 direction, instruction; coun-
 sel, precept.
prae-cīpio, ěre, cĕpī, ceptum,
tr. (prae + cāpio), to antici-
 pate; to direct, instruct,
 order.
prae-cīpīto, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.
(praeceps), to throw head-
 long, precipitate, plunge.
prae-cīpuĕ, adv., especially,
 particularly, chiefly.
prae-cīpūus, a, um, adj., par-
 ticular, especial, remarkable,
 peculiar.
prae-clūdo, ěre, sī, sum, tr., to
 shut up, close; to hinder.
praeco, ōnis, m., a herald.
prae-curro, ěre, cūcurrī or
currī, cursum, tr. and intr.,
 to run before, precede; to
 outstrip, surpass, excel.
praeda, ae, f., booty, plunder,
 prey, spoil.
prae-dīco, āre, āvī, ātum, tr.,
 to proclaim, publish, declare,
 report, assert.
praedor, ārī, ātus, intr. dep., to
 plunder, pillage, ravage.

prae-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw before; to construct.

prae-fectus, ī, *m.* (prae-ficio), a commander of cavalry.

prae-fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear before; to prefer.

prae-ficio, ěre, fĕcī, fectum, *tr.* (prae + fācio), to set over, appoint over or to the command of.

prae-figo, ěre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to fasten before, set up in front.

prae-fŭī. See prae-sum.

prae-mĕtŭo, ěre, uī, —, *intr.*, to fear beforehand, to fear.

prae-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send before or in advance.

praemĭum, ī, *n.*, profit, advantage; reward, recompense.

prae-occŭpo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to seize beforehand, pre-occupy.

prae-opto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to choose rather, prefer.

prae-pāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, prepare, provide.

prae-pōno, ěre, pōsuī, pōsĭtum, *tr.*, to set over, appoint over or to the command of.

prae-rumpo, ěre, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.*, to break off, tear away.

prae-ruptus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (praerumpo), abrupt, steep, rugged.

prae-saēpio, ěre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to block up, barricade.

prae-scribo, ěre, psī, ptum,

tr., to direct, prescribe, dictate, order, appoint.

prae-scriptum, ī, *n.*, an order, direction, command, dictation.

praesens, tis, *adj.*, present, at hand, in person.

praesentĭa, ae, *f.*, the present; presence (*animi*).

prae-sentĭo, ěre, sensī, sensum, *tr.*, to see or feel beforehand; to foresee, divine.

prae-sertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly, chiefly.

prae-sĭdĭum, ī, *n.* (prae + sĕdeo), a defence, protection, assistance, security; a guard, garrison; a post, station.

prae-sto, āre, stĭtī, stĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to excel, surpass; to perform, discharge; to show, exhibit; to furnish, afford. Praestat, *impers.*, it is better.

praestō, *adv.*, present, ready, at hand.

prae-sum, esse, fuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to preside over, have command of, be set over.

praeter, *prep. with the accus.*, beyond, except, besides; near; against, contrary to.

praetĕr-ĕā, *adv.*, besides, moreover.

praetĕr-ĕo, ěre, ĭvī or ĭī, ĭtum, *tr. and intr.*, to go or pass by; to pass over, omit, neglect.

praetĕr-ĭtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (praetĕreo), past.

praeter-mitto, ěre, mīsī, mis-

sum, *tr.*, to let pass, pass over, omit.
 praeter-quam, *adv.*, beyond, besides, except.
 praeter-vēhor, *ī*, vectus, *intr. dep.*, to drive, ride or sail by.
 praetor, ōris, *m.*, a praetor; a Roman judicial officer; a commander, general.
 praetōrius, a, um, *adj.*, of or befitting a praetor; praetorian.
 prae-ūro, ěre, ussī, ustum, *tr.*, to burn at the end.
 prae-verto, ěre, tī, sum, *tr.*, to anticipate, prevent; to prefer.
 prāvus, a, um, *adj.*, crooked, deformed; perverse, vicious, depraved, bad.
 prēcēs. See prex.
 prēcōr, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to pray, entreat, beg.
 prēhendo or prendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to seize, lay hold of, grasp.
 prēmo, ěre, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, to press, press upon; to weigh down, oppress, distress, harass.
 prendo. See prēhendo.
 prētium, *ī*, *n.*, worth, value, price.
 prex, prēcis, *f.* (nom. and gen. sing. not in use; found mostly in pl.), a prayer, entreaty; an imprecation.
 prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before.
 prīmi-pīlus, *ī*, *m.* (primus + pilus), the chief centurion.
 prīmō, *adv.*, at first.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place. Quam primum, as soon as possible. Cum (ut, ubi) primum, as soon as.
 prīmus, a, um, *adj.* (*super. of prīor*), first, foremost; the first part of, beginning of. In primis, especially, in particular.
 prin-ceps, ĭpis, *adj.* (primus + cāpio), first, foremost. Princeps, a leading man, chief, leader, author.
 prin-cipātus, ūs, *m.*, supremacy, pre-eminence, dominion.
 prīor, us, *gen. ōris, adj.*, former, previous; first.
 pristīnus, a, um, *adj.*, former, ancient, pristine, original.
 prīus, *adv.*, before, sooner.
 prīus-quam, *adv.*, before.
 prīvātīm, *adv.*, privately, in private; as a private citizen.
 prīvātus, a, um, *adj.*, private.
 prīvātus, *ī*, *m.*, a private citizen.
 prō, *prep. with the abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; according to; befitting; in proportion to; on account of; instead of, in place of; as; in comparison with.
 prōbo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to try, examine; to approve; to show, prove.
 prō-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to proceed, advance.
 prō-clīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to incline, bend forward.

- Prō-clīnātus**, *partic.*, bent forward = tottering.
- prō-consul**, ūlis, *m.*, a proconsul.
- prōcul**, *adv.*, far, far off, at a distance; from afar.
- prō-cumbo**, ěre, cūbuī, cūbītum, *intr.*, to lean forward; to fall, fall down.
- prō-cūro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to take care of, look after, attend to.
- prō-curro**, ěre, cūcurrī *or* currī, cursum, *intr.*, to run forth, rush forward.
- prōd-ěo**, īre, īvī *or* iī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to go on, advance, proceed.
- prō-dītio**, ōnis, *f.*, treason, treachery, betrayal.
- prōd-ītor**, ōris, *m.*, a traitor.
- prō-do**, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to give forth, disclose, divulge; to hand down, transmit; to betray, desert.
- prō-dūco**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead forth, bring out; to draw out, lengthen, protract, prolong.
- proelīor**, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to fight, combat, contend.
- proelīum**, ī, *n.*, a battle.
- prō-fectio**, ōnis, *f.*, a departure.
- prō-fectō**, *adv.*, assuredly, certainly, actually.
- prō-fectus**, a, um. *See* prōfīcio.
- prō-fectus**, a, um. *See* prōfīciscor.
- prō-fěro**, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bring forth, bring forward, produce; to prolong, enlarge.
- prō-fīcio**, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.* (pro + fācio), to make progress, advance; to accomplish, effect, obtain.
- prō-fīciscor**, ī, fectus, *intr. dep.*, to set out, depart, proceed.
- prō-fītěor**, ěrī, fessus, *tr. dep.* (pro + fāteor), to declare openly, acknowledge, profess.
- prō-flīgo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to throw *or* dash down; to overthrow, defeat, rout, destroy.
- prō-flūo**, ěre, xī, xum, *intr.*, to flow forth, issue.
- prō-fūgio**, ěre, fūgī, fūgītum, *intr.*, to flee, escape, flee for refuge.
- prō-fuī**. *See* prō-sum.
- prō-fundo**, ěre, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, to pour out *or* forth.
- prōg-nātus**, a, um, *adj.*, born, descended, sprung from.
- prō-grědīor**, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (pro + grādior), to advance, proceed, progress.
- prō-hībeo**, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.* (pro + hābeo), to prevent, hinder, debar, prohibit; to protect.
- prō-īcio**, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (pro + iācio), to throw down *or* before, throw away, lay down, cast away, renounce, reject.
- prōinde**, *adv.*, hence, therefore, then.

prō-lātus, a, um. *See* **prō-fēro**.
prō-mīneo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*,
 to hang over, project, lean
 forward.

prō-miscuē, *adv.*, promiscu-
 ously.

prō-missus, a, um, *partic. adj.*,
 hanging down, long.

prō-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum,
tr., to promise; to let down.

prō-mōveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,
tr., to move forward, ad-
 vance.

promptus, a, um, *adj.*, ready,
 prompt, quick, active.

prō-munturium, ī, *n.* (pro +
 mons), a promontory, head-
 land.

prō-nuntio, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr., to proclaim, announce,
 pronounce, report.

prōnus, a, um, *adj.*, inclining
 or bending forward, sloping.

prōpe, *adv.*, near, close to, be-
 side; nearly, almost. *Comp.*

prōpius, nearer, *super.*

proximē, very near, lately,
 recently.

prōpe, *prep. with the accus.*,
 near.

prō-pello, ēre, pūli, pulsum,
tr., to drive on, urge on; to
 repulse, rout, defeat.

prōpēro, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*,
 to hasten, make haste.

prōpinquitas, ātis, *f.*, near-
 ness, proximity, relationship.

prōpinquus, a, um, *adj.*, near,
 neighboring; kindred, re-
 lated. **Prōpinquus**, ī, *m.*, a
 relative kinsman.

prōpior, ius, *gen. ōris, comp.*
adj., nearer. *Super.* **proxī-**
mus.

prōpius, *adv.* *See* **prōpe**.

prō-pōno, ēre, pōsuī, pōsi-
 tum, *tr.*, to set forth, expose,
 present, offer, propose; to
 represent, explain; to pro-
 pose, intend.

prōpōsitum, ī, *n.*, a plan, pur-
 pose, design, intention.

prōprius, a, um, *adj.*, one's
 own, peculiar, proper, char-
 acteristic.

propter, *prep. with the accus.*,
 on account of, by reason of;
 near.

proptēr-ēā, *conj.*, therefore,
 for that reason, on that
 account.

prōpugnātor, ōris, *m.*, a de-
 fender.

prō-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum,
intr., to fight for; to rush
 out to fight.

prō-pūli. *See* **prō-pello**.

prō-pulso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
 to drive back, repel, repulse.

prōra, ae, *f.*, the prow.

prō-rīpio, ēre, pūi, reptum,
tr. (pro + rāpio), to drag
 forth.

prō-rūo, ēre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to
 tear or pull down, demolish.

prō-sēquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to
 follow, accompany; to pur-
 sue; to honor.

prō-spectus, ūs, *m.*, a view,
 sight, prospect.

prō-spicio, ēre, spexī, spec-
 tum, *tr.* (pro + spēcio), to

- look forward; to provide for, take care of.
- prō-sterno**, ěre, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, to overthrow, prostrate, destroy.
- prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *irr. intr.*, to profit, be profitable; to benefit, avail, conduce.
- prō-těgo**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to cover, shelter, protect, defend.
- prō-terrēo**, ěre, uī, ĭtum, *tr.*, to frighten away, terrify.
- prō-tinus**, *adv.*, forward, right on, continuously, immediately.
- prō-turbo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to drive off, repel, repulse.
- prō-věho**, ěre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry forth *or* out, convey away. **Prō-věhor**; *as dep.*, to ride, sail, drive.
- prō-vēnio**, ĭre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come forth, appear; to turn out.
- prō-ventus**, ūs, *m.*, growth, increase, produce; issue, event, result, success.
- prō-vīdeo**, ěre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, to provide, prepare, look to; to foresee.
- prō-vincīa**, ae, *f.*, a province.
- prō-vincīālis**, e, *adj.*, of a province, provincial.
- prō-vōlo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fly forth, rush out.
- proxīmē**, *adv.* See **prōpe**.
- proxīmus**, a, um, *adj.* (*super.* of **prōpior**), nearest, next, last.
- prūdentīa**, ae, *f.*, foresight, prudence, sagacity, wisdom.
- pūbēs and pūber**, ěris, *adj.*, grown up, adult. **Pūbērēs**, um, *m. pl.*, adults, men.
- pūblicē**, *adv.*, publicly; in the name of the state, by the state, in a national point of view.
- pūblico**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to confiscate; to make public.
- pūblicus**, a, um, *adj.*, public, common, of the state. **Pūblicus**, ī, *m.*, a public officer, magistrate. **Pūblicum**, ī, *n.*, a public place, public.
- pūdet**, ěre, uit *or* pūditum, est, *impers.*, to be ashamed. **Mē pūdet** = I am ashamed.
- pūdor**, ōris, *m.*, a sense of shame; shame, disgrace.
- pūer**, ěrī, *m.*, a boy.
- pūerilis**, e, *adj.*, boyish, childish, youthful.
- pugna**, ae, *f.*, a battle, fight.
- pugno**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight, combat, contend.
- pulcher**, chra, chrum, *adj.*, beautiful, fair; glorious, noble.
- pulsus**, a, um. See **pello**.
- pulsus**, ūs, *m.*, a stroke.
- pulvis**, ěris, *m.*, dust.
- puppis**, is, *f.*, the stern.
- purgo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to excuse, exculpate, clear.
- pūto**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to think, suppose; to consider, regard, judge.
- Pyre-naeus**, a, um, *adj.*, Pyrenaeian.

Q.

Q., for Quīntus.

quā, *adv.*, where, wherever, in what way, how.

quadrāgēnī, *ae, a, distr. num. adj.*, forty each, forty.

quadrāgintā, *num. adj.*, forty.

quadringentī, *ae, a, num. adj.*, four hundred.

quaero, ēre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.*, to seek, ask, inquire; to examine into, investigate; to procure, obtain.

quaestio, ōnis, *f.*, an inquiry, investigation, examination; a question; a prosecution, trial.

quaestor, ōris, *m.*, a quaestor.

quaestus, ūs, *m.* (quaero), gain, profit, acquisition; occupation, trade.

quālis, *e, adj.*, of what sort or kind, what, of what nature; as, such as.

quam, *conj.*, as, than.

quam, *adv.*, how, in what manner. *With the super.*, as possible. Quam maximus, as great as possible.

quam-dīū, *adv.*, how long, as long as.

quam-ob-rem, *conj.*, wherefore.

quam-vīs, *adv.*, as you will, however much, however, very.

quam-vīs, *conj.*, although.

quando, *adv.*, when. Si quando, if ever, whenever.

quant-ōpĕre or quantō ōpĕre, *adv.* (quantus + opus), how greatly, how much.

quantus, *a, um, adj.*, how great, how much, so much; as, as great as, as much as.

Quantō — tantō = the — the.

quantus-vīs, tāvīs, tumvīs, *adj.*, as much or great as you please, however great, any.

quā-rē, *conj.*, wherefore, why.

quartus, *a, um, num. adj.*, fourth.

quā-sī, *conj.*, as if, as it were, as though; about, nearly.

quattuor, *num. adj.*, four.

quattuor-dĕcim, *num. adj.*, fourteen.

quē, *conj.*, and. Que — que or que — et, both — and.

quem-ad-mōdum, *adv.*, in what manner, how, as.

quēror, ī, questus, *tr. and intr. dep.*, to complain, lament.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. and adj. pron.*, who, which, what, that. *Also, interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?

quī-cumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever, every, all.

quī-dam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, *indef. pron.*, a certain, a certain one, some one, somebody, something.

quīdem, *adv.*, indeed, truly, assuredly, at least. Nē — quīdem, not even.

quīēs, ētis, *f.*, rest, quiet, repose.

quīētus, *a, um, adj.*, at rest, quiet, calm, peaceful.

quīn, *conj.* (qui + ne), that

not, that ; but, that. **Quin etiam**, nay even, moreover.

quī-nam, quāenam, quodnam, *interrog. adj. pron.*, who ? which ? what ? *The nam emphasizes the question.*

quinc-unx, uncis, m. (*quinque + uncia, a twelfth*), five twelfths ; the five spots on dice.

quin-dēcim, num. adj., fifteen.

quin-gentī, ae, a, num. adj. (*quinque + centum*), five hundred.

quīnī, ae, a, distr. num. adj., five each, five, in fives.

quinquāgintā, num. adj., fifty.

quinquē, num. adj., five.

quintus, a, um, num. adj., fifth.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who ? which ? what ?

Quid, as adv., why ? how ? *Also indef. pron.*, any one, one, some one, any, something, anything.

quis-nam, quāenam, quidnam, interrog. pron., who ? which ? what ? *The nam emphasizes the question.*

quis-pīam, quāepīam, quodpīam or quidpīam or quīpīam, indef. pron., any, some ; any one, some one ; anything, something.

quis-quam, quāequam, quidquam or quicquam, indef. pron., any, some, any one, anything.

quis-que, quaeque, quodque or quidque or quicque, indef.

pron., every, each, any, all ; every one, everything.

quis-quis, quaequae, quodquod or quidquid or quicquid, indef. pron., whoever, whatever, each, every, all.

quī-vīs, quāevīs, quodvīs or quidvīs, indef. pron., any one you please ; any one, every one, whoever, everything, anything.

quō, adv., whither, where ; to or in any place ; for what purpose, to what end ; why, wherefore, on which account.

Quō — eō = the — the.

quō, conj., that, in order that, whereby ; *with the subjunctive, especially after comparatives.* **Quō minus**, that not ; from.

quō-ad, adv., as long as, till, until ; how far, as far as.

quod, conj., because ; that, in that ; in so far as, as to the fact that. **Quod sī**, and if, but if.

quō-mīnus, conj. *See quō.*

quōn-īam, conj., since, because.

quōque, conj., also, too.

quōquē-versus, adv., in every direction, every way.

quō-quō, adv., whithersoever.

quōt, indecl. adj., how many, as, as many as.

quōt-annīs, adv. (*quot + annus*), every year, yearly.

quōtīens, adv., how often ; as often as.

R.

rādx, īcis, *f.*, a root; the base of a mountain.

rādo, ěre, rāsī, rāsum, *tr.*, to shave, scrape, smooth.

rāmus, ī, *m.*, a branch, bough.

rāpīdītās, ātis, *f.*, swiftness, velocity, rapidity.

rāpīna, ae, *f.* (rāpio), plundering, robbery, rapine.

rārus, a, um, *adj.*, thin, rare, scattered, here and there, few.

rātīo, ōnis, *f.*, an account, computation; an affair, transaction; regard, respect, consideration, relation; course, method, system, plan; manner, way, nature, sort; science, theory; ground, motive, reason.

rātīs, is, *f.*, a raft.

rē-bellīo, ōnis, *f.*, a revolt, rebellion.

rē-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, to retire, retreat, withdraw, depart.

rēcens, tis, *adj.*, fresh, recent, vigorous, new.

rē-censēo, ěre, uī, sum and ītum, *tr.*, to review, enumerate.

rē-ceptācūlum, ī, *n.*, a retreat, shelter, refuge, receptacle.

rē-ceptus, ūs, *m.*, a retreat, refuge, shelter.

rē-ceptus, a, um. See **rē-cīpio**.

rē-cessus, ūs, *m.*, a retreat.

rē-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cāsum, *intr.*

(re + cādo), to fall back, recoil; to fall upon; to happen.

rē-cīpio, ěre, cēpī, ceptum, *tr.* (re + cāpio), to take back, receive, regain, recover; to admit, allow; to undertake, engage. See **recipere**, to betake one's self, withdraw, retreat.

rē-cīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to read aloud.

re-clīno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bend or lean back, recline.

rectē, *adv.*, in a straight line; rightly, well, correctly.

rectus, a, um, *adj.*, straight, direct, exact.

rē-cūpĕro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (re + cāpio), to regain, recover.

rē-cūso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.* (re + causa), to refuse, object, decline, reject.

rēda or rhēda, ae, *f.*, a wagon.

rēd-actus, a, um. See **rēd-īgo**.

red-do, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to give back, restore, return; to relinquish, deliver; to render, make.

rēd-emptus, a, um. See **rēd-īmo**.

rēd-ĕo, ěre, īvī or īī, ĭtum, *intr.*, to come back, return; to be reduced, come down.

rēd-īgo, ěre, ĕgī, actum, *tr.* (re + āgo), to drive or bring back; to reduce, restore, render; to force, compel.

rēd-īmo, ěre, ĕmī, emptum, *tr.* (re + emo), to buy back;

- to ransom, redeem; to buy up, farm; to purchase, procure.
- rĕd-intĕgro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to renew, restore, recruit, revive.
- rĕd-ītĭo**, ōnis, *f.*, a return.
- rĕd-ītus**, ūs, *m.*, a return.
- rĕ-dūco**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead, bring, *or* conduct back; to draw back, remove.
- rĕ-fĕro**, fĕrre, ttŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to bear *or* bring back; to return, restore, repay; to report, bring back word, announce; to withdraw; to refer, propose. **Pedem re-ferre**, to retreat.
- rĕ-fĭcio**, ěre, fĕcī, fectum, *tr.*, to make anew; to restore, repair, rebuild; to recruit, refresh, reinvigorate, reassure.
- re-fringo**, ěre, frĕgī, fractum, *tr.* (re + frango), to break, break open; to weaken.
- rĕ-fŭgio**, ěre, fŭgī, fŭgītum, *intr.*, to flee away, escape; to retreat, retire.
- rĕgĭo**, ōnis, *f.* (rego), direction, course; a tract, region, district; a border, boundary. **E regione** = opposite.
- rĕgĭus**, a, um, *adj.* (rex), royal, kingly, regal.
- regno**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. and intr.*, to reign, rule, govern.
- regnum**, ī, *n.*, a kingdom; kingly power; sovereignty.
- rĕgo**, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to rule, govern, guide, direct.
- rĕ-grĕdĭor**, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (re + grādior), to return.
- rĕ-ĭcio**, ěre, iĕcī, iectum, *tr.* (re + iācio), to throw *or* hurl back; to drive back, repel; to reject, throw aside.
- rĕ-languagesco**, ěre, guī, —, *intr.*, to grow languid, be enfeebled.
- rĕ-lātus**, a, um. *See* rĕ-fĕro.
- rĕ-lĕgo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to send away, remove.
- rĕ-lictus**, a, um. *See* rĕ-linguo.
- rĕlĭgĭo**, ōnis, *f.*, religion, piety, religious observance *or* rites.
- rĕ-linguo**, ěre, līquī, lictum, *tr.*, to leave behind, abandon, leave.
- rĕ-lĭquĭae**, ārum, *f. pl.*, the remains, the rest, remnant.
- rĕ-lĭquus**, a, um, *adj.*, remaining, the rest of, the other, remainder of, future, to come.
- Rĕlĭquum**, ī, *n.*, the remainder, rest.
- rĕ-māneo**, ěre, mansī, mansum, *intr.*, to remain, continue, last, endure.
- rĕ-mĕdĭum**, ī, *n.* (re + mĕd-eor), a remedy, cure, relief.
- rĕmex**, ĭgis, *m.*, a rower.
- rĕm-ĭgo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (remus + āgo), to row.
- rĕ-mĭgro**, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to remove back, return.
- rĕ-mĭniscor**, ī, —, *tr. dep.*, to remember.
- rĕ-missus**, a, um, *partic. adj.*

(remitto), relaxed, remiss; mild.
rě-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum, *tr.*, to send back, hurl back; to slacken, remit, relax; to return, submit, refer.
rě-mollesco, ěre, —, —, *intr.*, to become effeminate *or* enervated.
rě-mōtus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (rěmōveo), remote, distant.
rě-mōvēo, ěre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, to remove, withdraw, take away.
rě-mūnēror, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to remunerate, reward.
rēmus, ī, *m.*, an oar.
rěno, ōnis, *m.*, a reindeer; a skin.
rě-nōvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to renew, revive.
rě-nuntīo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to bring back word; to report, announce.
rě-pello, ěre, ppŭlī, pulsum, *tr.*, to drive back, repel, repulse.
rěpentē, *adv.*, suddenly.
rěpentinus, a, um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.
rě-pěrio, ěre, ppěrī, pertum, *tr.*, to find, discover, ascertain; to invent, devise.
rě-pěto, ěre, ěvī *or* ěī, ětum, *tr.*, to demand back, claim.
re-plěo, ěre, ěvī, ětum, *tr.*, to refill, furnish, supply.
rě-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry *or* bring back, convey.
rě-posco, ěre, —, —, *tr.*, to demand back, exact.

rě-ppŭlī. See **rě-pello**.
rě-praesento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to do at once, perform immediately.
rě-prěhendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to reprove, censure, rebuke.
rě-prīmo, ěre, pressī, pressum, *tr.* (re + prěmo), to check, restrain, repress, hinder, prevent.
rě-pŭdio, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to reject, refuse, decline.
rě-pugno, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to fight against, oppose, resist.
rě-pulsus, a, um. See **rě-pello**.
rě-quīro, ěre, sīvī, sītum, *tr.* (re + quaero), to seek after, search for; to require, demand; to miss, look for in vain.
rēs, rěī, *f.*, a thing; an object, matter, affair, purpose, business, subject, circumstance, event, fact.
rě-sarcīo, ěre, sī, sartum, *tr.*, to repair, restore.
re-scindo, ěre, scīdī, scissum, *tr.*, to tear down, destroy.
re-scisco, ěre, ěvī *or* ěī, ětum, *tr.*, to learn, ascertain.
re-scribo, ěre, psī, ptum, *tr.*, to write again; to transfer.
rě-servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to reserve, retain, preserve.
re-sīdēo, ěre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.* (re + sēdeo), to remain, be left.
rě-sīdo, ěre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.* (re + sīdo), to sit down, settle, subside; to calm down.

rě-sistens, tis, *partic. adj.* (rě-sisto), resolute, firm.

rě-sisto, ěre, stitī, stitum, *intr.*, to stand still, halt, stop; to withstand, resist, oppose; to remain, continue.

re-spīcio, ěre, spexī, spectrum, *tr.* (re + spēcio), to look back; to regard, consider, respect.

re-spondĕo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to answer, reply.

re-sponsum, ī, *n.*, a reply, answer.

res-pūblica, rěipūblica, *f.*, the state, commonwealth, republic; public affairs, the general welfare.

re-spūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to spit out; to reject, spurn, refuse.

re-stinguo, ěre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to extinguish, quench, put out.

re-stitī. *See* rě-sisto.

re-stitŭo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.* (re + stătuo), to replace; to rebuild, repair, renew; to reinstate, restore.

rě-tineo, ěre, tīnuī, tentum, *tr.* (re + tĕneo), to hold back, detain, hinder; to retain; to check, restrain, repress.

rĕ-trāho, ěre, traxī, tractum, *tr.*, to draw or bring back; to recover.

rĕttŭlī. *See* rĕ-fĕro.

rĕ-vello, ěre, vellī, vulsum, *tr.*, to tear away, pluck or pull up or away.

rĕ-verto, ěre, tī, sum, *intr. and* rĕ-vertor, ī, sus, *intr. dep.*, to turn back, return.

rĕ-vincĭo, ěre, vinxī, vinctum, *tr.*, to bind, tie, fasten.

rĕ-vŏco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call back, recall.

rex, rĕgis, *m.*, a king.

rīpa, ae, *f.*, the bank of a river.

rīvus, ī, *m.*, a stream, brook.

rōbur, ōris, *n.*, hard oak; power, strength, vigor.

rŏgo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to ask; to enlist; *lit.*, to question soldiers under oath as to their loyalty.

Rŏmānus, a, um, *adj.*, Roman.

Rŏmānus, ī, *m.*, a Roman.

rostrum, ī, *n.*, the beak or bill of a bird; the beak of a ship.

rŏta, ae, *f.*, a wheel.

rŭbus, ī, *m.*, a bramble-bush, blackberry-bush.

rŭmor, ōris, *m.*, rumor, report, hearsay, talk.

rŭpĕs, is, *f.*, a rock, cliff.

rursus, *adv.*, again, anew; backwards, back.

S.

sācerdŏs, ōtis, *m. and f.*, a priest or priestess.

sacrāmentum, ī, *n.*, an oath.

sacrī-fīcĭum, ī, *n.*, a sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently.

Comp. saepĭus, *super.* saepissimē.

saepĕ-nŭmĕrŏ, *adv.*, often, frequently, time and again.

saepĕs, is, *f.*, a hedge.

saevĭo, ěre, īvī or iī, ĭtum,

intr., to be fierce or cruel ;
to rage, storm.
săgitta, ae, *f.*, an arrow.
săgittārius, ī, *m.*, an archer,
bowman.
săgŭlum, ī, *n.*, a small military
cloak.
saltus, ūs, *m.*, woodland pas-
ture, forest ; a defile, pass.
sălūs, ūtis, *f.*, safety, security ;
health, welfare.
sancio, ire, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to
sanction, ordain, ratify, con-
firm.
sanctus, a, um, *adj.* (sancio),
sacred, holy, inviolable.
sanguis, ĩnis, *m.*, blood.
sănītās, ātis, *f.*, soundness,
health ; reason, good sense,
sanity, discretion.
sāno, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to
heal, cure, restore ; to re-
pair, remedy.
sānus, a, um, *adj.*, sound, sen-
sible, sane, discreet.
sanxī. *See* sancio.
săpĭo, ěre, ĩvī or iī, —, *intr.*, to
know, understand.
sarcĭna, ae, *f.*, a bundle, pack ;
a soldier's baggage.
sarcio, ire, sarsī, sartum, *tr.*,
to mend, repair ; to make
good, compensate, remedy.
sarmentum, ī, *n.*, twigs, brush-
wood, a fascine.
sătis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently,
quite.
sătis-făcio, ěre, fēcī, factum,
intr., to give satisfaction,
satisfy ; to make reparation,
apologize.

sătis-factio, ōnis, *f.*, satisfac-
tion, reparation, excuse, apol-
ogy.
sătus, a, um. *See* sĕro.
sauciŭs, a, um, *adj.*, wounded.
saxum, ī, *n.*, a rock, stone.
scāla, ae, *f.*, a scaling-ladder.
scăpha, ae, *f.*, a skiff, boat.
scĕlĕrătus, a, um, *adj.*, im-
pious, accursed, infamous,
miscreant.
scĕlus, ěris, *n.*, crime, wicked-
ness, guilt, enormity.
sciĕnter, *adv.*, skilfully, ex-
pertly. *Comp.* sciĕntĭus, *su-*
per. sciĕntissimē.
sciĕntĭa, ae, *f.*, knowledge,
skill, expertness, science.
scindo, ěre, scidī, scissum, *tr.*,
to cut, split, rend, tear ; to
destroy, demolish.
scio, ire, ĩvī or iī, ĩtum, *tr.*, to
know, know how, understand.
scōpŭlus, ī, *m.*, a rock, crag, cliff.
scorpĭo, ōnis, *m.*, a scorpion or
military engine for throwing
stones, darts, etc.
scribo, ěre, ipsī, iptum, *tr.*, to
write.
scrōbis, is, *m. and f.*, a ditch,
trench, pit.
scŭtum, ī, *n.*, a shield, buckler.
sĕbum, ī, *n.*, tallow, fat.
sĕciŭs, *adv.* (*comp.* of sĕcus),
otherwise, differently, less.
sĕ-cludo, ěre, sī, sum, *tr.*, to
shut out, separate.
sĕco, āre, cuī, ctum, *tr.*, to cut,
cut off, cut down.
sĕcrĕtō, *adv.*, separately, apart,
secretly, in secret.

sectio, ōnis, *f.*, a section, division, lot; booty, spoils.

sector, ārī, ātus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, pursue; to hunt after.

sectūra, ae, *f.*, a mine, a shaft.

sēcundum, *prep. with the accus.* (sequor), after, along, by, near, according to, in accordance with.

sēcundus, a, um, *adj.* (sēquor), following, next; the second; favorable, successful; **rēs sēcundiōrēs**, greater prosperity.

sēcūris, is, *f.* (sēcō), an axe.

sēcus, *adv.*, otherwise, differently.

sēcūtus, a, um. *See* sēquor.

sēd, *conj.*, but, now.

sē-dēcim, *num. adj.*, sixteen.

sēdēs, is, *f.*, a seat; an abode, dwelling-place, home, habitation.

sēd-ītio, ōnis, *f.*, sedition, insurrection, civil discord.

sēd-ītīōsus, a, um, *adj.*, seditious, turbulent, factious.

sēges, ītis, *f.*, a corn-field; standing grain; a crop.

sēmēl, *num. adv.*, once.

sēmentis, is, *f.*, a sowing.

sēmīta, ae, *f.*, a path, footpath.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever.

sēnātor, ōris, *m.*, a senator.

sēnātus, ūs, *m.* (senex), a senate.

sēnex, *gen.* sēnis, *adj.*, old, aged.

sēnex, sēnis, *m.*, an old man.

sēnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six by six, in sixes, six.

sententiā, ae, *f.* (sentio), an opinion; purpose, intention, design; judgment, sentence, resolution, decision.

sentio, īre, **sensī**, **sensum**, *tr.*, to discern by the senses; to feel, perceive, observe, learn; to think, suppose.

sentis, is, *m.*, a brier, bramble.

sē-pārātīm, *adv.*, separately, apart.

sē-pārātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (sēpāro), separate, distinct.

sē-pāro, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to sever, separate, divide.

septem, *num. adj.*, seven.

septen-triōnes, um, *m. pl.*, the Great Bear, the Little Bear; the north.

septīmus, a, um, *num. adj.*, the seventh.

septin-gentī, ae, a, *num. adj.*, seven hundred.

septūāgintā, *num. adj.*, seventy.

sēpultūra, ae, *f.*, burial, sepulture, interment.

Sēquānus, a, um, *adj.*, Sequanian.

sēquor, ī, cūtus, *tr. dep.*, to follow, accompany, attend; to pursue, aim at.

Ser., for Servius.

sermo, ōnis, *m.*, speech, talk, conversation, discourse.

sērō, *adv.*, late, too late. *Comp.* sērius, *super.* sērissimē.

sēro, ěre, sēvī, sātum, *tr.*, to sow, plant.

servilis, e, *adj.*, servile, of slaves.

serviō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum, *intr.*, to serve, be subservient to; to give heed to.

servītūs, ūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude.

servo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to save, keep, preserve; to observe, watch, guard; **fīdem servāre**, to keep one's word.

servus, ī, *m.*, a slave, servant.

sesquī-pēdālis, e, *adj.* (sesqui, *half as much*, + pes), a foot and a half long, thick, *or* wide.

seu, *conj.*, whether.

sēvēritās, ātis, *f.*, severity, harshness, rigor.

sē-vōco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to call off *or* aside; to draw aside.

sēvum, ī, *n.*, fat, tallow.

sex, *num. adj.*, six.

sexāgintā, *num. adj.*, sixty.

sex-centī, ae, a, *num. adj.*, six hundred.

sex-dēcim, *num. adj.*, sixteen.

sī, *conj.*, if; whether.

sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner.

siccītās, ātis, *f.*, drought, dryness.

sīc-ut *or* **sīc-ūtī**, *adv.*, just as, as if, like, as it were.

sīdus, ēris, *n.*, a constellation, star.

signī-fer, ērī, *m.* (signum + fēro), a standard-bearer.

signī-ficātio, ōnis, *f.*, intimation, signal, indication, signification.

signī-fīco, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*

(signum + fācio), to signify, indicate, imitate, show.

signum, ī, *n.*, a mark, sign; a signal; a watchword; a standard, ensign.

sīlentium, ī, *n.*, silence, stillness.

silva, ae, *f.*, a wood, forest.

silvestris, e, *adj.*, woody, wooded.

sīmīlis, e, *adj.*, like, resembling, similar.

sīmīlītūdo, īnis, *f.*, likeness, resemblance, similarity.

sīmul, *adv.*, together, at once, at the same time. **Simul**—**simul**, at the same—and; as well—as. **Simul ac** *or* **atque**, as soon as.

sīmūlācrum, ī, *n.*, an image, likeness, figure, statue.

sīmūlātio, ōnis, *f.*, pretence, deceit, disguise, simulation.

sīmūlo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to pretend, feign, counterfeit.

sīmultās, ātis, *f.*, animosity, enmity, hatred; jealousy.

sīn, *conj.*, but if; if however.

sīncērē, *adv.*, sincerely, frankly, candidly.

sīne, *prep.* with the *abl.*, without.

sīngillātim, *adv.*, singly, one by one.

sīngūlāris, e, *adj.*, single; excellent, remarkable, singular.

sīngūlī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, one to each, separate, single, individual, each, every.

sīnister, tra, trum, *adj.*, left,

on the left hand *or* side; unlucky, inauspicious; adverse.

sīnistrorsus, *adv.*, towards the left hand *or* side, to the left.

sīno, *ēre*, *sīvī*, *sītum*, *tr.*, to permit, suffer, allow.

sisto, *ēre*, *stītī*, *stātum*, *tr.* and *intr.*, to place, set; to stop, stand still.

sītus, *ūs*, *m.*, situation, site, position.

sī-ve, *conj.*, or if, or; whether.

Sive — *sive*, whether — or.

sōcer, *ērī*, *m.*, a father-in-law.

sōciētās, *ātis*, *f.*, partnership, union; a league, alliance, confederacy.

sōciūs, *ī*, *m.*, a partner, comrade; an ally, associate.

sōl, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun.

sōlāciūm, *ī*, *n.*, consolation, comfort.

soldūrīi, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, retainers.

sōlēo, *ēre*, *ītus*, *intr. half dep.*, to be accustomed, be wont.

sōlītūdo, *īnis*, *f.*, a desert, wilderness, solitude.

sollertīa, *ae*, *f.*, shrewdness, adroitness, expertness.

sollicītātiō, *ōnis*, *f.*, instigation.

sollicīto, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to move, rouse, urge, instigate, incite, induce.

sollicītūdo, *īnis*, *f.*, anxiety, care, solicitude, concern.

solum, *ī*, *n.*, the ground, soil, land; bottom, foundation.

solum, *adv.*, only, alone.

sōlus, *a*, *um*, *gen.* *sōlius*, *adj.*, only, alone, sole, single.

solvere, *ēre*, *solvī*, *sōlūtum*, *tr.*, to loose, untie, unbind; to set sail.

somnus, *ī*, *m.*, sleep.

sōnītus, *ūs*, *m.*, a sound, noise.

sōno, *āre*, *uī*, *ītum*, *tr.* and *intr.*, to sound, resound.

sōnus, *ī*, *m.*, sound, noise.

sōror, *ōris*, *f.*, a sister.

sors, *sortis*, *f.*, lot, chance, fate, fortune, destiny.

spātium, *ī*, *n.*, space, distance, extent; an interval.

spēcīēs, *ēī*, *f.*, the appearance, form, look, show, semblance; pretence, color.

specto, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* and *intr.*, to look at, see, observe, watch; to regard; to face, lie towards.

spēcūlātor, *ōris*, *m.*, a scout, spy.

spēcūlātōriūs, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, of observation, for scouting.

spēcūlor, *ārī*, *ātus*, *tr. dep.*, to observe, watch, reconnoitre.

spēro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to hope, trust, expect, look for.

spēs, *ēī*, *f.*, hope, expectation.

spīrītus, *ūs*, *m.*, breath; spirit; airs, haughtiness, arrogance.

spōlio, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to strip, spoil, plunder, deprive.

spōliūm, *ī*, *n.*, booty, spoil.

sponte, *abl.*, of one's own will *or* accord, of one's self, voluntarily.

stābīlio, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*, *tr.*, to make firm; to fix, settle.

stăbilitās, ātis, *f.*, firmness, stability, steadiness.
 stātim, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith, at once.
 stătio, ōnis, *f.*, a station, post; *fig.*, a guard, sentinel, sentry.
 stătũo, ěre, uĩ, ūtum, *tr.*, to set up, raise, erect; to put, place, station, establish; to conclude, determine, decide.
 stătũra, ae, *f.*, stature.
 stătus, ūs, *m.*, state, condition, situation, posture.
 stĩmũlus, ĩ, *m.*, a goad, spur; a pointed stake.
 stĩpendĩarius, a, um, *adj.*, tributary.
 stĩpendĩum, ĩ, *n.*, a tax, tribute, impost; pay.
 stĩpes, ĩtis, *m.*, a log, post, stake.
 stirps, stirpis, *f.*, a stem, stock, stalk; race, family, lineage.
 sto, āre, stětĩ, stătum, *intr.*, to stand, continue, persist, remain.
 strāmentum, ĩ, *n.* (sterno), thatch, straw, litter; a covering, rug, spread, housing.
 strēpĩtus, ūs, *m.*, a noise, din, uproar, tumult.
 structũra, ae, *f.* (struo), a building, structure, work.
 stũdeo, ěre, uĩ, —, *intr.*, to attend to, pay attention to, cultivate, pursue; to aim at, be eager for, strive after.
 stũdiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly, zealously, carefully, attentively.
 stũdĩum, ĩ, *n.*, eagerness, zeal, desire; attachment, devo-

tion; pursuit, vocation, exertion.
 stultĩtia, ae, *f.*, folly, foolishness, silliness.
 sub, *prep.* with the *accus.* or *abl.*, under, below, beneath; near to, at the base of, by; towards, about; in, during, on; within.
 sũb-actus, a, um. *See* sũb-ĩgo.
 sub-dĩlus, a, um, *adj.*, crafty, cunning, deceitful.
 sub-dũco, ěre, xĩ, ctum, *tr.*, to draw off, withdraw, remove, take away; to draw up *on shore*.
 sub-ductĩo, ōnis, *f.*, a drawing up, hauling ashore.
 sũb-ěo, ĩre, ĩvĩ or ĩĩ, ĩtum, *intr.*, to come *or* go under; to come up, advance, proceed; to undergo, endure, encounter.
 sũb-esse. *See* sub-sum.
 sub-fĩdĩo, ěre, fĩdĩ, fossum, *tr.*, to dig under; to stab beneath.
 sub-ĩcĩo, ěre, ĩēcĩ, iectum, *tr.* (sub + ĩacio), to throw from under; to put *or* place under *or* near; to subject, expose; to add, subjoin.
 sũb-ĩgo, ěre, ěgĩ, actum, *tr.* (sub + ĩgo), to drive under; to force, compel; to reduce, subdue, subjugate.
 sũbĩtĩo, *adv.*, suddenly, quickly.
 sũbĩtus, a, um, *adj.* (sũbeo), sudden, unexpected.
 sub-lātus, a, um, *partic. adj.* (tollo), elated, proud.

sub-lěvo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*,
to raise up, support ; to as-
sist, aid, relieve ; to lighten,
lessen.

sublīca, ae, *f.*, a stake, pile.

sub-lŭo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to
wash beneath ; to flow near,
wash.

sub-mīnistro, āre, āvī, ātum,
tr., to furnish, afford, supply.

sub-mitto, ěre, mīsī, missum,
tr., to send *or* place under ;
to send secretly ; to let
down, lower.

sub-mōvēo, ěre, mōvī, mōtum,
tr., to remove, drive back,
displace, dislodge.

sub-rŭo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to
dig under ; to undermine,
overthrow, demolish.

sub-sěquor, ī, cŭtus, *tr. dep.*,
to follow closely after, follow
immediately.

sub-sīdĭum, ī, *n.*, a reserve,
reēnforcement ; support, aid,
assistance, protection ; help,
remedy.

sub-sīdo, ěre, sēdī, sessum,
intr., to settle *or* sink down ;
to remain.

sub-sisto, ěre, stītī, —, *intr.*,
to stand still, halt, stop ; to
hold out.

sub-sum, esse, fuī, —, *intr.*,
to be under ; to be near *or*
at hand ; to approach.

sub-trāho, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*,
to take away, remove, with-
draw.

sub-vectĭo, ōnis, *f.*, transpor-
tation, conveyance.

sub-věho, ěre, vexī, vectum,
tr., to carry *or* bring up,
convey.

sub-věnio, ěre, vĕnī, ventum,
intr., to come up ; to assist,
help, aid, succor.

suc-cēdo, ěre, cessī, cessum,
tr. and intr. (sub + cēdo),
to approach, advance, march
up ; to follow, succeed ; to
prosper.

suc-cendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr.*, to
set fire to, burn, kindle.

suc-cessus, ūs, *m.*, an advance,
approach ; success.

suc-cīdo, ěre, cīdī, cīsum, *tr.*
(sub + caedo), to cut off,
cut down, mow.

suc-cumbo, ěre, cŭbuī, cŭbĭ-
tum, *intr.* (sub + cumbo),
to sink under ; to yield, suc-
cumb, be overcome.

suc-curro, ěre, cŭcurrī *or* currī,
cursum, *intr.* (sub + curro),
to run *or* hasten to ; to help,
aid, assist, succor.

sŭdis, is, *f.*, a stake, a pile.

sŭdor, ōris, *m.*, sweat, toil.

Suēvus, a, um, *adj.*, Suevian.

suf-fĭcio, ěre, fēcī, fectum, *tr.*
and intr. (sub + fĕcio), to
supply ; furnish ; to be suffi-
cient ; to hold out.

suf-frāgĭum, ī, *n.* (sub +
frango), a vote ; suffrage.

sug-gestus, ūs, *m.* (suggĕro),
a raised place ; a platform,
stage.

suī, *refl. pron.*, of himself,
herself, itself, *or* them-
selves.

sum, *esse*, *fuī*, —, *intr.*, to be, exist, remain, continue, live.
summa, *ae*, *f.*, the sum, whole; conduct, management. **Summa imperī**, the chief command.
summus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* (*super. of sūpērus*), the highest, greatest, utmost, most important, supreme; the last, the highest part of, top of, summit of, surface of.
sūmo, *ēre*, *sumpsī*, *sumptum*, *tr.*, to take, take up *or* away; to assume, arrogate; to undertake.
sumptūōsus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, expensive, costly.
sumptus, *ūs*, *m.* (*sūmo*), expense, cost, charge.
sūper, *prep. with the accus. or abl.*, upon, above, over.
sūperbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily, arrogantly, insolently.
sūper-fuī. See **sūper-sum**.
sūpērior, *us*, *adj.* (*comp. of sūpērus*), higher, upper; superior; former, previous, preceding.
sūpēro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr. and intr.* (*super*), to surpass, excel; to overcome, subdue; to prevail; to remain, be left, survive.
sūper-sēdēo, *ēre*, *sēdī*, *sessum*, *tr. and intr.*, to forbear, abstain, desist from.
sūper-sum, *esse*, *fuī*, —, *intr.*, to be over and above, be left, remain; to survive.
sūpērus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, above,

upper, over. *Comp.* **sūpērior**, *super. sūprēmus or summus*.
sup-pēto, *ēre*, *īvī or iī*, *ītum*, *intr.* (*sub + pēto*), to be at hand, be present, be in store; to suffice.
sup-plēmentum, *ī*, *n.*, a filling up, recruiting; reënforcements, recruits.
sup-plex, *īcis*, *adj.* (*sub + plīco*), suppliant, humble, humbly entreating.
sup-plīcātio, *ōnis*, *f.*, a thanksgiving, public prayer *or* supplication.
sup-plīcīter, *adv.*, suppliantly, humbly, as suppliants.
sup-plīcium, *ī*, *n.* (*supplex*), punishment, penalty.
sup-porto, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.* (*sub + porto*), to carry, convey, *or* bring up *or* to.
sūprā, *adv.*, above, before.
sūprā, *prep. with the accus.*, above, over; upon; before.
sus-cīpio, *ēre*, *cēpī*, *ceptum*, *tr.* (*sub + cāpio*), to take *or* lift up; to sustain, receive, incur; to undertake, assume.
su-spectus, *a*, *um*, *partic. adj.* (*suspicio*), suspected; exciting suspicion, suspicious.
su-spīcio, *ōnis*, *f.*, suspicion, distrust, mistrust.
su-spīcio, *ēre*, *pexī*, *pectum*, *tr.* (*sub + spēcio*), to mistrust, suspect.
su-spīcor, *ārī*, *ātus*, *tr. dep.*, to suspect, mistrust, surmise, distrust.

sus-tento, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (sustīneo), to hold up, support, sustain, uphold; to hold out, withstand, endure.
sus-tīnĕo, ēre, tīnuī, tentum, *tr.* (sub+tĕneo), to hold up, sustain, support; to check, restrain; to withstand, undergo, endure, hold out.
sūsus, a, um, *poss. adj. pron.*, his, her, its, their; one's own; his own, her own, their own.

T.

T., for Titus.

tābernācŭlum, ī, *n.*, a tent.

tābŭla, ae, *f.*, a board, plank; a tablet, register.

tābŭlātum, ī, *n.*, boardwork; flooring, a floor, story.

tāceo, ēre, uī, itum, *tr. and intr.*, to be silent; to pass over in silence, disregard.

tācītus, a, um, *adj.*, silent.

tālĕa, ae, *f.*, a rod, staff, stick, bar.

tālis, e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind *or* nature, like.

tam, *adv.*, so, so much, so very.

tāmen, *conj.*, notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however; at least.

tām-etsī, *conj.* (tamen+etsi), although, though, notwithstanding.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally; then, pray.

Quid tandem, what, pray? what in the world?

tango, ěre, tĕtĭgī, tactum, *tr.*, to touch, border on.

tant-ŏpĕre, *or* tantō ŏpĕre, *adv.*, so much, so greatly.

tantŭlus, a, um, *adj. dim.* (tantus), so little, so trifling *or* trivial.

tantum, *adv.*, so much, so far; so very; only merely. **Non tantum**—sed etiam, not only—but also.

tantum-dem, *adv.*, just so much, so far, just as far.

tantum-mŏdo, *adv.*, only, merely.

tantus, a, um, *adj.*, so great, so large, so much, so many; so small, so trivial, so slight.

Quantō—tantō—the—the. **tardĕ**, *adv.*, slowly, tardily.

tardo, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to delay, hinder, retard, impede.

tardus, a, um, *adj.*, slow, tardy.

taurus, ī, *m.*, a bull.

taxus, ī, *f.*, the yew-tree.

tectum, ī, *n.* (tĕgo), a roof; a house, dwelling, shelter.

tectus, a, um. *See* tĕgo.

tĕgĭmentum, ī, *n.*, a covering.

tĕgo, ěre, texī, tectum, *tr.*, to cover, hide, conceal; to shelter, protect, defend.

tĕlum, ī, *n.*, a weapon; dart, javelin, spear.

tĕmĕrārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, rash, inconsiderate, heedless.

tĕmĕrĕ, *adv.*, rashly, inconsiderately; at random, without reason; readily.

tĕmĕrītās, ātis, *f.*, rashness, temerity, indiscretion.

tēmo, *ōnis*, *m.*, the pole, beam,
or tongue of a carriage, etc.
tempĕrantĭa, *ae*, *f.*, modera-
tion, self-control, calmness.
tempĕrātus, *a, um*, *partic. adj.*
(tempĕro), temperate, mod-
erate, calm.
tempĕro, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *tr.*
and intr. (tempus), to tem-
per, moderate, restrain; to
abstain, refrain.
tempestās, *ātis*, *f.* (tempus), a
period, season; the weather;
a storm, tempest.
tempto, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *tr.*, to
try, prove; to attempt, en-
deavor; to attack, assail; to
sound, tamper with.
tempus, *ōris*, *n.*, time; season.
tendo, *ĕre, tētendī, tensum*
and tentum, *tr.*, to stretch,
stretch out, extend; to tent,
encamp; to go, march.
tēnebrae, *ārum*, *f. pl.*, dark-
ness.
tĕnĕo, *ĕre, uī, tum*, *tr.*, to hold,
have, possess, occupy, keep;
to hold on, continue; to de-
fend, maintain; to detain,
hinder; to bind.
tĕner, *ĕra, ĕrum*, *adj.*, tender,
soft; young.
tĕnuis, *e*, *adj.*, thin, slender;
poor, mean, low; trifling, in-
significant; delicate, feeble.
tĕnuītās, *ātis*, *f.*, thinness, fine-
ness; poverty.
tĕnuīter, *adv.*, thinly, slightly.
ter, *num. adv.*, three times.
tĕres, *ĕtis*, *adj.* (tĕro), taper-
ing, rounded, smooth.

tergum, *ī*, *n.*, the back; rear.
Ab tergo, in the rear. **Post**
tergum, in the rear.
ternī, *ae, a*, *distr. num. adj.*,
three each, every three, in
threes, three.
terra, *ae, f.*, the earth; land,
ground, district. **Orbis terra-**
rum, the earth, the world.
terrĕnus, *a, um*, *adj.* (terra),
of earth, earthy.
terrĕo, *ĕre, uī, ĭtum*, *tr.*, to
terrify, frighten; to deter.
terrĭto, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *tr. freq.*,
to terrify, frighten, affright.
terror, *ōris*, *m.*, terror, fear,
affright.
tertiō, *adv.*, for the third time.
tertĭus, *a, um*, *num. adj.* (ter),
the third.
testāmentum, *ī*, *n.*, a will.
testĭmōnĭum, *ī*, *n.* (testis),
testimony, proof, evidence.
testis, *is*, *m. and f.*, a witness.
testūdo, *ĭnis*, *f.*, a tortoise; a
testudo, a shed for sheltering
besiegers; the shelter of
overlapping shields held over
soldiers' heads.
texī. See **tĕgo**.
tignum, *ī*, *n.*, a beam, log, stick,
building-timber.
tĭmeo, *ĕre, uī*, —, *tr. and intr.*,
to fear, dread; to fear for.
tĭmĭdĕ, *adv.*, fearfully, timidly.
tĭmĭdus, *a, um*, *adj.*, fearful,
timid, afraid.
tĭmor, *ōris*, *m.*, fear, dread.
tōlĕro, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *tr.*, to
bear, support, endure, sustain,
maintain.

tollo, ěre, sustŭlī, sublātum, *irr. tr.*, to raise, lift, *or* take up; to elate; to take away, remove, carry off; to kill, destroy, break off.

tormentum, ī, *n.* (torqueo), a hurling-engine, *for throwing stones, darts, etc.*; a rope, cord; torture.

torreo, ěre, uī, tostum, *tr.*, to roast, bake, scorch, burn, parch.

tōt, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

tōt-īdem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, as many.

tōtus, a, um, *gen. tōtīus*, *adj.*, all, the whole, entire, total.

trabs, trābis, *f.*, a beam, timber.

tractus, a, um. *See* trāho.

tractus, ūs, *m.* (trāho), a district, region, tract, extent.

trā-do, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.* (trans + do), to give up, deliver, surrender, transmit, hand down, impart; to commend.

trā-dūco, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to lead across, over, *or* through; to lead, transfer, convey, transport.

trāgŭla, ae, *f.*, a javelin, dart.

trāho, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to draw, drag along, drag away; to protract.

trāicio, ěre, iēcī, iectum, *tr.* (trans + iacio), to throw *or* cast over; to convey across, transport; to thrust *or* pierce through, transfix.

trā-iectus, ūs, *m.* (trāicio), a passage, crossing over.

trā-no, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.* (trans + no), to swim across *or* over.

tranquillitās, ātis, *f.*, a calm; calmness, stillness, tranquillity.

trans, *prep. with the accus.*, over, across, beyond.

Trans-alpīnus, a, um, *adj.*, Transalpine, beyond the Alps.

tran-scendo, ěre, dī, sum, *tr. and intr.* (trans + scando), to pass over, cross; to surmount, exceed, surpass.

trans-ěo, ěre, īvī *or* iī, ětum, *intr.*, to go, cross, *or* pass over; to pass away, elapse.

trans-fěro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum, *irr. tr.*, to carry, bear, *or* convey over; to transfer, transport.

trans-fīgo, ěre, xī, xum, *tr.*, to pierce *or* thrust through; to transfix.

trans-fōdīo, ěre, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, to thrust through, pierce through, transfix.

trans-fŭga, ae, *m.*, a deserter.

trans-grědīor, ī, gressus, *intr. dep.* (trans + grādior), to go *or* pass over; to cross.

trans-ětus, ūs, *m.* (transeo), a passing over; a passage, crossing.

trans-lātus, a, um. *See* trans-fěro.

trans-mārīnus, a, um, *adj.*, beyond the sea, transmarine, foreign.

trans-missus, ūs, *m.*, a passage.

trans-mitto, ěre, mīsī, mis-sum, *tr.*, to send over *or* across.

trans-porto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to carry over, transport.

Trans-rhēnānus, a, um, *adj.*, across the Rhine. **Transrhēnānī**, ōrum, *m. pl.*, those living across the Rhine.

transtrum, ī, *n.*, a cross-beam.

trans-vēho, ěre, xī, ctum, *tr.*, to carry *or* convey across; to transport.

trans-versus, a, um, *adj.* (trans + verito), lying across, crosswise, transverse, athwart, oblique.

trē-centī, ae, a, *num. adj.* (tres + centum), three hundred.

trē-dēcim, *num. adj.*, thirteen.

trēpīdo, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to hurry about in confusion and alarm; to be in confusion, in a state of trepidation; to be greatly agitated *or* alarmed. **Trēpīdātur**, *impers.*, consternation prevails.

trēs, trīa, *num. adj.*, three.

tribūnus, ī, *m.* (tribus), a tribune. **Tribūnus milītum**, a tribune of the soldiers *or* military tribune, an officer of the army. Each legion had six.

tribūo, ěre, uī, ūtum, *tr.*, to give, assign; to grant, allow, ascribe, attribute.

tribus, ūs, *f.*, a tribe.

tribūtum, ī, *n.*, (tribuo), tax, tribute, impost.

trī-dūm, ī, *n.*, three days.

trī-ennīum, ī, *n.*, three years.

trīgintā, *num. adj.*, thirty.

trīnī, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each, every three, three.

trī-partītō, *adv.*, in three parts, in three divisions.

tri-plex, īcis, *adj.* (tres + plīco), threefold, triple, three.

trīquētrus, a, um, *adj.*, three-cornered, triangular.

tristis, e, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.

tristītia, ae, *f.*, sorrow, sadness.

truncus, ī, *m.*, the trunk *or* stock of a tree.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

tūba, ae, *f.*, a trumpet.

tuēor, ērī, tūtus *or* tūtus, *tr. dep.*, to look at, behold, watch, protect, guard, defend; to maintain, preserve, support.

tūlī. See **fēro**.

tum, *adv.*, at that time, then.

tum, *conj.*, moreover, besides, next. **Cum** — **tum**, both — and.

tūmultūor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to make a tumult *or* disturbance; to be in confusion, raise a tumult.

tūmultuōsē, *adv.*, in a disorderly manner, tumultuously.

tūmultus, ūs, *m.*, an uproar, tumult, disturbance; sedition, insurrection.

tūmulus, ī, *m.* (tūmeo), a mound, hillock, hill.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

turma, *ae, f.*, a troop *or* squadron of thirty horsemen.

turpis, *e, adj.*, ugly, unsightly; shameful, disgraceful.

turpiter, *adv.*, shamefully, disgracefully, basely.

turpītudo, īnis, *f.*, disgrace, shame, dishonor.

turris, *is, f.*, a tower.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely, securely, in safety. *Comp.* tūtius.

tūtus, *a, um, adj.* (tuēor), safe, secure, protected.

tūus, *a, um, poss. adj. pron.*, thy, thine, of thee; your, yours, of you.

U.

ūbī, *adv.*, where; when. Ubi primum, as soon as.

ūbī-cumque, *adv.*, wherever.

ūbīquē, *adv.*, everywhere; anywhere, wherever.

ulciscor, ī, ultus, *tr. dep.*, to avenge, revenge, punish.

ullus, *a, um, gen. ullius*, any, any one.

ultērior, *us, gen. ōris, comp. adj.*, farther, on the farther side; more remote, more distant. *Super.* ultīmus.

ultīmus, *a, um, adj. (super. of ultērior)*, the farthest, most distant, most remote, last.

ultrā, *prep. with the accus.*, beyond, over, besides, more than.

ultrā, *adv.*, beyond, further, besides, more than.

ultrō, *adv.*, beyond, on the other side; moreover, besides; of one's own accord, voluntarily, actually. Ultro citroque, backwards and forwards, to and fro.

ultus, *a, um.* See ulciscor.

ūlūlātus, ūs, *m.*, a wailing, howling; yelling, shout.

ūmērus, *i, m.*, the shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time.

ūnā, *adv.*, together *or* along with, at the same time.

undē, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whom.

un-dēcim, *num. adj.*, eleven.

un-dēcīmus, *a, um, num. adj.*, the eleventh.

un-dē-quadrāgintā, *num. adj.*, thirty-nine.

undīquē, *adv.*, from all parts, from all quarters; on all sides, everywhere.

ūnī-versus, *a, um, adj.*, all, the whole, entire, universal.

ūnus, *a, um, gen. unīus, num. adj.*, one, single, alone, only, the same.

urbānus, *a, um, adj.*, of a city, of the city (Rome), in the city.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, a city; the city, *i.e.* Rome.

urgēo, ēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, to press upon, press hard *or* close upon; to urge, drive, weigh down, oppress.

ūrus, ī, *m.*, a kind of wild ox.

ūsītātus, a, um, *adj.*, usual, common, customary, ordinary.

usquē, *adv.*, even, as far as, all the way. **Usque eo**, to such a degree.

ūsus, a, um. *See* **ūtor**.

ūsus, ūs, *m.*, use, experience, practice, skill; advantage, profit; need, necessity, occasion. **Usu venire**, to happen, come to pass, occur.

ūt, or **ūtī**, *adv.*, as; when, as soon as; how, in what manner.

ūt, or **ūtī**, *conj.*, that, in order that, so that; though, although; that not (*after verbs of fearing*).

ūter, tra, trum, *gen. utrius*, *adj.*, which of the two, which.

ūterque, trāque, trumque, *gen. utriusque*, *adj.*, both, each.

ūtī. *See* **ut**.

ūtīlis, e, *adj.* (**ūtor**), useful, profitable, advantageous.

ūtīlītās, ātis, *f.*, usefulness, profit, advantage, service.

ūtor, ī, ūsus, *intr. dep.*, to use, enjoy, make use of, avail one's self of; to employ, exercise, practise; to treat, show.

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.

utrum, *conj.*, whether, in indirect questions. In direct questions it is not translated. **Utrum** — an, whether — or.

uxor, ōris, *f.*, a wife.

V.

vācātio, ōnis, *f.* (**vāco**), exemption, immunity, freedom.

vāco, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, to be empty, vacant, unoccupied; to lie waste.

vācūus, a, um, *adj.*, empty, void, free, vacant, destitute.

vādum, ī, *n.*, a ford; shoal, shallow place.

vāgīna, ae, *f.*, a sheath, scabbard.

vāgor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to wander about, roam about.

vāleo, ēre, uī, —, *intr.*, to be strong, powerful, or able; to have weight or influence; to avail, have force.

vālētūdo, īnis, *f.* (**vāleo**), health, good or ill.

vallis, or **valles**, is, *f.*, a valley.

vallum, ī, *n.* (**vallus**), an earthen wall or rampart set with palisades; earthworks, intrenchments, circumvallation.

vallus, ī, *m.*, a stake, palisade.

vāriētās, ātis, *f.*, variety, diversity, difference.

vārius, a, um, *adj.*, various, different, variegated, changing, changeable.

vasto, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vastus, a, um, *adj.*, vast, immense, huge, enormous.

vātīcīnātio, ōnis, *f.*, a prophecy, prediction, foretelling.

vě, *enclit. conj.* = vel, or; either.

vectīgal, ālis, *n.*, a tax, toll, tribute, impost; revenue.
 vectīgālis, *e*, *adj.*, tributary.
 vectōrius, *a, um, adj.* (vēho), for carrying burdens, transport.
 vēhēmenter, *adv.*, exceedingly, greatly, strongly, forcibly.
 vēho, ěre, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, to carry, bear, convey.
 vel, *conj.*, or; even. Vel — vel, either — or.
 vėlōcītās, ātis, *f.*, swiftness, rapidity, speed, velocity.
 vėlōcīter, *adv.*, swiftly, rapidly, quickly. *Comp.* vėlōcīus, *super.* vėlōcissimē.
 vēlox, ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick, rapid, fleet.
 vēlum, ī, *n.*, a sail.
 vēlut, *adv.*, as, just as, like.
 vēnātio, ōnis, *f.*, hunting, the chase.
 vēnātor, ōris, *m.*, a hunter.
 vendo, ěre, dīdī, dītum, *tr.*, to sell.
 Vēnētīcus, *a, um, adj.*, of the Vēnēti, Venetian.
 vēnia, *ae, f.*, favor, indulgence, pardon, forgiveness.
 vēnio, ěre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, to come, arrive.
 ventīto, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr. freq.*, to come often, resort.
 ventus, ī, *m.*, the wind.
 vēr, vēris, *n.*, the spring.
 verbum, ī, *n.*, a word; expression. Verba facere = to speak, address.
 vērē, *adv.*, in truth, truly.

věřeor, ērī, ětus, *tr. dep.*, to fear.
 vergo, ěre, —, —, *intr.*, to incline, lie, face.
 Vergōbrētus, ī, *m.*, the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduans.
 vērī-sīmīlis, *e, adj.* (vērus + sīmīlis), probably, likely.
 vērītus, *a, um.* See věřeor.
 vērō, *adv.* (vērus), in truth, indeed, assuredly.
 vērō, *conj.* (vērus), but, however.
 verso, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr. freq.* (verto), to turn, toss to and fro, turn over, knock this way and that; to stir up, exercise; to exert, employ, occupy.
 versor, ārī, ātus, *intr. dep.*, to dwell, live, remain, be; to occupy, busy one's self with, be engaged in.
 versus, *prep. with acc.*, towards.
 versus, *adv.* (verto), towards.
 versus, ūs, *m.* (verto), a verse, line.
 verto, ěre, tī, sum, *tr. and intr.*, to turn, turn round or about; to change, alter.
 vērum, ī, *n.*, the truth.
 vērus, *a, um, adj.*, true; real; right, reasonable.
 vērūtum, ī, *n.*, a dart, javelin.
 vesper, ěris and ěrī, *m.*, the evening star; evening.
 vester, tra, trum, *poss. adj. pron.*, your, yours, your own.
 vestīgium, ī, *n.*, a footstep, trace, track; spot, place;

- moment, instant, point. **E**
vestigio, on the spot, immediately.
- vestiō**, īre, īvī *or* iī, itum, *tr.*, to clothe; to cover.
- vestis**, is, *f.*, a garment, clothing.
- vestītus**, ūs, *m.*, clothing, dress.
- větērānus**, a, um, *adj.* (vētus), veteran, old.
- věto**, āre, uī, itum, *tr.*, to forbid, prohibit, prevent.
- vētus**, ēris, *adj.*, old, ancient.
- vexillum**, ī, *n.* (věho), an ensign, standard, flag; a red flag *displayed from the general's tent as a signal for marching or for battle.*
- vexo**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to harass, disturb, annoy, trouble, molest.
- vīa**, ae, *f.*, a way, road, passage.
- vīātor**, ōris, *m.*, a traveller.
- vīcēnī**, ae, a, *distr. num. adj.*, twenty each, in twenties, twenty.
- vīcēsīmus**, a, um, *num. adj.*, the twentieth.
- vīcī**. *See* vinco.
- vīciēs**, *num. adv.*, twenty times.
- vīcīnītās**, ātis, *f.*, nearness, neighborhood, vicinity; the neighbors.
- vīcis** (*gen.*), *f.*, change, succession, turn. **In vicem**, in turn, by turns, alternately.
- victīma**, ae, *f.*, a sacrifice, victim.
- victor**, ōris, *m.*, a conqueror. *Adj.*, victorious.
- victōriā**, ae, *f.*, victory.
- victus**, ūs, *m.* (vīvo), food, sustenance, provisions; mode of living.
- victus**, a, um. *See* vinco.
- vīcus**, ī, *m.*, a village, hamlet.
- vīdeo**, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, to see, observe.
- vīdēor**, ērī, vīsus, *intr. dep.*, to seem, appear; to seem good, fit, *or* proper.
- vīgīlia**, ae, *f.*, a watching, wakefulness; watch, guard; the watch, sentinels. *The Romans divided the night into four watches.*
- vīgintī**, *num. adj.*, twenty.
- vīmen**, īnis, *n.*, a twig, osier.
- vīnciō**, īre, nxī, nctum, *tr.*, to bind, fasten, tie.
- vinco**, ēre, vīcī, victum, *tr. and intr.*, to conquer, subdue; to prevail, have one's way.
- vinctus**, a, um. *See* vīnciō.
- vīncūlum**, ī, *n.* (vīncio), a bond, fetter, chain. **In vincula** = into prison.
- vīndīco**, āre, āvī, ātum, *tr.*, to lay legal claim to; to demand, assert, maintain; to free, deliver, liberate; to punish, avenge, revenge.
- vīněa**, ae, *f.*, a shed *or* mantlet, *under cover of which soldiers assailed the walls of towns.*
- vīnum**, ī, *n.*, wine.

viôlo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to injure, violate, harm; to lay waste.

vir, *vīrī*, *m.*, a man; husband.
vīrēs. *See vis.*

virgo, *īnis*, *f.*, a maiden, maid, virgin.

virgultum, *ī*, *n.*, a bush, copse, shrubbery, brushwood.

vīrītim, *adv.*, man by man, individually, singly.

virtūs, *ūtis*, *f.* (*vir*), manliness; power, vigor, energy; bravery, valor; merit, excellence, worth, virtue.

vīs, *vīs*, *f.*, strength, power, force, violence; vigor, energy; effect, influence; quantity, multitude, number.
Plural, **vīrēs**.

vīsus, *a*, *um*. *See vīdeo or vīdēor.*

vīta, *ae*, *f.*, life.

vīto, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to shun, avoid, escape.

vītrum, *ī*, *n.*, woad, *a plant used for dyeing blue.*

vīvo, *ēre*, *vixī*, *victum*, *intr.*, to live, live on.

vīvus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, alive, living.

vix, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly, with difficulty, barely.

vōco, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to call, invite, summon; to name.

Volcānus, *ī*, *m.*, Vulcan, the god of fire.

volgō, *adv.*, generally, commonly, everywhere, here and there.

volgo, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to publish, divulge, disclose.

volgus, *ī*, *n.*, the mass, multitude, common people, the public; a crowd, throng.

volnĕro, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *tr.*, to wound.

volnus, *ĕris*, *n.*, a wound.

vōlo, *velle*, *vōluī*, —, *irr. tr.*, to wish, be willing, desire; to purpose, intend.

voltus, *ūs*, *m.*, the countenance, face, looks, aspect, features, mien, air, expression.

vōluntārius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, voluntary, willing. **Vōluntārius**, *ī*, *m.*, a volunteer.

vōluntās, *ātis*, *f.*, will, wish, desire, inclination; good will, favor; willing consent, approbation, willingness.

vōluptās, *ātis*, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment, joy, delight.

vōveo, *ēre*, *vōvī*, *vōtum*, *tr.*, to vow, to promise solemnly.

vox, *vōcis*, *f.*, a voice; word, saying, remark, expression.

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

A.

Aduātūca or **Aduátīca**, *ae, f.* A place in the country of the Eburōnes, afterwards Tungri, now Tongres.

Aduātūcī or **Aduātīcī**, *ōrum, m.* A German people dwelling between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Scaldis (Schelde or Scheldt) from the time of the Cimbric war.

Āgēdincum, *ī, n.* The capital of the Senōnes; now Sens (according to others, Provins).

Ālēsia, *ae, f.* A strongly fortified town of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise.

Āllōbrox, *ōgis, m.* An Allobrogian. **Āllobrōges**, *um, m.* A Gallic people, bounded on the north and west by the Rhodānus (Rhone), south by the Isāra (Isère), and extending eastward to the Alps.

Alpes, *ium, f.* The Alps generally.

Ambarrī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people east of the Arar (Saône), between the Hædui and the Allóbrōges.

Ambiānī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Amiens.

Ambibāriī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people in Normandy.

Ambilarētī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Ambiliātī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people whose situation is unknown. [Some good Mss. read **Ambiānī** instead. Dict. Geog.]

Ambivarētī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Ambivarītī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people, probably on the left bank of the river Mosa (Meuse), "who could hardly be clients of the Hædui," and were therefore different from the preceding. Dict. Geog.

Ambluárētī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Hædui.

Anartes, ium, and Anartī, ōrum, m. A German people on the Theiss, in Hungary. The Hercynian Forest extended to their boundaries.

Ancalītes, um, m. A people in the southeast of Britain.

Andes, ium, m. (and **Andecavī** or **Andegāvī, ōrum, m.**). A Gallic people north of the Liger (Loire), in Anjou.

Āquilēia, ae, f. A town in the north of Italy.

Āquitānus, ī, m. An Aquitanian. **Aquitānī, ōrum, m.** The Aquitanians, inhabitants of Aquitania.

Āquitānia, ae, f. One of the three great divisions into which Cæsar divides Gaul, bounded on the north by the Garumna (Garonne), and on the south by the Pyrenees.

Ārar, āris, m. Acc. **Arārim.** A river in Gaul flowing into the Rhodānus (Rhône); now called the Saône.

Arduenna, ae, f. The forest-covered mountains of Ardennes, in Gaul, extending from the Treveri on the Rhine through the territory of the Remi and the Nervii to the Scaldis (Schelde or Scheldt).

Arecómīcī, ōrum, m. See **Volcae**.

Aremōrīcae, ārum, f. (from Celtic **ar, on, near,** and **mor, the sea**). **Civitates.** The states on the coast of Gaul, between the Liger (Loire) and the Sequāna (Seine).

Arvernus, ī, m. An Arvernian. **Arvernī, ōrum, m.** A people of Gaul, in the present Auvergne.

Atrēbātes, um, m. A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Calais.

Aulercus, ī, m. An Aulercan. **Aulercī, ōrum, m.** A people in Celtic Gaul, whom Cæsar divides into three branches.

1. **Aulercī Brannovīces,** in the neighborhood of the Hædui.

2. **Aulercī Cēnomānī** or **Diablintes** (Diablintres), in Maine.

3. **Aulercī Eburovīces,** in Normandy.

Auscī, ōrum, m. A Gallic people in the neighborhood of Auch.

Avārīcum, ī, m. A town of the Biturīges; now Bourges.

Axōna, ae, f. A river in Gallia Belgica; now the Aisne.

B.

Bācēnis, is, f. A great forest in Germany; according to some, the Thūringer Wald (Forest); according to others, the Hartz Forest.

- Bătvī, ōrum, *m.*** The Batavians (Hollanders, Dutch), who occupied an island formed by the northern arm of the Rhenus (Rhine), the Vacālus (Waal), and the ocean. Hence **Insula Batavorum**.
- Belgae, ārum, *m.*** One of the three nations into which Cæsar divides the inhabitants of Gaul.
- Belgium, ī, *n.*** A part of Gallia Belgica, which comprehended the Bellovāci, Atrebātes, and Ambiāni.
- Bellovācī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in Gallia Belgica, in the region of the present Beauvais.
- Bibracte, is, *n.*** The chief town of the Hædui, afterwards Augustodūnum, and now Autun.
- Bibrax, actis, *f.*** A town of the Remi; perhaps the modern Bièvre.
- Bibrōcī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in the southeast of Britain.
- Bīgerriōnes, um, *m.*** A people in the south of Gaul, in the district called Le Bigorre.
- Bītūrīges, um, *m.*** A Gallic people west of the Hædui, from whom they were divided by the Liger (Loire).
- Bōiī, ōrum, *m.*** A Gallic people, who passed over into Germany, and subsequently invaded Gaul with the Helvetii. After the defeat of the Helvetii, they dwelt in the territory of the Hædui.
- Brannovīces, um, *m.*** See **Aulercī**, and the next word.
- Brannoviī, ōrum, *m.*** A Gallic people of whom nothing certain is known. The name is regarded by some as merely a variation of the preceding. The Mss. are uncertain. See Dict. Geog.
- Bratuspantium, ī, *n.*** A town of the Bellovāci, in Gallia Belgica, in the neighborhood of Breteuil, in Picardy.
- Brītannī, ōrum, *m.*** Britons, inhabitants of Britain.
- Brītannia, ae, *f.*** Britain; England and Scotland.

C.

- Cābillōnum, ī, *n.*** A town of the Hædui on the river Arar; now Chalons-sur-Saône.
- Cādurcus, ī, *m.*** A Cadurcan. **Cadurcī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in the south of Gaul, now Cahors.
- Caerōsī (Caeresi, Caeraesi), ōrum, *m.*** Originally a people of Germany, who dwelt in Gallia Belgica, in the neighborhood of Liège.

- Calētī, ōrum, and Calētes, um, *m.* A people of Belgic Gaul in the northeast of Normandy, in the neighborhood of Caux.
- Cantābrī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Spain in Biscay.
- Cantium, ī, *n.* A district in the southeast of Britain; now Kent.
- Carnūtes, um, *m.* A Gallic people in Orleans.
- Cassī, ōrum, *m.* A people in the southeast of Britain.
- Caturīges, um, *m.* A Gallic people in Dauphiné.
- Celtae, ārum, *m.* A great parent-stock of people in the north of Europe, the Celts; in Cæsar, the inhabitants of Southern Gaul.
- Cēnābum, ī, *n.* A town of the Carnūtes on the Liger (Loire), afterwards Aureliani, whence the modern name Orléans.
- Cenimagnī, ōrum, *m.* A people in Britain.
- Cēnōmānī, ōrum, *m.* See Aulercī.
- Ceutrōnes, um, *m.* An Alpine people, through whom is the pass of the *Petit St. Bernard*.
- Ceutrōnes, um, *m.* A people of Belgic Gaul, subject to the Nervii.
- Cēvenna or Cēbenna, ae, *f.* A range of mountains in Southern Gallia west of the Rhone, separating the Helvii from the Arverni.
- Chēruscī, ōrum, *m.* The most celebrated of all the German tribes; between the Visurgis (Weser) and the Albis (Elbe).
- Cimbrī, ōrum, *m.* A people of northern Germany (in Holstein, Schleswig, and Jutland).
- Cocosātes, um, *m.* A people in the south of Gaul, in Gascony.
- Condrūsī, ōrum, *m.* A Germanic people in Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa (Meuse).
- Coriōsōlītes, um, *m.* One of the Armoric states of Gaul, in modern Brittany. *Acc.* Coriosolitas.

D.

- Dācī, ōrum, *m.* The inhabitants of Dacia, a country comprising the modern Transylvania, Moldavia, and Wallachia.
- Dānūvius, ī, *m.* The river Danube.
- Dēcetia, ae, *f.* A town in an island in the Liger, now Decise.
- Diablintes, um, *m.* See Aulercī.
- Dūbis, is, *m.* The Doubs, a river which comes from mount Jura and falls into the Arar (Saône).
- Dūrōcortōrum, ī, *n.* Afterwards Remi, a town of the Remi; now Rheims.

E.

- Eburōnes, um, m.** A people in Gallia Belgica, extending from Liège to Aix-la-Chapelle.
- Ebūrōvīces, um, m.** See **Aulercī**.
- Ĕlāver, ěris, n.** The Allier, a river flowing into the Liger.
- Eleutētī, ōrum, m.** Dependents of the Arverni.
- Elusātes, ium, m.** A Gallic tribe in Aquitania.
- Esuviī, ōrum, m.** "It seems very likely that the Essui, Sesuvii and the Esubii (Esuvi) are the same, and that they occupied the diocese of Seés, which borders on that of *Mans* and *Evreux*. Dict. Geog.

G.

- Gābālī, ōrum, m.** A Gallic people in modern Languedoc.
- Gallia, ae, f.** Gaul. Gallia Cisalpina, Gaul south of the Alps, Gallia Transalpina, Gaul north of the Alps. Gallia Citerior, nearer Gaul, as opposed to Gallia Ulterior, or the further, which in Cæsar means the Provincia.
- Gallus, ī, m.** A Gaul. **Gallī, ōrum, m.** The Gauls generally, but in a more restrictive sense the inhabitants of the central parts of Gaul, between the Garumna (Garonne), the Sequāna (Seine), and the Matrōna (Marne).
- Gārumna, ae, m.** The Garonne, a river in the southwest of Gaul.
- Gārumnī, ōrum, m.** A Gallic people near the source of the Garumna.
- Gates (or Garītes), um, m.** A people in the southwest of Gaul.
- Geidumnī (also, Geidunni and Geidūni), ōrum, m.** A people in Belgic Gaul, subject to the Nervii.
- Gēnāva, ae, f.** A town of the Allobrōges, on Lake Lemannus (Lake of Geneva); it is now called Geneva.
- Gergōvia, ae, f.** 1. A town of the Arverni. 2. A town of the Boii.
- Germānī, ōrum, m.** Germans, inhabitants of Germania.
- Germānia, ae, f.** Germany, between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.
- Grāiocēlī, ōrum, m.** A Gallic people in the Graian Alps.
- Grudiī, ōrum, m.** A people of Gallia Belgica.

H.

- Haedūs, ī, m.** A Hæduan. **Haedui, ōrum, m.** A Gallic people between the Liger (Loire) and the Arar (Saône).

- Harūdes, um, *m.*** A German people who passed over into Gaul.
Helvētiī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people, whose country was the modern Switzerland.
Helviī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people of the Provincia.
Hībernīa, ae, *f.* The island now called Ireland.
Hispanīa, ae, *f.* Spain and Portugal; **citerior**, on this side of the Ebro; **ulterior**, beyond it.

I.

- Īllyrīcum, ī, *n.*** A country on the eastern shores of the Adriatic.
Ītalīa, ae, *f.* Italy.
Itius Portus, ī, ūs, *m.* A port of the Morīni in Belgic Gaul, from which Cæsar passed over into Britain. Some suppose it to be Calais; others, Whitsand (Witsand).
Iūra (Mons), ae, *m.* A chain of mountains extending from the Rhodānus (Rhône) to the Rhenus (Rhine).

L.

- Latobrigī, ōrum, *m.*** A German people who invaded Gaul with the Helvetii.
Lemannus (Lacus), ī, *m.* The Lake of Geneva.
Lēmōvīces, um, *m.* A Gallic people, in Aquitanian Gaul.
Lēpontiī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Cisalpine Gaul.
Leucī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Gallia Belgica.
Levācī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Gallia Belgica, allies of the Nervii.
Lexōviī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people in Normandy.
Līger (or Ligeris), ěris, *m.* The Loire.
Lingōnes, um, *m.* A people in Celtic Gaul; whence the modern *Langres*.
Lutetia, ae, *f.* A town of the Parisii, now Paris.

M.

- Magetōbriga, ae, *f.*** A place in Gaul; its site is unknown.
Mandūbiī, ōrum, *m.* A Gallic people whose chief city was Alesia.
Marcōmannī, ōrum, *m.* A Germanic people, whose position in the time of Cæsar is uncertain.
Matisco, ōnis, *m.* A town of the Aedui; now Mâcon.
Matrōna, ae, *m.* A river in Gaul; now the Marne.

- Mēdiōmātrīcī, ōrum, *m.*** A people of Gaul, on the Mosella (Moselle), in the neighborhood of Metz.
- Meldī, ōrum, *m.*** A Gallic people between the Sequāna (Seine) and the Matrōna (Marne).
- Melodūnum, ī, *n.*** A town of the Senōnes; now Melun.
- Mēnāpiī, ōrum, *m.*** A people of Belgic Gaul, on both banks of the Rhine, between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
- Mōna, ae, *f.*** In *Cæsar*, the Isle of Man. In *Tacitus*, the Isle of Anglesea (Anglesey). See Dict. Geog.
- Mōrīnī, ōrum, *m.*** A people of Belgic Gaul, near the channel, opposite the coast of Kent.
- Mōsa, ae, *f.*** A river in Belgic Gaul; now the Meuse.

N.

- Namnētes, um, *m.*** A people on the Liger (Loire), near the modern Nantes.
- Nantuātes, um, *m.*** A people on Lacus Lemannus (Lake of Geneva).
- Narbō, ōnis, *m.*** A city in Gaul, from which Gallia Narbonensis takes its name, the modern Narbonne.
- Nemētes, um, *m.*** A Germanic people, in the neighborhood of the modern Speier.
- Nerviī, ōrum, *m.*** A people (originally German) of Belgic Gaul, in the modern Hainault.
- Nitiōbrīges, um, *m.*** A people of Aquitania, on the Garumna.
- Nōrēia, ae, *f.*** A town in Noricum, now Friesach, in Austria.
- Nōricus, a, um, *adj.*** Norican; hence **Ager Noricus = Noricum, ī, *n.*** A country lying between the Danube and the Alps.
- Nōviōdūnum, ī, *n.*** 1. A town of the Biturīges. 2. A town of the Ilædui on the Liger (Loire); now Nevers. 3. A town of the Suessiones.

O.

- Ōcēlum, ī, *n.*** A town in the Piedmontese Alps, now perhaps Usselio or Oulx.
- Octōdūrus, ī, *m.*** A town of the Verāgri; the modern Martinach (or Martigny, as the French call it).
- Orcynia, a** variation of **Hercynia**, which see.
- Osismī, ōrum, *m.*** A people of Belgic Gaul in Bretagne.

P.

- Pădus, *ī, m.* The river Po; in Gallia Cisalpina.
 Paemānī, *ōrum, m.* A German people in Belgic Gaul.
 Pārīsiī, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gaul, on the Sequāna (Seine),
 in the region where now stands the modern city of Paris.
 Petrōcōriī, *ōrum, m.* A Gallic tribe in Aquitania.
 Pictōnes, *um, m.* A people in Aquitanian Gaul, in the modern
le pays de Poitou.
 Pīrustae, *ārum, m.* A people of Illyria.
 Pleumoxiī, *ōrum, m.* A people of Belgic Gaul.
 Prōvincia, *ae, f.* The Roman province in the southeast of Gaul;
 comprehending Languedoc, Provence, and Dauphiné.
 Ptiāniī, *ōrum, m.* A people of Aquitania. "Even the name
 is uncertain, for the Mss. write it in several different ways."
 Dict. Geog.

R.

- Raurācī, *ōrum, m.* A people of Gaul, on the Rhenus (Rhine).
 Rēdōnes, *um, m.* A people in the district of Rennes, in
 Bretagne.
 Rēmī, *ōrum, m.* A people in Belgic Gaul, in the district of the
 modern Rheims.
 Rhēnus, *ī, m.* The river Rhine.
 Rhōdānus, *ī, m.* The river Rhone.
 Rōma, *ae, f.* The city of Rome.
 Rōmānus, *ī, m.* A Roman. Rōmānī, *ōrum, m.* The Romans.
 Rūtēnī, *ōrum, m.* A people of Aquitania, near the modern
 Rhodéz.

S.

- Sabis, *is, m.* The river Sambre, in Gallia Belgica.
 Sāmārōbrīva, *ae, f.* A town of the Ambiāni, in Gallia Belgica.
 Santōni, *ōrum,* and Santōnes, *um, m.* A people of Aquitania,
 about the mouth of the Garumna; whence Saintes.
 Scaldis, *is, m.* The river Scheldt (Schelde).
 Sedūnī, *ōrum, m.* A Helvetian people; now Sion or Sitten.
 Sedusiī, *ōrum, m.* A German people near the Rhine.
 Segnī, *ōrum, m.* A people in Gallia Belgica.
 Segontiācī, *ōrum, m.* A people in south Britain.
 Sēgūsiāvī, *ōrum, m.* A people between the Loire and the
 Rhone.

- Sēnōnes, um, *m.*** A people of Gaul; their capital, Agedincum, now Sens.
- Sēquāna, ae, *f.*** The river Seine.
- Sēquānus, ī, *m.*** A Sequanian. **Sēquānī, ōrum, *m.*** A Gallic people, on the Sequāna (Seine).
- Sibusātes, um, *m.*** A people in Aquitania; now Sobusse.
- Sīgambri, ōrum, *m.*** A powerful German people, east of the Rhine, between the Sieg and the Ruhr.
- Sotiātes, um, *m.*** A people in Aquitania; now Sô.
- Suessiōnes, um, *m.*** A people of Gaul, in the neighborhood of the modern Soissons.
- Suevī, ōrum, *m.*** A powerful Germanic people, in the north-eastern part of Germany. Their name still remains in Schwaben, Suabia.

T.

- Tamēsis, is, *m.*** The river Thames.
- Tarbellī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in the southwest of Gaul.
- Tarusātes, ium, *m.*** A people of Aquitanian Gaul.
- Tectōsāges, um, *m.*** See Volcae.
- Tenctērī, ōrum, *m.*** A German people on the Rhine.
- Teutōnī, ōrum, and Teutōnes, um, *m.*** The Teutons, a people of Germany.
- Tigūrīnī, ōrum, *m.*** The inhabitants of **Tigurīnus pagus**, a district in Helvetia.
- Tōlōsa, ae, *f.*** A city of Gallia, in the Provincia, now Toulouse.
- Tōlōsātes, ium, *m.*** The inhabitants of Tolosa.
- Trēver, ěrī, *m.*** A Treverian. **Trēvērī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in Gallia Belgica; in and about the modern Trèves.
- Tribōcī, ōrum, and Tribōces, um, *m.*** A German people in the modern Alsace.
- Trinōbantes, um, *m.*** A people in the southeast of Britain.
- Tulingī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in the north of Helvetia.
- Tūrōnes, um, and Tūrōnī, ōrum, *m.*** A people in Celtic Gaul, around the modern Tours.

U.

- Ubiī, ōrum, *m.*** A Germanic people on the Rhine, about the modern Cologne.
- Usīpētes, um, *m.*** A Germanic people on the Rhenus (Rhine).

V.

Văcălus, ī, *m.* An arm of the Rhenus ; now the Waal.

Vangiōnes, um, *m.* A German people on the Rhenus (Rhine).

Veliocasses, ium, and Veliocassī, ōrum, *m.* A people north of the Sequāna (Seine), in Normandy.

Vellaunodūnum, ī, *n.* A town of the Senōnes.

Vellāviī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Aquitania.

Venellī, ōrum, *m.* A people of Gaul, one of the Armoric states.

Vēnētī, ōrum, *m.* One of the Armoric states ; now Vannes.

Vēnētia, ae, *f.* The country of the Venēti.

Verāgrī, ōrum, *m.* A people in the canton of Valais.

Verbigēnus, ī, *m.* One of the four divisions of Helvetia.

Vesontio, ōnis, *m.* A town of the Sequani ; now Besançon.

Vienna, ae, *f.* A town of the Allobrōges, on the Rhone ; now Vienne.

Viromandui, ōrum, *m.* A people of Gallia Belgica.

Vocātes, ium, *m.* A people in Aquitania.

Vōcontii, ōrum, *m.* A people in Gallia Narbonensis (Dauphiné and part of Provence), now Vaison.

Volcae, ārum, *m.* A powerful people of South Gallia, divided into **Volcae Arecomīcī** and **Volcae Tectosāges** ; the former dwelt in the Provincia, from the Rhone to the Narbo ; the latter also dwelt in the Provincia, more to the west than the former. Their chief town was Tolōsa ; now Toulouse.

Vōsēgus, ī, *m.* A chain of mountains in Gaul, the modern Vosges.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

NOTE. — Names ending in *us*, whose genitive singular is not given, are of the second declension.

A.

- Acco, *ōnis, m.* A general of the Gauls.
Adiatunnus, *ī, m.* A chief of the Sotiātes.
Lucius Aemilius, *ī, m.* A decurio in the Gallic cavalry.
Ambiōrix, *īgis, m.* A king of one-half of the Eburōnes.
Andocombogius, *ī, m.* An ambassador sent from the Remi to Cæsar.
C. Antistius Regīnus, *ī, m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Marcus Antōnius, *ī, m.* Mark Antony, one of Cæsar's lieutenants; afterwards the triumvir.
Āpollo, *īnis, m.* Apollo, son of Jupiter and Latōna, god of divination, archery, the healing art, and of poetry and music.
Ariovistus, *ī, m.* A king of the Germans.
Marcus Āristius, *ī, m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
C. Arpinēius, *ī, m.* A Roman knight.
Quintus Atrius, *ī, m.* An officer in Cæsar's army.
Lūcius Auruncŭlēius Cotta, *ae, m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

B.

- Tītus Balventius, *ī, m.* A Roman centurion.
Boduognātus, *ī, m.* A general of the Nervians.
Dēcimus Brŭtus, *ī, m.* One of Cæsar's officers.

C.

- Caesar, *āris, m.* (C. Iulius.) C. Julius Cæsar.
Caesar, *āris, m.* (Lucius Iulius.) One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Camulogēnus, *ī, m.* A general of the Aulerci.
C. Cānīnius Rebīlus, *ī, m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Carvilius, *ī, m.* A king of Britain.

- Lūcius Cassius, ī, *m.*** A Roman consul defeated by the Helvetii.
- Cassivellaunus, ī, *m.*** A British king; commander-in-chief of the British forces in the war against Cæsar.
- Castīcus, ī, *m.*** A distinguished Sequanian.
- Catamantāloedes, is, *m.*** A chief of the Sequāni.
- Catuvolcus, ī, *m.*** A king of the Eburōnes.
- Cavarillus, ī, *m.*** A chief of the Hædui.
- Cavarīnus, ī, *m.*** A king of the Senōnes.
- Celtillus, ī, *m.*** The father of Vercingetōrix.
- Cīcĕro, ōnis, *m.*** (Quintus Tullius.) One of Cæsar's lieutenants, and brother of the great orator, Marcus Tullius Cicero.
- Cimberius, ī, *m.*** A chief of the Suevi.
- Cingētōrix, īgis, *m.*** 1. A king of the Britons. 2. A chief of the Trevĕri.
- Appius Claudius, ī, *m.*** A Roman consul.
- Clōdīus, ī, *m.*** (Publius Clodius Pulcher.) A profligate and turbulent Roman, killed in an encounter with Milo.
- Commīus, ī, *m.*** A king of the Atrebātes.
- Conconnetodumnus, ī, *m.*** A leader of Carnūtes.
- Publius Considius, ī, *m.*** One of Cæsar's officers.
- Convictolitāvis, is, *m.*** A chief of the Hædui.
- Cotuātus, ī, *m.*** A leader of the Carnūtes.
- Cōtus, ī, *m.*** A nobleman of the Hædui.
- Crassus, ī, *m.*** (Marcus Licinius.) A Roman of immense wealth, who, with Pompey and Cæsar, formed the First Triumvirate.
- Crassus, ī, *m.*** (Publius Licinius.) Son of the preceding; one of Cæsar's lieutenants.
- Crassus, ī, *m.*** (Marcus.) A quæstor in Cæsar's army.
- Critognātus, ī, *m.*** A chief of the Arverni.

D.

- Dīs, ītis, *m.*** The god of the infernal regions; Pluto.
- Diviciācus, ī, *m.*** 1. A chief of the Hædui and of the Druids.
2. A king of the Suessiōnes.
- Divīco, ōnis, *m.*** A Helvetian general.
- Lūcius Dōmītiūs Ahenobarbus, ī, *m.*** A Roman consul, in B.C. 54.
- Dumnōrix, īgis, *m.*** A leader of the Hædui.

E.

- Ēpōrēdōrix, īgīs, *m.* 1. A chief of the Hædui. 2. Another general of the same nation.
Ērātosthēnēs, is, *m.* A celebrated geographer, poet, and philosopher of Alexandria, under Ptolemy Euergētes.

F.

- Q. Fābius Maxīmus, ī, *m.* A Roman consul who defeated the Arverni, Rutēni, and Allobroges, 121 B.C.
C. Fābius, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Lūcius Fābius, ī, *m.* A centurion in Cæsar's army.

G.

- Aulus Gābīnius, ī, *m.* A Roman consul, in B.C. 58.
Galba, ae, *m.* A king of the Suessiōnes.
Servius Galba, ae, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.
Gobannitio, ōnis, *m.* A leader of the Arverni.

I.

- Iccius, ī, *m.* A chief of the Remi.
Indūtiomārus, ī, *m.* A chief of the Trevēri.
Quintus Iūnius, ī, *m.* A Spaniard in the service of Cæsar.
Iuppiter, Iōvis, *m.* Jupiter or Jove, the son of Saturn, brother and husband of Juno; the chief god among the Romans; corresponding to the Greek Zeus.

L.

- Q. Lābērius Dūrus, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.
Lābiēnus, ī, *m.* (Titus.) The ablest of Cæsar's lieutenants in Gaul. In the civil war he joined the party of Pompey.
Liscus, ī, *m.* A chief magistrate of the Hædui.
Litavīcus, ī, *m.* A nobleman of the Hædui.
Q. Lūcānius, ī, *m.* A centurion in Cæsar's army.
Lucterius, ī, *m.* (Cadarcus.) An officer in the army of Vercingetorix.
Lugotōrix, īgis, *m.* A leader of the Britons.

M.

Mandubrăcius, ī, m. Son of a king of the Trinobantes.

Lūcius Manlius, ī, m. A Roman proconsul.

C. Mărius, ī, m. The conqueror of Jugurtha and the Cimbri. He afterwards engaged in a civil war with Sulla, and was seven times consul.

Mars, tis, m. Mars, who, as father of Romŭlus, was the primogenitor of the Roman people, the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds and seers.

Mercŭrius, ī, m. Mercury, the son of Jupiter and Maia, the messenger of the gods; as a herald, the god of eloquence; the god of traders and thieves; the presider over roads, and conductor of departed souls to the Lower World.

Marcus Messāla, ae, m. A Roman consul, in B.C. 61.

Marcus Mētius, ī, m. Sent by Cæsar on an embassy to Ariovistus.

Mīnerva, ae, f. A Roman goddess, identical with the Greek Pallas Athene, the daughter of Zeus, and the goddess of wisdom, of sense and reflection, of the arts and sciences, of poetry, and of spinning and weaving.

Lūcius Minŭcius Basīlus, ī, m. One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Moritasgus, ī, m. A king of the Senōnes.

Lūcius Mŭnātius Plancus, ī, m. One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

N.

Nammēius, ī, m. A Helvetian ambassador.

Nasua, ae, m. A leader of the Suevi.

O.

Ollovīcō, ōnis, m. A king of the Nitiobriges.

Orgētōrix, īgis, m. A Helvetian nobleman of great wealth.

P.

Quintus Pēdius, ī, m. One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Marcus Petrōnius, ī, m. A centurion in Cæsar's army.

Lūcius Petrosidius, ī, m. A standard-bearer in the Roman army.

Lūcius Pīso, ōnis, m. 1. The father-in-law of Cæsar, consul in B.C. 58. 2. The grandfather of the preceding, slain by the Helvetii, was also named Lucius Piso.

Marcus Pīso, ōnis, *m.* A Roman consul, in B.C. 61.

Pīso, ōnis, *m.* A distinguished Aquitanian.

Cn. Pompēius, ī, *m.* 1. Pompey, surnamed the Great. 2. An interpreter in the service of Titurius.

Tītus Pullo, ōnis, *m.* A brave Roman centurion.

R.

Lūcius Roscius, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

S.

Sedulius, ī, *m.* A general of the Lemovīces.

Segōnax, actis, *m.* A king of Cantium (Kent).

M. Semprōnius Rūtīlus, ī, *m.* An officer in Cæsar's army.

Quintus Sertōrius, ī, *m.* A remarkable Roman adventurer, who first served under Marius, but afterwards went to Spain, where he attained a princely dignity.

Tītus Sextius, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

P. Sextius Bacūlus, ī, *m.* A chief centurion of Cæsar's army.

Marcus Sīlānus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Tītus Sīlius, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers under Cæsar.

Sulla, ae, *m.* (Lucius Cornelius.) A distinguished Roman general, the rival of Marius in the civil war.

P. Sulpīcius Rūfus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

T.

Tasgetius, ī, *m.* A king of the Carnūtes.

Taximagūlus, ī, *m.* A king of Cantium (Kent).

Tītus Terrasidius, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's officers.

Teutomātus, ī, *m.* A king of the Nitiobrīges.

Quintus Titūrius Sābīnus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Marcus Trebius Gallus, ī, *m.* One of Cæsar's officers.

C. Trēbōnius, ī, *m.* 1. A Roman knight; one of Cæsar's officers. 2. One of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Quintus Tullius Cīcēro. See Cicero.

V.

C. Vālērius Cabūrus, ī, *m.* A chief of the Helvii.

C. Vālērius Donnotaurus, ī, *m.* A son of the chief of the Helvii.

- C. Vălĕrius Flaccus, ī, *m.* Proprætor of Gaul, B.C. 83.
 C. Vălĕrius Procillus, ī, *m.* A leading man in the Roman Province.
 Lūcius Vălĕrius Praecōnīnus, ī, *m.* A Roman lieutenant defeated and slain in Gaul.
 Valetiācus, ī, *m.* A Hæduan chief, brother of Cotus.
 Quintus Velānius, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
 Vercassivellaunus, ī, *m.* A general of the Arverni.
 Vercingetōrix, īgis, *m.* A distinguished Arvernian; the ablest enemy encountered by Cæsar in Gaul.
 Vergobrētus, ī, *m.* The title of the chief magistrate of the Hædui.
 Verticō, ōnis, *m.* A Nervian who sent information to Cæsar that Cicero was besieged.
 Verudoctius, ī, *m.* A Helvetian ambassador.
 Viridomārus, ī, *m.* A chief of the Hædui.
 Viridōvix, īcis, *m.* A chief of the Venelli.
 Voccio, ōnis, *m.* A king of the Norīci.
 Volcānus, ī, *m.* Vulcan, the god of fire, son of Jupiter and Juno, called Hephæstus by the Greeks.
 C. Volcatius Tullus, ī, *m.* An officer in Cæsar's army.
 C. Volusēnus Quadrātus, ī, *m.* A tribune of the soldiers.
 Lūcius Vorēnus, ī, *m.* A brave centurion in Cæsar's army.

BOSTON COLLEGE



3 9031 01145477 4

